

**Introduction to**

# **Numerical Analysis**

**S. Baskar and S. Sivaji Ganesh**



Department of Mathematics  
Indian Institute of Technology Bombay  
Powai, Mumbai – 400 076.

# Introduction to Numerical Analysis

Lecture Notes for SI 507

Authors:

S. Baskar and S. Sivaji Ganesh



Department of Mathematics  
Indian Institute of Technology Bombay  
Powai, Mumbai 400 076.



---

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Mathematical Preliminaries</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Sequences of Real Numbers	7
1.2	Limits and Continuity	9
1.3	Differentiation	12
1.4	Integration	15
1.5	Taylor's Theorem	16
1.6	Orders of Convergence	20
1.6.1	Big Oh and Little oh Notations	21
1.6.2	Rates of Convergence	23
1.7	Exercises	24
<b>2</b>	<b>Error Analysis</b>	<b>29</b>
2.1	Floating-Point Representation	30
2.1.1	Floating-Point Approximation	30
2.1.2	Underflow and Overflow of Memory	31
2.1.3	Chopping and Rounding a Number	33
2.1.4	Arithmetic Using $n$ -Digit Rounding and Chopping	35
2.2	Types of Errors	36
2.3	Loss of Significance	37
2.4	Propagation of Relative Error in Arithmetic Operations	40
2.4.1	Addition and Subtraction	40
2.4.2	Multiplication	41
2.4.3	Division	42
2.4.4	Total Error	42
2.5	Propagation of Relative Error in Function Evaluation	43
2.5.1	Stable and Unstable Computations	46
2.6	Exercises	48

<b>3</b>	<b>Numerical Linear Algebra</b>	51
3.1	System of Linear Equations	52
3.2	Direct Methods for Linear Systems	53
3.2.1	Naive Gaussian Elimination Method	53
3.2.2	Modified Gaussian Elimination Method with Partial Pivoting	57
3.2.3	Operations Count in Naive Gaussian Elimination Method	59
3.2.4	Thomas Method for Tri-diagonal System	60
3.2.5	LU Factorization	62
3.3	Matrix Norms and Condition Number of a Matrix	73
3.4	Iterative Methods for Linear Systems	80
3.4.1	Jacobi Method	81
3.4.2	Gauss-Seidel Method	85
3.4.3	Mathematical Error	87
3.4.4	Residual Corrector Method	88
3.4.5	Stopping Criteria	91
3.5	Eigenvalue Problems	91
3.5.1	Power Method	92
3.5.2	Gerschgorin's Theorem	107
3.6	Exercises	110
<b>4</b>	<b>Nonlinear Equations</b>	119
4.1	Closed Domain Methods	120
4.1.1	Bisection Method	120
4.1.2	Regula-falsi Method	125
4.2	Stopping Criteria	131
4.3	Open Domain Methods	132
4.3.1	Secant Method	133
4.3.2	Newton-Raphson Method	135
4.3.3	Fixed-Point Iteration Method	140
4.4	Comparison and Pitfalls of Iterative Methods	148
4.5	Exercises	151

<b>5</b>	<b>Interpolation</b>	159
5.1	Polynomial Interpolation	160
5.1.1	Existence and Uniqueness of Interpolating Polynomial	160
5.1.2	Lagrange's Form of Interpolating Polynomial	163
5.1.3	Newton's Form of Interpolating Polynomial	166
5.2	Newton's Divided Difference Formulas	167
5.2.1	Divided Differences Table	170
5.2.2	Divided Difference Formula for Repeated Nodes	171
5.3	Error in Polynomial Interpolation	174
5.3.1	Mathematical Error	175
5.3.2	Arithmetic Error	177
5.3.3	Total Error	179
5.3.4	Runge Phenomenon	180
5.3.5	Convergence of Sequence of Interpolating Polynomials	181
5.4	Piecewise Polynomial Interpolation	183
5.5	Spline Interpolation	185
5.6	Exercises	188
<b>6</b>	<b>Numerical Integration and Differentiation</b>	195
6.1	Numerical Integration	195
6.1.1	Rectangle Rule	196
6.1.2	Trapezoidal Rule	198
6.1.3	Simpson's Rule	201
6.1.4	Method of Undetermined Coefficients	204
6.1.5	Gaussian Rules	206
6.2	Numerical Differentiation	209
6.2.1	Approximations of First Derivative	209
6.2.2	Methods based on Interpolation	212
6.2.3	Methods based on Undetermined Coefficients	215
6.2.4	Arithmetic Error in Numerical Differentiation	216
6.3	Exercises	218

---

<b>7</b>	<b>Numerical Ordinary Differential Equations</b>	223
7.1	Review of Theory	224
7.2	Discretization Notations	227
7.3	Euler's Method	228
7.3.1	Error in Euler's Method	230
7.4	Modified Euler's Methods	234
7.5	Runge-Kutta Methods	236
7.5.1	Order Two	236
7.5.2	Order Four	238
7.6	Exercises	238
	<b>Index</b>	241

# CHAPTER 1

---

## Mathematical Preliminaries

This chapter reviews some of the concepts and results from calculus that are frequently used in this course. We recall important definitions and theorems whose proof is outlined briefly. The readers are assumed to be familiar with a first course in calculus.

In Section 1.1, we introduce sequences of real numbers and discuss the concept of limit and continuity in Section 1.2 with the intermediate value theorem. This theorem plays a basic role in finding initial guesses in iterative methods for solving nonlinear equations. In Section 1.3 we define derivative of a function, and prove Rolle's theorem and mean-value theorem for derivatives. The mean-value theorem for integration is discussed in Section 1.4. These two theorems are crucially used in devising methods for numerical integration and differentiation. Finally, Taylor's theorem is discussed in Section 1.5, which is essential for derivation and error analysis of almost all numerical methods discussed in this course. In Section 1.6 we introduce tools useful in discussing speed of convergence of sequences and rate at which a function  $f(x)$  approaches a point  $f(x_0)$  as  $x \rightarrow x_0$ .

Let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  be such that  $a < b$ . We use the notations  $[a, b]$  and  $(a, b)$  for the closed and the open intervals, respectively, and are defined by

$$[a, b] = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : a \leq x \leq b\} \text{ and } (a, b) = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : a < x < b\}.$$

### 1.1 Sequences of Real Numbers

**Definition 1.1 (Sequence).**

*A **sequence** of real numbers is an ordered list of real numbers*

$$a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, a_{n+1}, \dots$$

*In other words, a **sequence** is a function that associates the real number  $a_n$  for each natural number  $n$ . The notation  $\{a_n\}$  is often used to denote the sequence  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, a_{n+1}, \dots$*



The concept of convergence of a sequence plays an important role in numerical analysis, for instance when approximating a solution  $x$  of a certain problem via an iterative procedure that produces a sequence of approximation. Here, we are interested in knowing the convergence of the sequence of approximate solutions to the exact solution  $x$ .

**Definition 1.2 (Convergence of a Sequence).**

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers and let  $L$  be a real number. The sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is said to **converge** to  $L$ , and we write

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L \text{ (or } a_n \rightarrow L \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty),$$

if for every  $\epsilon > 0$  there exists a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_n - L| < \epsilon \quad \text{whenever } n \geq N.$$

The real number  $L$  is called the **limit** of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ .

**Theorem 1.3 (Sandwich Theorem).**

Let  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\}, \{c_n\}$  be sequences of real numbers such that

- (1) there exists an  $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$  such that for every  $n \geq n_0$ , the sequences satisfy the inequalities  $a_n \leq b_n \leq c_n$  and
- (2)  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c_n = L$ .

Then the sequence  $\{b_n\}$  also converges and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = L$ . □

**Definition 1.4 (Bounded Sequence).**

A sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be a **bounded sequence** if there exists a real number  $M$  such that

$$|a_n| \leq M \quad \text{for every } n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

**Theorem 1.5 (Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem).** Every bounded sequence  $\{a_n\}$  has a convergent subsequence  $\{a_{n_k}\}$ .

The following result is very useful in computing the limit of a sequence sandwiched between two sequences having a common limit.

**Definition 1.6 (Monotonic Sequences).**

A sequence  $\{a_n\}$  of real numbers is said to be

- (1) an **increasing sequence** if  $a_n \leq a_{n+1}$ , for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

(2) a **strictly increasing sequence** if  $a_n < a_{n+1}$ , for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

(3) a **decreasing sequence** if  $a_n \geq a_{n+1}$ , for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

(4) a **strictly decreasing sequence** if  $a_n > a_{n+1}$ , for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

A sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be a **(strictly) monotonic sequence** if it is either (strictly) increasing or (strictly) decreasing.

**Theorem 1.7.** *Bounded monotonic sequences always converge.*  $\square$

Note that any bounded sequence need not converge. The monotonicity in the above theorem is very important. The following result is known as “algebra of limits of sequences”.

**Theorem 1.8.** *Let  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  be two sequences. Assume that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n$  exist. Then*

$$(1) \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (a_n + b_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n.$$

$$(2) \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c a_n = c \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n, \text{ for any number } c.$$

$$(3) \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n b_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n.$$

$$(4) \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{a_n} = \frac{1}{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n}, \text{ provided } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \neq 0.$$

## 1.2 Limits and Continuity

In the previous section, we introduced the concept of limit for a sequences of real numbers. We now define the “limit” in the context of functions.

**Definition 1.9 (Limit of a Function).**

(1) Let  $f$  be a function defined on the left side (or both sides) of  $a$ , except possibly at  $a$  itself. Then, we say “the **left-hand limit** of  $f(x)$  as  $x$  approaches  $a$ , equals  $l$ ” and denote

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = l,$$

if we can make the values of  $f(x)$  arbitrarily close to  $l$  (as close to  $l$  as we like) by taking  $x$  to be sufficiently close to  $a$  and  $x$  less than  $a$ .

- (2) Let  $f$  be a function defined on the right side (or both sides) of  $a$ , except possibly at  $a$  itself. Then, we say “the **right-hand limit** of  $f(x)$  as  $x$  approaches  $a$ , equals  $r$ ” and denote

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a+} f(x) = r,$$

if we can make the values of  $f(x)$  arbitrarily close to  $r$  (as close to  $r$  as we like) by taking  $x$  to be sufficiently close to  $a$  and  $x$  greater than  $a$ .

- (3) Let  $f$  be a function defined on both sides of  $a$ , except possibly at  $a$  itself. Then, we say “the **limit** of  $f(x)$  as  $x$  approaches  $a$ , equals  $L$ ” and denote

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L,$$

if we can make the values of  $f(x)$  arbitrarily close to  $L$  (as close to  $L$  as we like) by taking  $x$  to be sufficiently close to  $a$  (on either side of  $a$ ) but not equal to  $a$ .

**Remark 1.10.** Note that in each of the above definitions the value of the function  $f$  at the point  $a$  does not play any role. In fact, the function  $f$  need not be defined at the point  $a$ .  $\square$

In the previous section, we have seen some limit laws in the context of sequences. Similar limit laws also hold for limits of functions. We have the following result, often referred to as “the limit laws” or as “algebra of limits”.

**Theorem 1.11.** Let  $f, g$  be two functions defined on both sides of  $a$ , except possibly at  $a$  itself. Assume that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$  exist. Then

$$(1) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} (f(x) + g(x)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x).$$

$$(2) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} c f(x) = c \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x), \text{ for any number } c.$$

$$(3) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x).$$

$$(4) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{1}{g(x)} = \frac{1}{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)}, \text{ provided } \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) \neq 0.$$

**Remark 1.12.** Polynomials, rational functions, all trigonometric functions wherever they are defined, have property called direct substitution property:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a). \quad \square$$

The following theorem is often useful to compute limits of functions.

**Theorem 1.13.** *If  $f(x) \leq g(x)$  when  $x$  is in an interval containing  $a$  (except possibly at  $a$ ) and the limits of  $f$  and  $g$  both exist as  $x$  approaches  $a$ , then*

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) \leq \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x).$$

**Theorem 1.14 (Sandwich Theorem).** *Let  $f$ ,  $g$ , and  $h$  be given functions such that*

(1)  $f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x)$  when  $x$  is in an interval containing  $a$  (except possibly at  $a$ ) and

$$(2) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} h(x) = L,$$

*then*

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = L.$$

We will now give a rigorous definition of the limit of a function. Similar definitions can be written down for left-hand and right-hand limits of functions.

**Definition 1.15.** *Let  $f$  be a function defined on some open interval that contains  $a$ , except possibly at  $a$  itself. Then we say that the **limit** of  $f(x)$  as  $x$  approaches  $a$  is  $L$  and we write*

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L.$$

*if for every  $\epsilon > 0$  there is a number  $\delta > 0$  such that*

$$|f(x) - L| < \epsilon \text{ whenever } 0 < |x - a| < \delta.$$

**Definition 1.16 (Continuity).**

*A function  $f$  is*

(1) **continuous from the right** at  $a$  if

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a+} f(x) = f(a).$$

(2) **continuous from the left** at  $a$  if

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a-} f(x) = f(a).$$

(3) **continuous** at  $a$  if

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a).$$

*A function  $f$  is said to be continuous on an open interval if  $f$  is continuous at every number in the interval. If  $f$  is defined on a closed interval  $[a, b]$ , then  $f$  is said to be continuous at  $a$  if  $f$  is continuous from the right at  $a$  and similarly,  $f$  is said to be continuous at  $b$  if  $f$  is continuous from left at  $b$ .*

**Remark 1.17.** Note that the definition for continuity of a function  $f$  at  $a$ , means the following three conditions are satisfied:

- (1) The function  $f$  must be defined at  $a$ . i.e.,  $a$  is in the domain of  $f$ ,
- (2)  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)$  exists, and
- (3)  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$ .

Equivalently, for any given  $\epsilon > 0$ , there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that

$$|f(x) - f(a)| < \epsilon \text{ whenever } |x - a| < \delta. \quad \square$$

**Theorem 1.18.** *If  $f$  and  $g$  are continuous at  $a$ , then the functions  $f + g$ ,  $f - g$ ,  $cg$  ( $c$  is a constant),  $fg$ ,  $f/g$  (provided  $g(a) \neq 0$ ),  $f \circ g$  (composition of  $f$  and  $g$ , whenever it makes sense) are all continuous.*

Thus polynomials, rational functions, trigonometric functions are all continuous on their respective domains.

**Theorem 1.19 (Intermediate Value Theorem).** *Suppose that  $f$  is continuous on the closed interval  $[a, b]$  and let  $N$  be any number between  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$ , where  $f(a) \neq f(b)$ . Then there exists a point  $c \in (a, b)$  such that*

$$f(c) = N.$$

## 1.3 Differentiation

**Definition 1.20 (Derivative).**

The **derivative** of a function  $f$  at  $a$ , denoted by  $f'(a)$ , is

$$f'(a) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}, \quad (1.3.1)$$

if this limit exists. We say  $f$  is **differentiable** at  $a$ . A function  $f$  is said to be **differentiable** on  $(c, d)$  if  $f$  is differentiable at every point in  $(c, d)$ .

**Remark 1.21.** The derivative of a function  $f$  at a point  $x = a$  can also be given by

$$f'(a) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(a) - f(a-h)}{h}, \quad (1.3.2)$$

and

$$f'(a) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a-h)}{2h}, \quad (1.3.3)$$

provided the limits exist.  $\square$

If we write  $x = a + h$ , then  $h = x - a$  and  $h \rightarrow 0$  if and only if  $x \rightarrow a$ . Thus, formula (1.3.1) can equivalently be written as

$$f'(a) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}.$$

**Interpretation:** Take the graph of  $f$ , draw the line joining the points  $(a, f(a))$ ,  $(x, f(x))$ . Take its slope and take the limit of these slopes as  $x \rightarrow a$ . Then the point  $(x, f(x))$  tends to  $(a, f(a))$ . The limit is nothing but the slope of the tangent line at  $(a, f(a))$  to the curve  $y = f(x)$ . This geometric interpretation will be very useful in describing the Newton-Raphson method in the context of solving nonlinear equations.  $\square$

**Theorem 1.22.** *If  $f$  is differentiable at  $a$ , then  $f$  is continuous at  $a$ .*

**Proof:**

$$f(x) - f(a) = \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}(x - a)$$

$$f(x) = \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}(x - a) + f(a)$$

Taking limit as  $x \rightarrow a$  in the last equation yields the desired result.  $\square$

The converse of Theorem 1.22 is not true. For, the function  $f(x) = |x|$  is continuous at  $x = 0$  but is not differentiable there.

**Theorem 1.23.** *Suppose  $f$  is differentiable at  $a$ . Then there exists a function  $\phi$  such that*

$$f(x) = f(a) + (x - a)f'(a) + (x - a)\phi(x),$$

and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \phi(x) = 0$ .

**Proof:** Define  $\phi$  by

$$\phi(x) = \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a} - f'(a).$$

Since  $f$  is differentiable at  $a$ , the result follows on taking limits on both sides of the last equation as  $x \rightarrow a$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 1.24 (Rolle's Theorem).** *Let  $f$  be a function that satisfies the following three hypotheses:*

- (1)  $f$  is continuous on the closed interval  $[a, b]$ .
- (2)  $f$  is differentiable on the open interval  $(a, b)$ .
- (3)  $f(a) = f(b)$ .

*Then there is a number  $c$  in the open interval  $(a, b)$  such that  $f'(c) = 0$ .*

**Proof:**

If  $f$  is a constant function *i.e.*,  $f(x) = f(a)$  for every  $x \in [a, b]$ , clearly such a  $c$  exists. If  $f$  is not a constant, then at least one of the following holds.

**Case 1:** The graph of  $f$  goes above the line  $y = f(a)$  *i.e.*,  $f(x) > f(a)$  for some  $x \in (a, b)$ .

**Case 2:** The graph of  $f$  goes below the line  $y = f(a)$  *i.e.*,  $f(x) < f(a)$  for some  $x \in (a, b)$ .

In case (1), *i.e.*, if the graph of  $f$  goes above the line  $y = f(a)$ , then the global maximum cannot be at  $a$  or  $b$ . Therefore, it must lie in the open interval  $(a, b)$ . Denote that point by  $c$ . That is, global maximum on  $[a, b]$  is actually a local maximum, and hence  $f'(c) = 0$ .

In case (2), *i.e.*, if the graph of  $f$  goes below the line  $y = f(a)$ , then the global minimum cannot be at  $a$  or  $b$ . Therefore it must lie in the open interval  $(a, b)$ . Let us call it  $d$ . That is, global minimum on  $[a, b]$  is actually a local minimum, and hence  $f'(d) = 0$ . This completes the proof of Rolle's theorem.  $\square$

The following theorem is due to J.-L. Lagrange.

**Theorem 1.25 (Mean Value Theorem).** *Let  $f$  be a function that satisfies the following hypotheses:*

(1)  $f$  is continuous on the closed interval  $[a, b]$ .

(2)  $f$  is differentiable on the open interval  $(a, b)$ .

*Then there is a number  $c$  in the open interval  $(a, b)$  such that*

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

*or, equivalently,*

$$f(b) - f(a) = f'(c)(b - a).$$

**Proof:** The strategy is to define a new function  $\phi(x)$  satisfying the hypothesis of Rolle's theorem. The conclusion of Rolle's theorem for  $\phi$  should yield the conclusion of Mean Value Theorem for  $f$ .

Define  $\phi$  on  $[a, b]$  by

$$\phi(x) = f(x) - f(a) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a).$$

We can apply Rolle's theorem to  $\phi$  on  $[a, b]$ , as  $\phi$  satisfies the hypothesis of Rolle's theorem. Rolle's theorem asserts the existence of  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $\phi'(c) = 0$ . This concludes the proof of Mean Value Theorem.  $\square$

## 1.4 Integration

In Theorem 1.25, we have discussed the mean value property for the derivative of a function. We now discuss the mean value theorems for integration.

**Theorem 1.26 (Mean Value Theorem for Integrals).** *If  $f$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ , then there exists a number  $c$  in  $[a, b]$  such that*

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = f(c)(b - a).$$

**Proof:** Let  $m$  and  $M$  be minimum and maximum values of  $f$  in the interval  $[a, b]$ , respectively. Then,

$$m(b - a) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq M(b - a).$$

Since  $f$  is continuous, the result follows from the intermediate value theorem.  $\square$

Recall the average value of a function  $f$  on the interval  $[a, b]$  is defined by

$$\frac{1}{b - a} \int_a^b f(x) dx.$$

Observe that the first mean value theorem for integrals asserts that the average of an integrable function  $f$  on an interval  $[a, b]$  belongs to the range of the function  $f$ .

**Interpretation:** Let  $f$  be a function on  $[a, b]$  with  $f > 0$ . Draw the graph of  $f$  and find the area under the graph lying between the ordinates  $x = a$  and  $x = b$ . Also, look at a rectangle with base as the interval  $[a, b]$  with height  $f(c)$  and compute its area. Both values are the same.  $\square$

The Theorem 1.26 is often referred to as the **first mean value theorem for integrals**. We now state the second mean value theorem for integrals, which is a general form of Theorem 1.26

**Theorem 1.27 (Second Mean Value Theorem for Integrals).** *Let  $f$  and  $g$  be continuous on  $[a, b]$ , and let  $g(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then there exists a number  $c \in [a, b]$  such that*

$$\int_a^b f(x)g(x) dx = f(c) \int_a^b g(x) dx.$$

**Proof:** Left as an exercise.  $\square$



## 1.5 Taylor's Theorem

Let  $f$  be a real-valued function defined on an interval  $I$ . We say  $f \in C^n(I)$  if  $f$  is  $n$ -times continuously differentiable at every point in  $I$ . Also, we say  $f \in C^\infty(I)$  if  $f$  is continuously differentiable of any order at every point in  $I$ .

The most important result used very frequently in numerical analysis, especially in error analysis of numerical methods, is the Taylor's expansion of a  $C^\infty$  function in a neighborhood of a point  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ . In this section, we define the Taylor's polynomial and prove an important theorem called the **Taylor's theorem**. The idea of the proof of this theorem is similar to the one used in proving the mean value theorem, where we construct a function and apply Rolle's theorem several times to it.

### Definition 1.28 (Taylor's Polynomial for a Function at a Point).

Let  $f$  be  $n$ -times differentiable at a given point  $a$ . The **Taylor's polynomial of degree  $n$**  for the function  $f$  at the point  $a$ , denoted by  $T_n$ , is defined by

$$T_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!} (x-a)^k, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (1.5.4)$$

**Theorem 1.29 (Taylor's Theorem).** Let  $f$  be  $(n+1)$ -times differentiable function on an open interval containing the points  $a$  and  $x$ . Then there exists a number  $\xi$  between  $a$  and  $x$  such that

$$f(x) = T_n(x) + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi)}{(n+1)!} (x-a)^{n+1}, \quad (1.5.5)$$

where  $T_n$  is the Taylor's polynomial of degree  $n$  for  $f$  at the point  $a$  given by (1.5.4) and the second term on the right hand side is called the **remainder term**.

**Proof:** Let us assume  $x > a$  and prove the theorem. The proof is similar if  $x < a$ .

Define  $g(t)$  by

$$g(t) = f(t) - T_n(t) - A(t-a)^{n+1}$$

and choose  $A$  so that  $g(x) = 0$ , which gives

$$A = \frac{f(x) - T_n(x)}{(x-a)^{n+1}}.$$

Note that

$$g^{(k)}(a) = 0 \text{ for } k = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

Also, observe that the function  $g$  is continuous on  $[a, x]$  and differentiable in  $(a, x)$ .

Apply Rolle's theorem to  $g$  on  $[a, x]$  (after verifying all the hypotheses of Rolle's theorem) to get

$$a < c_1 < x \text{ satisfying } g'(c_1) = 0.$$

Again apply Rolle's theorem to  $g'$  on  $[a, c_1]$  to get

$$a < c_2 < c_1 \text{ satisfying } g''(c_2) = 0.$$

In turn apply Rolle's theorem to  $g^{(2)}, g^{(3)}, \dots, g^{(n)}$  on intervals  $[a, c_2], [a, c_3], \dots, [a, c_n]$ , respectively.

At the last step, we get

$$a < c_{n+1} < c_n \text{ satisfying } g^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) = 0.$$

But

$$g^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) = f^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) - A(n+1)!,$$

which gives

$$A = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1})}{(n+1)!}.$$

Equating both values of  $A$ , we get

$$f(x) = T_n(x) + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1})}{(n+1)!}(x-a)^{n+1}.$$

This completes the proof.  $\square$

Observe that the mean value theorem 1.25 is a particular case of the Taylor's theorem.

**Remark 1.30.** The representation (1.5.5) is called the **Taylor's formula** for the function  $f$  about the point  $a$ .

The Taylor's theorem helps us to obtain an approximate value of a sufficiently smooth function in a small neighborhood of a given point  $a$  when the value of  $f$  and all its derivatives up to a sufficient order is known at the point  $a$ . For instance, if we know  $f(a), f'(a), \dots, f^{(n)}(a)$ , and we seek an approximate value of  $f(a+h)$  for some real number  $h$ , then the Taylor's theorem can be used to get

$$f(a+h) \approx f(a) + f'(a)h + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}h^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}h^n.$$

Note here that we have not added the remainder term and therefore used the approximation symbol  $\approx$ . Observe that the remainder term

$$\frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi)}{(n+1)!}h^{n+1}$$

is not known since it involves the evaluation of  $f^{(n+1)}$  at some unknown value  $\xi$  lying between  $a$  and  $a+h$ . Also, observe that as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , the remainder term approaches to zero, provided  $f^{(n+1)}$  is bounded. This means that for smaller values of  $h$ , the Taylor's polynomial gives a good approximation of  $f(a+h)$ .  $\square$

**Remark 1.31 (Estimate for Remainder Term in Taylor's Formula).**

Let  $f$  be an  $(n + 1)$ -times continuously differentiable function with the property that there exists an  $M_{n+1}$  such that

$$|f^{(n+1)}(\xi)| \leq M_{n+1}, \text{ for all } \xi \in I.$$

Then for fixed points  $a, x \in I$ , the remainder term in (1.5.5) satisfies the estimate

$$\left| \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi)}{(n+1)!} (x-a)^{n+1} \right| \leq \frac{M_{n+1}}{(n+1)!} |x-a|^{n+1}.$$

We can further get an estimate of the remainder term that is independent of  $x$  as

$$\left| \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi)}{(n+1)!} (x-a)^{n+1} \right| \leq \frac{M_{n+1}}{(n+1)!} (b-a)^{n+1},$$

which holds for all  $x \in I$ . Observe that the right hand side of the above estimate is a fixed number. We refer to such estimates as **remainder estimates**.

In most applications of Taylor's theorem, one never knows  $\xi$  precisely. However in view of remainder estimate given above, it does not matter as long as we know that the remainder can be bounded by obtaining a bound  $M_{n+1}$  which is valid for all  $\xi$  between  $a$  and  $x$ .  $\square$

**Definition 1.32 (Truncation Error).**

The remainder term involved in approximating  $f(x)$  by the Taylor's polynomial  $T_n(x)$  is also called the **Truncation error**.

**Example 1.33.** A second degree polynomial approximation to

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x+1}, \quad x \in [-1, \infty)$$

using the Taylor's formula about  $a = 0$  is given by

$$f(x) \approx 1 + \frac{x}{2} - \frac{x^2}{8},$$

where the remainder term is neglected and hence what we obtained here is only an approximate representation of  $f$ .

The truncation error is obtained using the remainder term in the formula (1.5.5) with  $n = 2$  and is given by

$$\frac{x^3}{16(\sqrt{1+\xi})^5},$$

for some point  $\xi$  between 0 and  $x$ .

Note that we cannot obtain a remainder estimate in the present example as  $f'''$  is not bounded in  $[-1, \infty)$ . However, for any  $0 < \delta < 1$ , if we restrict the domain of  $f$  to  $[-\delta, \infty)$ , then we can obtain the remainder estimate for a fixed  $x \in [-\delta, \infty)$  as

$$\frac{x^3}{16(\sqrt{1-\delta})^5}.$$

Further, if we restrict the domain of  $f$  to  $[-\delta, b]$  for some real number  $b > 0$ , then we get the remainder estimate independent of  $x$  as

$$\frac{b^3}{16(\sqrt{1-\delta})^5}. \quad \square$$

**Definition 1.34 (Taylor's Series).** Let  $f$  be  $C^\infty$  in a neighborhood of a point  $a$ . The power series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!} (x-a)^k$$

is called the **Taylor's series** of  $f$  about the point  $a$ .

The question now is when this series converges and what is the limit of this series. These questions are answered in the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.35.** Let  $f$  be  $C^\infty(I)$  and let  $a \in I$ . Assume that there exists an open interval  $I_a \subset I$  of the point  $a$  such that there exists a constant  $M$  (may depend on  $a$ )

$$|f^{(k)}(x)| \leq M^k,$$

for all  $x \in I_a$  and  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ . Then for each  $x \in I_a$ , we have

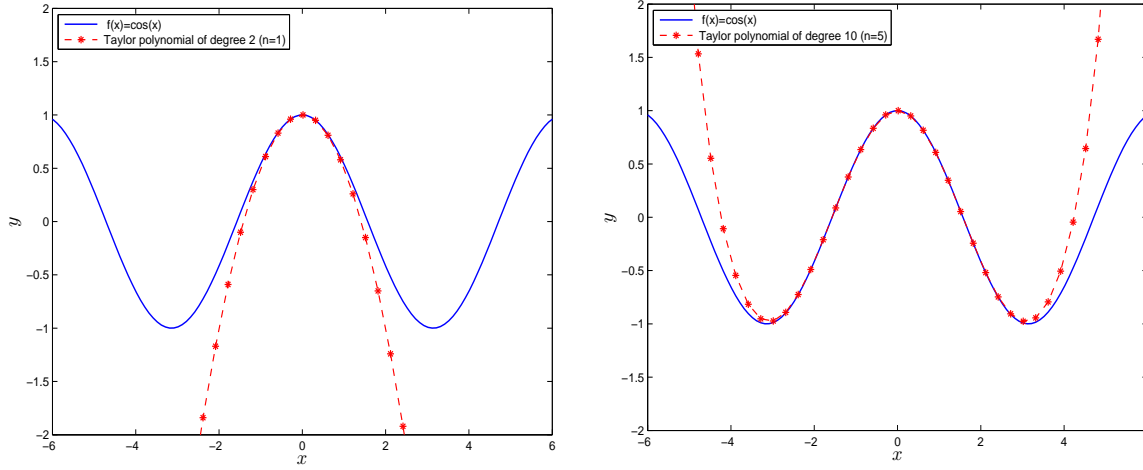
$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!} (x-a)^k.$$

**Example 1.36.** As another example, let us approximate the function  $f(x) = \cos(x)$  by a polynomial using Taylor's theorem about the point  $a = 0$ . First, let us take the Taylor's series expansion

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \cos(0) - \sin(0)x - \frac{\cos(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\sin(0)}{3!}x^3 + \dots \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} x^{2k}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, we truncate this infinite series to get an approximate representation of  $f(x)$  in a sufficiently small neighborhood of  $a = 0$  as

$$f(x) \approx \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} x^{2k},$$



**Fig. 1.1.** Comparison between the graph of  $f(x) = \cos(x)$  and the Taylor polynomial of degree 2 and 10 about the point  $a = 0$ .

which is the Taylor polynomial of degree  $2n$  for the function  $f(x) = \cos(x)$  about the point  $a = 0$ . The remainder term is given by

$$(-1)^{n+1} \frac{\cos(\xi)}{(2(n+1))!} x^{2(n+1)},$$

where  $\xi$  lies between 0 and  $x$ . It is important to observe here that for a given  $n$ , we get the Taylor polynomial of degree  $2n$ . Figure 1.1 shows the comparison between the Taylor polynomial (red dot and dash line) of degree 2 ( $n = 1$ ) and degree 10 ( $n = 5$ ) for  $f(x) = \cos(x)$  about  $a = 0$  and the graph of  $\cos(x)$  (blue solid line). We observe that for  $n = 1$ , Taylor polynomial gives a good approximation in a small neighborhood of  $a = 0$ . But sufficiently away from 0, this polynomial deviates significantly from the actual graph of  $f(x) = \cos(x)$ . Whereas, for  $n = 5$ , we get a good approximation in a sufficiently large neighborhood of  $a = 0$ .  $\square$

## 1.6 Orders of Convergence

In Section 1.1, we defined convergent sequences and discussed some conditions under which a given sequence of real numbers converges. The definition and the discussed conditions never tell us how fast the sequence converges to the limit. Even if we know that a sequence of approximations converge to the exact one (limit), it is very important in numerical analysis to know how fast the sequence of approximate values converge to the exact value. In this section, we introduce two very important notations called **big Oh** and **little oh**, which are basic tools for the study of speed of convergence. We end this section by defining the rate of convergence, which is also called order of convergence.

### 1.6.1 Big Oh and Little oh Notations

The notions of big Oh and little oh are well understood through the following example.

**Example 1.37.** Consider the two sequences  $\{n\}$  and  $\{n^2\}$  both of which are unbounded and tend to infinity as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . However we feel that the sequence  $\{n\}$  grows ‘slowly’ compared to the sequence  $\{n^2\}$ . Consider also the sequences  $\{1/n\}$  and  $\{1/n^2\}$  both of which decrease to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . However we feel that the sequence  $\{1/n^2\}$  decreases more rapidly compared to the sequence  $\{1/n\}$ .  $\square$

The above examples motivate us to develop tools that compare two sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ . Landau has introduced the concepts of Big Oh and Little oh for comparing two sequences that we will define below.

#### Definition 1.38 (Big Oh and Little oh).

Let  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  be sequences of real numbers. Then

- (1) the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **Big Oh** of  $\{b_n\}$ , and write  $a_n = O(b_n)$ , if there exists a real number  $C$  and a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_n| \leq C |b_n| \quad \text{for all } n \geq N.$$

- (2) the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **Little oh** (sometimes said to be **small oh**) of  $\{b_n\}$ , and write  $a_n = o(b_n)$ , if for every  $\epsilon > 0$  there exists a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_n| \leq \epsilon |b_n| \quad \text{for all } n \geq N.$$

#### Remark 1.39.

- (1) If  $b_n \neq 0$  for every  $n$ , then we have  $a_n = O(b_n)$  if and only if the sequence  $\left\{ \frac{a_n}{b_n} \right\}$  is bounded. That is, there exists a constant  $C$  such that

$$\left| \frac{a_n}{b_n} \right| \leq C$$

- (2) If  $b_n \neq 0$  for every  $n$ , then we have  $a_n = o(b_n)$  if and only if the sequence  $\left\{ \frac{a_n}{b_n} \right\}$  converges to 0. That is,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a_n}{b_n} = 0.$$

- (3) For any pair of sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  such that  $a_n = o(b_n)$ , it follows that  $a_n = O(b_n)$ . The converse is not true. Consider the sequences  $a_n = n$  and  $b_n = 2n + 3$ , for which  $a_n = O(b_n)$  holds but  $a_n = o(b_n)$  does not hold.

- (4) Let  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  be two sequences that converge to 0. Then  $a_n = O(b_n)$  means the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  tends to 0 as fast as the sequence  $\{b_n\}$ ; and  $a_n = o(b_n)$  means the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  tends to 0 faster than the sequence  $\{b_n\}$ .  $\square$

The Big Oh and Little oh notations can be adapted for functions as follows.

**Definition 1.40 (Big Oh and Little oh for Functions).**

Let  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $f$  and  $g$  be functions defined in an interval containing  $x_0$ . Then

- (1) the function  $f$  is said to be **Big Oh** of  $g$  as  $x \rightarrow x_0$ , and write  $f(x) = O(g(x))$ , if there exists a real number  $C$  and a real number  $\delta$  such that

$$|f(x)| \leq C |g(x)| \quad \text{whenever } |x - x_0| \leq \delta.$$

- (2) the function  $f$  is said to be **Little Oh** (also, **Small oh**) of  $g$  as  $x \rightarrow x_0$ , and write  $f(x) = o(g(x))$ , if for every  $\epsilon > 0$  there exists a real number  $\delta$  such that

$$|f(x)| \leq \epsilon |g(x)| \quad \text{whenever } |x - x_0| \leq \delta.$$

In case of functions also, a remark similar to the Remark 1.39 holds.

**Example 1.41.** The Taylor's formula for  $f(x) = \cos(x)$  about the point  $a = 0$  is

$$\cos(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} x^{2k} + (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\cos(\xi)}{(2(n+1))!} x^{2(n+1)}$$

where  $\xi$  lies between  $x$  and 0.

Let us denote the remainder term (truncation error) as (for a fixed  $n$ )

$$g(x) = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\cos(\xi)}{(2(n+1))!} x^{2(n+1)}.$$

Clearly,  $g(x) \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$ . The question now is

‘How fast does  $g(x) \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$ ?’

The answer is

‘As fast as  $x^{2(n+1)} \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$ .’

That is,

$$g(x) = O(x^{2(n+1)}) \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow 0. \quad \square$$

### 1.6.2 Rates of Convergence

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence such that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = a.$$

We would like to measure the speed at which the convergence takes place. For example, consider

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2n+3} = 0$$

and

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n^2} = 0.$$

We feel that the first sequence goes to zero linearly and the second goes with a much superior speed because of the presence of  $n^2$  in its denominator. We will define the notion of order of convergence precisely.

#### Definition 1.42 (Rate of Convergence or Order of Convergence).

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence such that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = a$ .

- (1) We say that the rate of convergence is **atleast linear** if there exists a constant  $c < 1$  and a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_{n+1} - a| \leq c |a_n - a| \quad \text{for all } n \geq N.$$

- (2) We say that the rate of convergence is **atleast superlinear** if there exists a sequence  $\{\epsilon_n\}$  that converges to 0, and a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_{n+1} - a| \leq \epsilon_n |a_n - a| \quad \text{for all } n \geq N.$$

- (3) We say that the rate of convergence is **at least quadratic** if there exists a constant  $C$  (not necessarily less than 1), and a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_{n+1} - a| \leq C |a_n - a|^2 \quad \text{for all } n \geq N.$$

- (4) Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}_+$ . We say that the rate of convergence is **atleast  $\alpha$**  if there exists a constant  $C$  (not necessarily less than 1), and a natural number  $N$  such that

$$|a_{n+1} - a| \leq C |a_n - a|^\alpha \quad \text{for all } n \geq N.$$



## 1.7 Exercises

### Sequences of Real Numbers

- (1) Consider the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ , where

$$a_n = \frac{1}{n}, \quad b_n = \frac{1}{n^2}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

Clearly, both the sequences converge to zero. For the given  $\epsilon = 10^{-2}$ , obtain the smallest positive integers  $N_a$  and  $N_b$  such that

$$|a_n| < \epsilon \text{ whenever } n \geq N_a, \text{ and } |b_n| < \epsilon \text{ whenever } n \geq N_b.$$

For any  $\epsilon > 0$ , show that  $N_a > N_b$ .

- (2) Show that the sequence  $\left\{(-1)^n + \frac{1}{n}\right\}$  is bounded but not convergent. Observe that the sequence  $\left\{1 + \frac{1}{2n}\right\}$  is a subsequence of the given sequence. Show that this subsequence converges and obtain the limit of this subsequence. Obtain another convergent subsequence.
- (3) Let  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  be two sequences such that  $x_n, y_n \in [a, b]$  and  $x_n < y_n$  for each  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . If  $x_n \rightarrow b$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , then show that the sequence  $\{y_n\}$  converges. Find the limit of the sequence  $\{y_n\}$ .
- (4) Let  $I_n = \left[\frac{n-2}{2n}, \frac{n+2}{2n}\right]$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$  and  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence with  $a_n$  is chosen arbitrarily in  $I_n$  for each  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . Show that  $a_n \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

### Limits and Continuity

- (5) Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin(x) - 1 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ \sin(x) + 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

Obtain the left hand and right hand limits of  $f$  at  $x = 0$ . Does the limit of  $f$  exists at  $x = 0$ ? Justify your answer.

- (6) Let  $f$  be a real-valued function such that  $f(x) \geq \sin(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = L$  exists, then show that  $L \geq 0$ .

- (7) Let  $f$ ,  $g$  and  $h$  be real-valued functions such that  $f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . If  $x^* \in \mathbb{R}$  is a common root of the equations  $f(x) = 0$  and  $h(x) = 0$ , then show that  $x^*$  is a root of the equation  $g(x) = 0$ .

- (8) Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be polynomials. Find

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$$

in each of the following cases.

- (i) The degree of  $P$  is less than the degree of  $Q$ .
- (ii) The degree of  $P$  is greater than the degree of  $Q$ .
- (iii) The degree of  $P$  is equal to the degree of  $Q$ .

- (9) Study the continuity of  $f$  in each of the following cases:

(i)  $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ \sqrt{x} & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$

(ii)  $f(x) = \begin{cases} -x & \text{if } x < 1 \\ x & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$

(iii)  $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ 1 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$

- (10) Let  $f$  be defined on an interval  $(a, b)$  and suppose that  $f$  is continuous at  $c \in (a, b)$  and  $f(c) \neq 0$ . Then, show that there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that  $f$  has the same sign as  $f(c)$  in the interval  $(c - \delta, c + \delta)$ .

- (11) Show that the equation  $\sin x + x^2 = 1$  has at least one solution in the interval  $[0, 1]$ .

- (12) Show that  $(a+b)/2$  belongs to the range of the function  $f(x) = (x-a)^2(x-b)^2 + x$  defined on the interval  $[a, b]$ .

- (13) Let  $f(x)$  be continuous on  $[a, b]$ , let  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  be points in  $[a, b]$ , and let  $g_1, \dots, g_n$  be real numbers having same sign. Show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i)g_i = f(\xi) \sum_{i=1}^n g_i, \quad \text{for some } \xi \in [a, b].$$

- (14) Let  $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow [0, 1]$  be a continuous function. Prove that the equation  $f(x) = x$  has at least one solution lying in the interval  $[0, 1]$  (Note: A solution of this equation is called a **fixed point** of the function  $f$ ).

- (15) Show that the equation  $f(x) = x$ , where

$$f(x) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi x + 1}{2}\right), \quad x \in [-1, 1]$$

has at least one solution in  $[-1, 1]$ .

## Differentiation

- (16) Let  $c \in (a, b)$  and  $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be differentiable at  $c$ . If  $c$  is a local extremum (maximum or minimum) of  $f$ , then show that  $f'(c) = 0$ .
- (17) Let  $f(x) = 1 - x^{2/3}$ . Show that  $f(1) = f(-1) = 0$ , but that  $f'(x)$  is never zero in the interval  $[-1, 1]$ . Explain how this is possible, in view of Rolle's theorem.
- (18) Let  $g$  be a continuous differentiable function ( $C^1$  function) such that the equation  $g(x) = 0$  has at least  $n$  roots. Show that the equation  $g'(x) = 0$  has at least  $n - 1$  roots.
- (19) Suppose  $f$  is differentiable in an open interval  $(a, b)$ . Prove the following statements
- (a) If  $f'(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x \in (a, b)$ , then  $f$  is non-decreasing.
  - (b) If  $f'(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in (a, b)$ , then  $f$  is constant.
  - (c) If  $f'(x) \leq 0$  for all  $x \in (a, b)$ , then  $f$  is non-increasing.
- (20) Let  $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given by  $f(x) = x^2$ . Find a point  $c$  specified by the mean-value theorem for derivatives. Verify that this point lies in the interval  $(a, b)$ .

## Integration

- (21) Prove the second mean value theorem for integrals. Does the theorem hold if the hypothesis  $g(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  is replaced by  $g(x) \leq 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .
- (22) In the second mean-value theorem for integrals, let  $f(x) = e^x$ ,  $g(x) = x$ ,  $x \in [0, 1]$ . Find the point  $c$  specified by the theorem and verify that this point lies in the interval  $(0, 1)$ .
- (23) Let  $g : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function. Show that there exists a  $c \in (0, 1)$  such that

$$\int_0^1 x^2(1-x)^2 g(x) dx = \frac{1}{30} g(\xi).$$

- (24) If  $n$  is a positive integer, show that

$$\int_{\sqrt{n\pi}}^{\sqrt{(n+1)\pi}} \sin(t^2) dt = \frac{(-1)^n}{c},$$

where  $\sqrt{n\pi} \leq c \leq \sqrt{(n+1)\pi}$ .

### Taylor's Theorem

- (25) Find the Taylor's polynomial of degree 2 for the function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x+1}$$

about the point  $a = 1$ . Also find the remainder.

- (26) Use Taylor's formula about  $a = 0$  to evaluate approximately the value of the function  $f(x) = e^x$  at  $x = 0.5$  using three terms (*i.e.*,  $n = 2$ ) in the formula. Obtain the remainder  $R_2(0.5)$  in terms of the unknown  $c$ . Compute approximately the possible values of  $c$  and show that these values lie in the interval  $(0, 0.5)$ .
- (27) Obtain Taylor expansion for the function  $f(x) = \sin(x)$  about the point  $a = 0$  when  $n = 1$  and  $n = 5$ . Give the remainder term in both the cases.

### Big Oh, Little oh, and Orders of convergence

- (28) Prove or disprove:

- (i)  $2n^2 + 3n + 4 = o(n)$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (ii)  $\frac{n+1}{n^2} = o(\frac{1}{n})$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (iii)  $\frac{n+1}{n^2} = O(\frac{1}{n})$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (iv)  $\frac{n+1}{\sqrt{n}} = o(1)$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (v)  $\frac{1}{\ln n} = o(\frac{1}{n})$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (vi)  $\frac{1}{n \ln n} = o(\frac{1}{n})$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (vii)  $\frac{e^n}{n^5} = O(\frac{1}{n})$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

- (29) Prove or disprove:

- (i)  $e^x - 1 = O(x^2)$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$ .
- (ii)  $x^{-2} = O(\cot x)$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$ .

- (iii)  $\cot x = o(x^{-1})$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$ .
  - (iv) For  $r > 0$ ,  $x^r = O(e^x)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ .
  - (v) For  $r > 0$ ,  $\ln x = O(x^r)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (30) Assume that  $f(h) = p(h) + O(h^n)$  and  $g(h) = q(h) + O(h^m)$ , for some positive integers  $n$  and  $m$ . Find the order of approximation of their sum, ie., find the largest integer  $r$  such that

$$f(h) + g(h) = p(h) + q(h) + O(h^r).$$

## CHAPTER 2

---

### Error Analysis

Numerical analysis deals with developing methods, called *numerical methods*, to approximate a solution of a given Mathematical problem (whenever a solution exists). The approximate solution obtained by this method will involve an error which is precisely the difference between the exact solution and the approximate solution. Thus, we have

$$\text{Exact Solution} = \text{Approximate Solution} + \text{Error}.$$

We call this error the **mathematical error**.

The study of numerical methods is incomplete if we don't develop algorithms and implement the algorithms as computer codes. The outcome of the computer code is a set of numerical values to the approximate solution obtained using a numerical method. Such a set of numerical values is called the **numerical solution** to the given Mathematical problem. During the process of computation, the computer introduces a new error, called the **arithmetic error** and we have

$$\text{Approximate Solution} = \text{Numerical Solution} + \text{Arithmetic Error}.$$

The error involved in the numerical solution when compared to the exact solution can be worse than the mathematical error and is now given by

$$\text{Exact Solution} = \text{Numerical Solution} + \text{Mathematical Error} + \text{Arithmetic Error}.$$

The **Total Error** is defined as

$$\text{Total Error} = \text{Mathematical Error} + \text{Arithmetic Error}.$$

A digital calculating device can hold only a finite number of digits because of memory restrictions. Therefore, a number cannot be stored exactly. Certain approximation needs to be done, and only an approximate value of the given number will finally be stored in the device. For further calculations, this approximate value is used instead of the exact value of the number. This is the source of arithmetic error.

In this chapter, we introduce the floating-point representation of a real number and illustrate a few ways to obtain floating-point approximation of a given real number. We further introduce different types of errors that we come across in numerical

analysis and their effects in the computation. At the end of this chapter, we will be familiar with the arithmetic errors, their effect on computed results and some ways to minimize this error in the computation.

## 2.1 Floating-Point Representation

Let  $\beta \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\beta \geq 2$ . Any real number can be represented exactly in **base**  $\beta$  as

$$(-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n d_{n+1} \cdots)_\beta \times \beta^e, \quad (2.1.1)$$

where  $d_i \in \{0, 1, \dots, \beta - 1\}$  with  $d_1 \neq 0$  or  $d_1 = d_2 = d_3 = \cdots = 0$ ,  $s = 0$  or  $1$ , and an appropriate integer  $e$  called the **exponent**. Here

$$(.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n d_{n+1} \cdots)_\beta = \frac{d_1}{\beta} + \frac{d_2}{\beta^2} + \cdots + \frac{d_n}{\beta^n} + \frac{d_{n+1}}{\beta^{n+1}} + \cdots \quad (2.1.2)$$

is a  $\beta$ -fraction called the **mantissa**,  $s$  is called the **sign** and the number  $\beta$  is called the **radix**. The representation (2.1.1) of a real number is called the **floating-point representation**.

**Remark 2.1.** When  $\beta = 2$ , the floating-point representation (2.1.1) is called the **binary floating-point representation** and when  $\beta = 10$ , it is called the **decimal floating-point representation**. Throughout this course, we always take  $\beta = 10$ .  $\square$

Due to memory restrictions, a computing device can store only a finite number of digits in the mantissa. In this section, we introduce the floating-point approximation and discuss how a given real number can be approximated.

### 2.1.1 Floating-Point Approximation

A computing device stores a real number with only a finite number of digits in the mantissa. Although different computing devices have different ways of representing the numbers, here we introduce a mathematical form of this representation, which we will use throughout this course.

**Definition 2.2** ( *$n$ -Digit Floating-point Number*).

Let  $\beta \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\beta \geq 2$ . An  $n$ -digit floating-point number in base  $\beta$  is of the form

$$(-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n)_\beta \times \beta^e \quad (2.1.3)$$

where

$$(.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n)_\beta = \frac{d_1}{\beta} + \frac{d_2}{\beta^2} + \cdots + \frac{d_n}{\beta^n} \quad (2.1.4)$$

where  $d_i \in \{0, 1, \dots, \beta - 1\}$  with  $d_1 \neq 0$  or  $d_1 = d_2 = d_3 = \cdots = 0$ ,  $s = 0$  or  $1$ , and an appropriate exponent  $e$ .

**Remark 2.3.** When  $\beta = 2$ , the  $n$ -digit floating-point representation (2.1.3) is called the  **$n$ -digit binary floating-point representation** and when  $\beta = 10$ , it is called the  **$n$ -digit decimal floating-point representation**.  $\square$

**Example 2.4.** The following are examples of real numbers in the decimal floating point representation.

- (1) The real number  $x = 6.238$  is represented in the decimal floating-point representation as

$$6.238 = (-1)^0 \times 0.6238 \times 10^1,$$

in which case, we have  $s = 0$ ,  $\beta = 10$ ,  $e = 1$ ,  $d_1 = 6$ ,  $d_2 = 2$ ,  $d_3 = 3$  and  $d_4 = 8$ .

- (2) The real number  $x = -0.0014$  is represented in the decimal floating-point representation as

$$x = (-1)^1 \times 0.14 \times 10^{-2}.$$

Here  $s = 1$ ,  $\beta = 10$ ,  $e = -2$ ,  $d_1 = 1$  and  $d_2 = 4$ .  $\square$

**Remark 2.5.** The floating-point representation of the number  $1/3$  is

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.33333 \dots = (-1)^0 \times (0.33333 \dots)_{10} \times 10^0.$$

An  $n$ -digit decimal floating-point representation of this number has to contain only  $n$  digits in its mantissa. Therefore, the representation (2.1.3) is (in general) only an approximation to a real number.  $\square$

Any computing device has its own memory limitations in storing a real number. In terms of the floating-point representation, these limitations lead to the restrictions in the number of digits in the mantissa ( $n$ ) and the range of the exponent ( $e$ ). In section 2.1.2, we introduce the concept of under and over flow of memory, which is a result of the restriction in the exponent. The restriction on the length of the mantissa is discussed in section 2.1.3.

### 2.1.2 Underflow and Overflow of Memory

When the value of the exponent  $e$  in a floating-point number exceeds the maximum limit of the memory, we encounter the overflow of memory, whereas when this value goes below the minimum of the range, then we encounter underflow. Thus, for a given computing device, there are real numbers  $m$  and  $M$  such that the exponent  $e$  is limited to a range

$$m < e < M. \quad (2.1.5)$$

During the calculation, if some computed number has an exponent  $e > M$  then we say, the memory **overflow** occurs and if  $e < m$ , we say the memory **underflow** occurs.



**Remark 2.6.** In the case of overflow of memory in a floating-point number, a computer will usually produce meaningless results or simply prints the symbol `inf` or `NaN`. When your computation involves an undetermined quantity (like  $0 \times \infty$ ,  $\infty - \infty$ ,  $0/0$ ), then the output of the computed value on a computer will be the symbol `NaN` (means ‘not a number’). For instance, if  $X$  is a sufficiently large number that results in an overflow of memory when stored on a computing device, and  $x$  is another number that results in an underflow, then their product will be returned as `NaN`.

On the other hand, we feel that the underflow is more serious than overflow in a computation. Because, when underflow occurs, a computer will simply consider the number as zero without any warning. However, by writing a separate subroutine, one can monitor and get a warning whenever an underflow occurs.  $\square$

**Example 2.7 (Overflow).** Run the following MATLAB code on a computer with 32-bit intel processor:

```
i=308.25471;
fprintf('%f %f\n',i,10^i);
i=308.25472;
fprintf('%f %f\n',i,10^i);
```

We see that the first print command shows a meaningful (but very large) number, whereas the second print command simply prints `inf`. This is due to the overflow of memory while representing a very large real number.

Also try running the following code on the MATLAB:

```
i=308.25471;
fprintf('%f %f\n',i,10^i/10^i);
i=308.25472;
fprintf('%f %f\n',i,10^i/10^i);
```

The output will be

```
308.254710  1.000000
308.254720  NaN
```

If your computer is not showing `inf` for  $i = 308.25472$ , try increasing the value of  $i$  till you get `inf`.  $\square$

**Example 2.8 (Underflow).** Run the following MATLAB code on a computer with 32-bit intel processor:

```
j=-323.6;
if(10^j>0)
```

```
    fprintf('The given number is greater than zero\n');  
elseif (10^j==0)  
    fprintf('The given number is equal to zero\n');  
else  
    fprintf('The given number is less than zero\n');  
end
```

The output will be

The given number is greater than zero

When the value of  $j$  is further reduced slightly as shown in the following program

```
j=-323.64;  
if(10^j>0)  
    fprintf('The given number is greater than zero\n');  
elseif (10^j==0)  
    fprintf('The given number is equal to zero\n');  
else  
    fprintf('The given number is less than zero\n');  
end
```

the output shows

The given number is equal to zero

If your computer is not showing the above output, try decreasing the value of  $j$  till you get the above output.

In this example, we see that the number  $10^{-323.64}$  is recognized as zero by the computer. This is due to the underflow of memory. Note that multiplying any large number by this number will give zero as answer. If a computation involves such an underflow of memory, then there is a danger of having a large difference between the actual value and the computed value.  $\square$

### 2.1.3 Chopping and Rounding a Number

The number of digits in the mantissa, as given in Definition 2.2, is called the **precision** or **length** of the floating-point number. In general, a real number can have infinitely many digits, which a computing device cannot hold in its memory. Rather, each computing device will have its own limitation on the length of the mantissa. If a given real number has infinitely many digits in the mantissa of the floating-point form as in (2.1.1), then the computing device converts this number into an  $n$ -digit floating-point form as in (2.1.3). Such an approximation is called the **floating-point approximation** of a real number.

There are many ways to get floating-point approximation of a given real number. Here we introduce two types of floating-point approximation.

**Definition 2.9 (Chopped and Rounded Numbers).**

Let  $x$  be a real number given in the floating-point representation (2.1.1) as

$$x = (-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n d_{n+1} \cdots)_\beta \times \beta^e.$$

The floating-point approximation of  $x$  using  **$n$ -digit chopping** is given by

$$\text{fl}(x) = (-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n)_\beta \times \beta^e. \quad (2.1.6)$$

The floating-point approximation of  $x$  using  **$n$ -digit rounding** is given by

$$\text{fl}(x) = \begin{cases} (-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n)_\beta \times \beta^e & , \quad 0 \leq d_{n+1} < \frac{\beta}{2} \\ (-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots (d_n + 1))_\beta \times \beta^e & , \quad \frac{\beta}{2} \leq d_{n+1} < \beta \end{cases}, \quad (2.1.7)$$

where

$$(-1)^s \times (.d_1 d_2 \cdots (d_n + 1))_\beta \times \beta^e := (-1)^s \times \left( (.d_1 d_2 \cdots d_n)_\beta + (. \underbrace{00 \cdots 0}_{(n-1)\text{-times}} 1)_\beta \right) \times \beta^e.$$

As already mentioned, throughout this course, we always take  $\beta = 10$ . **Also, we do not assume any restriction on the exponent  $e \in \mathbb{Z}$ .**

**Example 2.10.** The floating-point representation of  $\pi$  is given by

$$\pi = (-1)^0 \times (.31415926 \cdots) \times 10^1.$$

The floating-point approximation of  $\pi$  using **five-digit chopping** is

$$\text{fl}(\pi) = (-1)^0 \times (.31415) \times 10^1,$$

which is equal to 3.1415. Since the sixth digit of the mantissa in the floating-point representation of  $\pi$  is a 9, the floating-point approximation of  $\pi$  using **five-digit rounding** is given by

$$\text{fl}(\pi) = (-1)^0 \times (.31416) \times 10^1,$$

which is equal to 3.1416. □

**Remark 2.11.** Most of the modern processors, including Intel, uses IEEE 754 standard format. This format uses 52 bits in mantissa, (64-bit binary representation), 11 bits in exponent and 1 bit for sign. This representation is called the **double precision number**.

When we perform a computation without any floating-point approximation, we say that the computation is done using **infinite precision** (also called **exact arithmetic**). □

### 2.1.4 Arithmetic Using $n$ -Digit Rounding and Chopping

In this subsection, we describe the procedure of performing arithmetic operations using  $n$ -digit rounding. The procedure of performing arithmetic operation using  $n$ -digit chopping is done in a similar way.

Let  $\odot$  denote any one of the basic arithmetic operations ‘+’, ‘−’, ‘ $\times$ ’ and ‘ $\div$ ’. Let  $x$  and  $y$  be real numbers. The process of computing  $x \odot y$  using  $n$ -digit rounding is as follows.

**Step 1:** Get the  $n$ -digit rounding approximation  $\text{fl}(x)$  and  $\text{fl}(y)$  of the numbers  $x$  and  $y$ , respectively.

**Step 2:** Perform the calculation  $\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y)$  using exact arithmetic.

**Step 3:** Get the  $n$ -digit rounding approximation  $\text{fl}(\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y))$  of  $\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y)$ .

The result from step 3 is the value of  $x \odot y$  using  $n$ -digit rounding.

**Example 2.12.** Consider the function

$$f(x) = x(\sqrt{x+1} - \sqrt{x}).$$

Let us evaluate  $f(100000)$  using a six-digit rounding. We have

$$f(100000) = 100000(\sqrt{100001} - \sqrt{100000}).$$

The evaluation of  $\sqrt{100001}$  using six-digit rounding is as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{100001} &\approx 316.229347 \\ &= 0.316229347 \times 10^3.\end{aligned}$$

The six-digit rounded approximation of  $0.316229347 \times 10^3$  is given by  $0.316229 \times 10^3$ . Therefore,

$$\text{fl}(\sqrt{100001}) = 0.316229 \times 10^3.$$

Similarly,

$$\text{fl}(\sqrt{100000}) = 0.316228 \times 10^3.$$

The six-digit rounded approximation of the difference between these two numbers is

$$\text{fl}(\text{fl}(\sqrt{100001}) - \text{fl}(\sqrt{100000})) = 0.1 \times 10^{-2}.$$

Finally, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{fl}(f(100000)) &= \text{fl}(100000) \times (0.1 \times 10^{-2}) \\ &= (0.1 \times 10^6) \times (0.1 \times 10^{-2}) \\ &= 100.\end{aligned}$$

Using six-digit chopping, the value of  $\text{fl}(f(100000))$  is 200. □

**Definition 2.13 (Machine Epsilon).**

The **machine epsilon** of a computer is the smallest positive floating-point number  $\delta$  such that

$$\text{fl}(1 + \delta) > 1.$$

For any floating-point number  $\hat{\delta} < \delta$ , we have  $\text{fl}(1 + \hat{\delta}) = 1$ , and  $1 + \hat{\delta}$  and  $1$  are identical within the computer's arithmetic.

**Remark 2.14.** From Example 2.8, it is clear that the machine epsilon for a 32-bit intel processor lies between the numbers  $10^{-323.64}$  and  $10^{-323.6}$ . It is possible to get the exact value of this number, but it is no way useful in our present course, and so we will not attempt to do this here.  $\square$

## 2.2 Types of Errors

The approximate representation of a real number obviously differs from the actual number, whose difference is called an **error**.

**Definition 2.15 (Errors).**

(1) The **error** in a computed quantity is defined as

$$\text{Error} = \text{True Value} - \text{Approximate Value}.$$

(2) Absolute value of an error is called the **absolute error**.

(3) The **relative error** is a measure of the error in relation to the size of the true value as given by

$$\text{Relative Error} = \frac{\text{Error}}{\text{True Value}}.$$

Here, we assume that the true value is non-zero.

(4) The **percentage error** is defined as

$$\text{Percentage Error} = 100 \times |\text{Relative Error}|.$$

**Remark 2.16.** Let  $x_A$  denote the approximation to the real number  $x$ . We use the following notations:

$$E(x_A) := \text{Error}(x_A) = x - x_A. \quad (2.2.8)$$

$$E_a(x_A) := \text{Absolute Error}(x_A) = |E(x_A)| \quad (2.2.9)$$

$$E_r(x_A) := \text{Relative Error}(x_A) = \frac{E(x_A)}{x}, \quad x \neq 0. \quad (2.2.10)$$

$\square$

The absolute error has to be understood more carefully because a relatively small difference between two large numbers can appear to be large, and a relatively large difference between two small numbers can appear to be small. On the other hand, the relative error gives a percentage of the difference between two numbers, which is usually more meaningful as illustrated below.

**Example 2.17.** Let  $x = 100000$ ,  $x_A = 99999$ ,  $y = 1$  and  $y_A = 1/2$ . We have

$$E_a(x_A) = 1, \quad E_a(y_A) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Although  $E_a(x_A) > E_a(y_A)$ , we have

$$E_r(x_A) = 10^{-5}, \quad E_r(y_A) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Hence, in terms of percentage error,  $x_A$  has only  $10^{-3}\%$  error when compared to  $x$  whereas  $y_A$  has 50% error when compared to  $y$ .  $\square$

The errors defined above are between a given number and its approximate value. Quite often we also approximate a given function by another function that can be handled more easily. For instance, a sufficiently differentiable function can be approximated using Taylor's theorem 1.29. The error between the function value and the value obtained from the corresponding Taylor's polynomial is defined as **Truncation error** as defined in Definition 1.32.

## 2.3 Loss of Significance

In place of relative error, we often use the concept of **significant digits** that is closely related to relative error.

**Definition 2.18 (Significant  $\beta$ -Digits).**

Let  $\beta$  be a radix and  $x \neq 0$ . If  $x_A$  is an approximation to  $x$ , then we say that  $x_A$  approximates  $x$  to  $r$  **significant  $\beta$ -digits** if  $r$  is the largest non-negative integer such that

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} \leq \frac{1}{2}\beta^{-r+1}. \quad (2.3.11)$$

We also say  $x_A$  has  $r$  **significant  $\beta$ -digits in  $x$** .  $\square$

**Remark 2.19.** When  $\beta = 10$ , we refer significant 10-digits by significant digits.  $\square$

**Example 2.20.**

- (1) For  $x = 1/3$ , the approximate number  $x_A = 0.333$  has three significant digits, since

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} = 0.001 < 0.005 = 0.5 \times 10^{-2}.$$

Thus,  $r = 3$ .

- (2) For  $x = 0.02138$ , the approximate number  $x_A = 0.02144$  has three significant digits, since

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} \approx 0.0028 < 0.005 = 0.5 \times 10^{-2}.$$

Thus,  $r = 3$ .

- (3) For  $x = 0.02132$ , the approximate number  $x_A = 0.02144$  has two significant digits, since

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} \approx 0.0056 < 0.05 = 0.5 \times 10^{-1}.$$

Thus,  $r = 2$ .

- (4) For  $x = 0.02138$ , the approximate number  $x_A = 0.02149$  has two significant digits, since

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} \approx 0.0051 < 0.05 = 0.5 \times 10^{-1}.$$

Thus,  $r = 2$ .

- (5) For  $x = 0.02108$ , the approximate number  $x_A = 0.0211$  has three significant digits, since

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} \approx 0.0009 < 0.005 = 0.5 \times 10^{-2}.$$

Thus,  $r = 3$ .

- (6) For  $x = 0.02108$ , the approximate number  $x_A = 0.02104$  has three significant digits, since

$$\frac{|x - x_A|}{|x|} \approx 0.0019 < 0.005 = 0.5 \times 10^{-2}.$$

Thus,  $r = 3$ . □

**Remark 2.21.** Number of significant digits roughly measures the number of leading non-zero digits of  $x_A$  that are correct relative to the corresponding digits in the true value  $x$ . However, this is not a precise way to get the number of significant digits as it is evident from the above examples. □

The role of significant digits in numerical calculations is very important in the sense that the loss of significant digits may result in drastic amplification of the relative error as illustrated in the following example.

**Example 2.22.** Let us consider two real numbers

$$x = 7.6545428 = 0.76545428 \times 10^1 \text{ and } y = 7.6544201 = 0.76544201 \times 10^1.$$

The numbers

$$x_A = 7.6545421 = 0.76545421 \times 10^1 \text{ and } y_A = 7.6544200 = 0.76544200 \times 10^1$$

are approximations to  $x$  and  $y$ , correct to seven and eight significant digits, respectively. The exact difference between  $x_A$  and  $y_A$  is

$$z_A = x_A - y_A = 0.12210000 \times 10^{-3}$$

and the exact difference between  $x$  and  $y$  is

$$z = x - y = 0.12270000 \times 10^{-3}.$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{|z - z_A|}{|z|} \approx 0.0049 < 0.5 \times 10^{-2}$$

and hence  $z_A$  has only three significant digits with respect to  $z$ . Thus, we started with two approximate numbers  $x_A$  and  $y_A$  which are correct to seven and eight significant digits with respect to  $x$  and  $y$  respectively, but their difference  $z_A$  has only three significant digits with respect to  $z$ . Hence, there is a loss of significant digits in the process of subtraction. A simple calculation shows that

$$E_r(z_A) \approx 53581 \times E_r(x_A).$$

Similarly, we have

$$E_r(z_A) \approx 375067 \times E_r(y_A).$$

Loss of significant digits is therefore dangerous. The loss of significant digits in the process of calculation is referred to as **Loss of Significance**.  $\square$

**Example 2.23.** Consider the function

$$f(x) = x(\sqrt{x+1} - \sqrt{x}).$$

From Example 2.12, the value of  $f(100000)$  using six-digit rounding is 100, whereas the true value is 158.113. There is a drastic error in the value of the function, which is due to the loss of significant digits. It is evident that as  $x$  increases, the terms  $\sqrt{x+1}$  and  $\sqrt{x}$  comes closer to each other and therefore loss of significance in their computed value increases.

Such a loss of significance can be avoided by rewriting the given expression of  $f$  in such a way that subtraction of near-by non-negative numbers is avoided. For instance, we can re-write the expression of the function  $f$  as



$$f(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x+1} + \sqrt{x}}.$$

With this new form of  $f$ , we obtain  $f(100000) = 158.114000$  using six-digit rounding.

□

**Example 2.24.** Consider evaluating the function

$$f(x) = 1 - \cos x$$

near  $x = 0$ . Since  $\cos x \approx 1$  for  $x$  near zero, there will be loss of significance in the process of evaluating  $f(x)$  for  $x$  near zero. So, we have to use an alternative formula for  $f(x)$  such as

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= 1 - \cos x \\ &= \frac{1 - \cos^2 x}{1 + \cos x} \\ &= \frac{\sin^2 x}{1 + \cos x} \end{aligned}$$

which can be evaluated quite accurately for small  $x$ .

□

**Remark 2.25.** Unlike the above examples, we may not be able to write an equivalent formula for the given function to avoid loss of significance in the evaluation. In such cases, we have to go for a suitable approximation of the given function by other functions, for instance Taylor's polynomial of desired degree, that do not involve loss of significance.

□

## 2.4 Propagation of Relative Error in Arithmetic Operations

Once an error is committed, it affects subsequent results as this error propagates through subsequent calculations. We first study how the results are affected by using approximate numbers instead of actual numbers and then will take up the effect of errors on function evaluation in the next section.

Let  $x_A$  and  $y_A$  denote the approximate numbers used in the calculation, and let  $x_T$  and  $y_T$  be the corresponding true values. We will now see how relative error propagates with the four basic arithmetic operations.

### 2.4.1 Addition and Subtraction

Let  $x_T = x_A + \epsilon$  and  $y_T = y_A + \eta$  be positive real numbers. The relative error  $E_r(x_A \pm y_A)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 E_r(x_A \pm y_A) &= \frac{(x_T \pm y_T) - (x_A \pm y_A)}{x_T \pm y_T} \\
 &= \frac{(x_T \pm y_T) - (x_T - \epsilon \pm (y_T - \eta))}{x_T \pm y_T}
 \end{aligned}$$

Upon simplification, we get

$$E_r(x_A \pm y_A) = \frac{\epsilon \pm \eta}{x_T \pm y_T}. \quad (2.4.12)$$

The above expression shows that there can be a drastic increase in the relative error during subtraction of two approximate numbers whenever  $x_T \approx y_T$  as we have witnessed in Examples 2.22 and 2.23. On the other hand, it is easy to see from (2.4.12) that

$$|E_r(x_A + y_A)| \leq |E_r(x_A)| + |E_r(y_A)|,$$

which shows that the relative error propagates slowly in addition. Note that such an inequality in the case of subtraction is not possible.

### 2.4.2 Multiplication

The relative error  $E_r(x_A \times y_A)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 E_r(x_A \times y_A) &= \frac{(x_T \times y_T) - (x_A \times y_A)}{x_T \times y_T} \\
 &= \frac{(x_T \times y_T) - ((x_T - \epsilon) \times (y_T - \eta))}{x_T \times y_T} \\
 &= \frac{\eta x_T + \epsilon y_T - \epsilon \eta}{x_T \times y_T} \\
 &= \frac{\epsilon}{x_T} + \frac{\eta}{y_T} - \left(\frac{\epsilon}{x_T}\right) \left(\frac{\eta}{y_T}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$E_r(x_A \times y_A) = E_r(x_A) + E_r(y_A) - E_r(x_A)E_r(y_A). \quad (2.4.13)$$

Taking modulus on both sides, we get

$$|E_r(x_A \times y_A)| \leq |E_r(x_A)| + |E_r(y_A)| + |E_r(x_A)| |E_r(y_A)|$$

Note that when  $|E_r(x_A)|$  and  $|E_r(y_A)|$  are very small, then their product is negligible when compared to  $|E_r(x_A)| + |E_r(y_A)|$ . Therefore, the above inequality reduces to

$$|E_r(x_A \times y_A)| \lesssim |E_r(x_A)| + |E_r(y_A)|,$$

which shows that the relative error propagates slowly in multiplication.

### 2.4.3 Division

The relative error  $E_r(x_A/y_A)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 E_r(x_A/y_A) &= \frac{(x_T/y_T) - (x_A/y_A)}{x_T/y_T} \\
 &= \frac{(x_T/y_T) - ((x_T - \epsilon)/(y_T - \eta))}{x_T/y_T} \\
 &= \frac{x_T(y_T - \eta) - y_T(x_T - \epsilon)}{x_T(y_T - \eta)} \\
 &= \frac{\epsilon y_T - \eta x_T}{x_T(y_T - \eta)} \\
 &= \frac{y_T}{y_T - \eta} (E_r(x_A) - E_r(y_A))
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$E_r(x_A/y_A) = \frac{1}{1 - E_r(y_A)} (E_r(x_A) - E_r(y_A)). \quad (2.4.14)$$

The above expression shows that the relative error increases drastically during division whenever  $E_r(y_A) \approx 1$ . This means that  $y_A$  has 100% error when compared to  $y$ , which is very unlikely because we always expect the relative error to be very small, ie., very close to zero. In this case the right hand side is approximately equal to  $E_r(x_A) - E_r(y_A)$ . Hence, we have

$$|E_r(x_A/y_A)| \lesssim |E_r(x_A) - E_r(y_A)| \leq |E_r(x_A)| + |E_r(y_A)|,$$

which shows that the relative error propagates slowly in division.

### 2.4.4 Total Error

In Subsection 2.1.4, we discussed the procedure of performing arithmetic operations using  $n$ -digit floating-point approximation. The computed value  $\text{fl}(\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y))$  involves an error (when compared to the exact value  $x \odot y$ ) which comprises of

- (1) Error in  $\text{fl}(x)$  and  $\text{fl}(y)$  due to  $n$ -digit rounding or chopping of  $x$  and  $y$ , respectively, and
- (2) Error in  $\text{fl}(\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y))$  due to  $n$ -digit rounding or chopping of the number  $\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y)$ .

The **total error** is defined as

$$(x \odot y) - \text{fl}(\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y)) = [(x \odot y) - (\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y))] + [(\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y)) - \text{fl}(\text{fl}(x) \odot \text{fl}(y))],$$

in which the first term on the right hand side is called the **propagated error** and the second term is called the **floating-point error**. The **relative total error** is obtained by dividing both sides of the above expression by  $x \odot y$ .

**Example 2.26.** Consider evaluating the integral

$$I_n = \int_0^1 \frac{x^n}{x+5} dx, \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, \dots, 30.$$

The value of  $I_n$  can be obtained in two different iterative processes, namely,

(1) The **forward iteration** for evaluating  $I_n$  is given by

$$I_n = \frac{1}{n} - 5I_{n-1}, \quad I_0 = \ln(6/5).$$

(2) The **backward iteration** for evaluating  $I_{n-1}$  is given by

$$I_{n-1} = \frac{1}{5n} - \frac{1}{5}I_n, \quad I_{30} = 0.54046330 \times 10^{-2}.$$

The following table shows the computed value of  $I_n$  using both iterative formulas along with the exact value. The numbers are computed using MATLAB using double precision arithmetic and the final answer is rounded to 6 digits after the decimal point.

$n$	Forward Iteration	Backward Iteration	Exact Value
1	0.088392	0.088392	0.088392
5	0.028468	0.028468	0.028468
10	0.015368	0.015368	0.015368
15	0.010522	0.010521	0.010521
20	0.004243	0.007998	0.007998
25	11.740469	0.006450	0.006450
30	-36668.803026	Not Computed	0.005405

Clearly the backward iteration gives exact value up to the number of digits shown, whereas forward iteration tends to increase error and give entirely wrong values. This is due to the propagation of error from one iteration to the next iteration. In forward iteration, the total error from one iteration is magnified by a factor of 5 at the next iteration. In backward iteration, the total error from one iteration is divided by 5 at the next iteration. Thus, in this example, with each iteration, the total error tends to increase rapidly in the forward iteration and tends to increase very slowly in the backward iteration.  $\square$

## 2.5 Propagation of Relative Error in Function Evaluation

For a given function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , consider evaluating  $f(x)$  at an approximate value  $x_A$  rather than at  $x$ . The question is **how well does  $f(x_A)$  approximate  $f(x)$** ? To answer this question, we compare  $E_r(f(x_A))$  with  $E_r(x_A)$ .

Assume that  $f$  is a  $C^1$  function. Using the mean-value theorem, we get

$$f(x) - f(x_A) = f'(\xi)(x - x_A),$$

where  $\xi$  is an unknown point between  $x$  and  $x_A$ . The relative error in  $f(x_A)$  when compared to  $f(x)$  is given by

$$E_r(f(x_A)) = \frac{f'(\xi)}{f(x)}(x - x_A).$$

Thus, we have

$$E_r(f(x_A)) = \left( \frac{f'(\xi)}{f(x)} x \right) E_r(x_A). \quad (2.5.15)$$

Since  $x_A$  and  $x$  are assumed to be very close to each other and  $\xi$  lies between  $x$  and  $x_A$ , we may make the approximation

$$f(x) - f(x_A) \approx f'(x)(x - x_A).$$

In view of (2.5.15), we have

$$E_r(f(x_A)) \approx \left( \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} x \right) E_r(x_A). \quad (2.5.16)$$

The expression inside the bracket on the right hand side of (2.5.16) is the amplification factor for the relative error in  $f(x_A)$  in terms of the relative error in  $x_A$ . Thus, this expression plays an important role in understanding the propagation relative error in evaluating the function value  $f(x)$  and hence motivates the following definition.

**Definition 2.27 (Condition Number of a Function).**

*The **condition number** of a continuously differentiable function  $f$  at a point  $x = c$  is given by*

$$\left| \frac{f'(c)}{f(c)} c \right|. \quad (2.5.17)$$

The condition number of a function at a point  $x = c$  can be used to decide whether the evaluation of the function at  $x = c$  is well-conditioned or ill-conditioned depending on whether this condition number is smaller or larger as we approach this point. It is not possible to decide a priori how large the condition number should be to say that the function evaluation is ill-conditioned and it depends on the circumstances in which we are working.

**Definition 2.28 (Well-Conditioned and Ill-Conditioned).**

The process of evaluating a continuously differentiable function  $f$  at a point  $x = c$  is said to be **well-conditioned** if the condition number

$$\left| \frac{f'(c)}{f(c)} c \right|$$

at  $c$  is ‘small’. The process of evaluating a function at  $x = c$  is said to be **ill-conditioned** if it is not well-conditioned.

**Example 2.29.** Consider the function  $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ , for all  $x \in [0, \infty)$ . Then

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}, \text{ for all } x \in [0, \infty).$$

The condition number of  $f$  is

$$\left| \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} x \right| = \frac{1}{2}, \text{ for all } x \in [0, \infty)$$

which shows that taking square roots is a well-conditioned process. From (2.5.16), we have

$$|E_r(f(x_A))| \approx \frac{1}{2} |E_r(x_A)|.$$

Thus,  $E_r(f(x_A))$  is more closer to zero than  $E_r(x_A)$ . □

**Example 2.30.** Consider the function

$$f(x) = \frac{10}{1 - x^2}, \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Then  $f'(x) = 20x/(1 - x^2)^2$ , so that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} x \right| &= \left| \frac{(20x/(1 - x^2)^2)x}{10/(1 - x^2)} \right| \\ &= \frac{2x^2}{|1 - x^2|} \end{aligned}$$

and this number can be quite large for  $|x|$  near 1. Thus, for  $x$  near 1 or -1, the process of evaluating this function is ill-conditioned. □

The above two examples gives us a feeling that if the process of evaluating a function is well-conditioned, then we tend to get less propagating relative error. But, this is not true in general as shown in the following example.

**Example 2.31.** Consider the function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x+1} - \sqrt{x}, \text{ for all } x \in (0, \infty).$$

For all  $x \in (0, \infty)$ , the condition number of this function is

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} x \right| &= \frac{1}{2} \left| \frac{\left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+1}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} \right)}{\sqrt{x+1} - \sqrt{x}} x \right| \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{x}{\sqrt{x+1}\sqrt{x}} \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.18}$$

which shows that the process of evaluating  $f$  is well-conditioned for all  $x \in (0, \infty)$ . But, if we calculate  $f(12345)$  using six-digit rounding, we find

$$f(12345) = \sqrt{12346} - \sqrt{12345} = 111.113 - 111.108 = 0.005,$$

while, actually,  $f(12345) = 0.00450003262627751 \dots$ . The calculated answer has 10% error.  $\square$

The above example shows that a well-conditioned process of evaluating a function at a point is not enough to ensure the accuracy in the corresponding computed value. We need to check for the stability of the computation, which we discuss in the following subsection.

### 2.5.1 Stable and Unstable Computations

Suppose there are  $n$  steps to evaluate a function  $f(x)$  at a point  $x = c$ . Then the total process of evaluating this function is said to have **instability** if atleast one of the  $n$  steps is ill-conditioned. If all the steps are well-conditioned, then the process is said to be **stable**.

**Example 2.32.** We continue the discussion in example 2.31 and check the stability in evaluating the function  $f$ . Let us analyze the computational process. The function  $f$  consists of the following four computational steps in evaluating the value of  $f$  at  $x = x_0$ :

$$x_1 := x_0 + 1, \quad x_2 := \sqrt{x_1}, \quad x_3 := \sqrt{x_0}, \quad x_4 := x_2 - x_3.$$

Now consider the last two steps where we already computed  $x_2$  and now going to compute  $x_3$  and finally evaluate the function

$$f_4(t) := x_2 - t.$$

At this step, the condition number for  $f_4$  is given by

$$\left| \frac{f'_4(t)}{f_4(t)} t \right| = \left| \frac{t}{x_2 - t} \right|.$$

Thus,  $f_4$  is ill-conditioned when  $t$  approaches  $x_2$ . Therefore, the above process of evaluating the function  $f(x)$  is **unstable**.

Let us rewrite the same function  $f(x)$  as

$$\tilde{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+1} + \sqrt{x}}.$$

The computational process of evaluating  $\tilde{f}$  at  $x = x_0$  is

$$x_1 := x_0 + 1, \quad x_2 := \sqrt{x_1}, \quad x_3 := \sqrt{x_0}, \quad x_4 := x_2 + x_3, \quad x_5 := 1/x_4.$$

It is easy to verify that the condition number of each of the above steps is well-conditioned. For instance, the last step defines

$$\tilde{f}_5(t) = \frac{1}{x_2 + t},$$

and the condition number of this function is approximately,

$$\left| \frac{\tilde{f}'_5(x)}{\tilde{f}_5(x)} x \right| = \left| \frac{t}{x_2 + t} \right| \approx \frac{1}{2}$$

for  $t$  sufficiently close to  $x_2$ . Therefore, this process of evaluating  $\tilde{f}(x)$  is stable. Recall from example 2.23 that the above expression gives a more accurate value for sufficiently large  $x$ .  $\square$

**Remark 2.33.** As discussed in Remark 2.25, we may not be lucky all the time to come out with an alternate expression that lead to stable evaluation for any given function when the original expression leads to unstable evaluation. In such situations, we have to compromise and go for a suitable approximation with other functions with stable evaluation process. For instance, we may try approximating the given function with its Taylor's polynomial, if possible.  $\square$



## 2.6 Exercises

### Floating-Point Approximation

- (1) Let  $X$  be a sufficiently large number which result in an overflow of memory on a computing device. Let  $x$  be a sufficiently small number which result in underflow of memory on the same computing device. Then give the output of the following operations:
  - (i)  $x \times X$       (ii)  $3 \times X$       (iii)  $3 \times x$       (iv)  $x/X$       (v)  $X/x$ .
- (2) In the following problems, show all the steps involved in the computation.
  - (i) Using 5-digit rounding, compute  $37654 + 25.874 - 37679$ .
  - (ii) Let  $a = 0.00456$ ,  $b = 0.123$ ,  $c = -0.128$ . Using 3-digit rounding, compute  $(a + b) + c$ , and  $a + (b + c)$ . What is your conclusion?
  - (iii) Let  $a = 2$ ,  $b = -0.6$ ,  $c = 0.602$ . Using 3-digit rounding, compute  $a \times (b + c)$ , and  $(a \times b) + (a \times c)$ . What is your conclusion?
- (3) To find the mid-point of an interval  $[a, b]$ , the formula  $\frac{a+b}{2}$  is often used. Compute the mid-point of the interval  $[0.982, 0.987]$  using 3-digit chopping. On the number line represent all the three points. What do you observe? Now use the more geometric formula  $a + \frac{b-a}{2}$  to compute the mid-point, once again using 3-digit chopping. What do you observe this time? Why is the second formula more geometric?
- (4) In a computing device that uses  $n$ -digit rounding binary floating-point arithmetic, show that  $\delta = 2^{-n}$  is the machine epsilon. What is the machine epsilon in a computing device that uses  $n$ -digit rounding decimal floating-point arithmetic? Justify your answer.

### Types of Errors

- (5) If  $\text{fl}(x)$  is the approximation of a real number  $x$  in a computing device, and  $\epsilon$  is the corresponding relative error, then show that  $\text{fl}(x) = (1 - \epsilon)x$ .
- (6) Let  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  be real numbers whose floating point approximations in a computing device coincide with  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  respectively. Show that the relative error in computing  $x(y + z)$  equals  $\epsilon_1 + \epsilon_2 - \epsilon_1\epsilon_2$ , where  $\epsilon_1 = E_r(\text{fl}(y + z))$  and  $\epsilon_2 = E_r(\text{fl}(x \times \text{fl}(y + z)))$ .
- (7) Let  $\epsilon = E_r(\text{fl}(x))$ . Show that
  - (i)  $|\epsilon| \leq 10^{-n+1}$  if the computing device uses  $n$ -digit (decimal) chopping.
  - (ii)  $|\epsilon| \leq \frac{1}{2}10^{-n+1}$  if the computing device uses  $n$ -digit (decimal) rounding.
  - (iii) Can the equality hold in the above inequalities?

- (8) For small values of  $x$ , the approximation  $\sin x \approx x$  is often used. Estimate the error in using this formula with the aid of Taylor's theorem. For what range of values of  $x$  will this approximation give an absolute error of at most  $\frac{1}{2}10^{-6}$ ? (**Quiz 1, Spring 2011**)
- (9) Let  $x_A = 3.14$  and  $y_A = 2.651$  be obtained from  $x_T$  and  $y_T$  using 4-digit rounding. Find the smallest interval that contains  
 (i)  $x_T$     (ii)  $y_T$     (iii)  $x_T + y_T$     (iv)  $x_T - y_T$     (v)  $x_T \times y_T$     (vi)  $x_T/y_T$ .
- (10) The ideal gas law is given by  $PV = nRT$  where  $R$  is the gas constant. We are interested in knowing the value of  $T$  for which  $P = V = n = 1$ . If  $R$  is known only approximately as  $R_A = 8.3143$  with an absolute error at most  $0.12 \times 10^{-2}$ . What is the relative error in the computation of  $T$  that results in using  $R_A$  instead of  $R$ ?

### Loss of Significance and Propagation of Error

- (11) Obtain the number of significant digits in  $x_A$  when compared to  $x$  for the following cases:  
 (i)  $x = 451.01$  and  $x_A = 451.023$  (ii)  $x = -0.04518$  and  $x_A = -0.045113$   
 (iii)  $x = 23.4604$  and  $x = 23.4213$ .
- (12) Instead of using the true values  $x_T = 0.71456371$  and  $y_T = 0.71456238$  in calculating  $z_T = x_T - y_T (= 0.133 \times 10^{-5})$ , if we use the approximate values  $x_A = 0.71456414$  and  $y_A = 0.71456103$ , and calculate  $z_A = x_A - y_A (= 0.311 \times 10^{-5})$ , then find the loss of significant digits in the process of calculating  $z_A$  when compared to the significant digits in  $x_A$ .
- (13) Let  $x < 0 < y$  be such that the approximate numbers  $x_A$  and  $y_A$  has seven and nine significant digits with  $x$  and  $y$  respectively. Show that  $z_A := x_A - y_A$  has at least six significant digits when compared to  $z := x - y$ .

### Propagation of Relative Error

- (14) Let  $x = 0.65385$  and  $y = 0.93263$ . Obtain the total error in obtaining the product of these two numbers using 3-digit rounding calculation.
- (15) Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be continuously differentiable functions such that
- there exists constant  $M > 0$  such that  $|f'(x)| \geq M$  and  $|g'(x)| \leq M$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,
  - the process of evaluating  $f$  is well-conditioned, and
  - the process of evaluating  $g$  is ill-conditioned.

Show that  $|g(x)| < |f(x)|$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(Mid-Sem, Spring 2011)

- (16) Find the condition number at a point  $x = c$  for the following functions  
 (i)  $f(x) = x^2$ , (ii)  $g(x) = \pi^x$ , (iii)  $h(x) = b^x$ .
- (17) Let  $x_T$  be a real number. Let  $x_A = 2.5$  be an approximate value of  $x_T$  with an absolute error at most 0.01. The function  $f(x) = x^3$  is evaluated at  $x = x_A$  instead of  $x = x_T$ . Estimate the resulting absolute error.
- (18) Is the process of computing the function  $f(x) = (e^x - 1)/x$  stable or unstable for  $x \approx 0$ ? Justify your answer. **(Quiz1, Autumn 2010)**
- (19) Show that the process of evaluating the function

$$f(x) = \frac{1 - \cos x}{x^2}$$

for  $x \approx 0$  is unstable. Suggest an alternate formula for evaluating  $f$  for  $x \approx 0$ , and check if the computation process is stable using this new formula.

- (20) Check for stability of computing the function

$$f(x) = \left(x + \frac{1}{3}\right) - \left(x - \frac{1}{3}\right)$$

for large values of  $x$ .

- (21) Check for stability of computing the function

$$g(x) = \frac{\left(3 + \frac{x^2}{3}\right) - \left(3 - \frac{x^2}{3}\right)}{x^2}$$

for values of  $x$  very close to 0.

- (22) Check for stability of computing the function

$$h(x) = \frac{\sin^2 x}{1 - \cos^2 x}$$

for values of  $x$  very close to 0.

- (23) Compute the values of the function

$$\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}}$$

using your calculator (without simplifying the given formula) at  $x = 89.9, 89.95, 89.99$  degrees. Also compute the values of the function  $\tan x$  at these values of  $x$  and compare the number of significant digits.

## CHAPTER 3

---

### Numerical Linear Algebra

In this chapter, we study the methods for solving system of linear equations, and computing an eigenvalue and the corresponding eigen vector for a matrix. The methods for solving linear systems is categorized into two types, namely, **direct methods** and **iterative methods**. Theoretically, direct methods give exact solution of a linear system and therefore these methods do not involve mathematical error. However, when we implement the direct methods on a computer, because of the presence of arithmetic error, the computed value from a computer will still be an approximate solution. On the other hand, an iterative method generates a sequence of approximate solutions to a given linear system which is expected to converge to the exact solution.

An important direct method is the well-known **Gaussian elimination method**. After a short introduction to linear systems in Section 3.1, we discuss the direct methods in Section 3.2. We recall the Gaussian elimination method in Subsection 3.2.1 and study the effect of arithmetic error in the computed solution. We further count the number of arithmetic operations involved in computing the solution. This operation count reveals that this method is more expensive in terms of computational time. In particular, when the given system is of tri-diagonal structure, the Gaussian elimination method can be suitably modified so that the resulting method, called the **Thomas algorithm**, is more efficient in terms of computational time. After introducing the Thomas algorithm in Subsection 3.2.4, we discuss the **LU factorization** methods for a given matrix and solving a system of linear equation using LU factorization in Subsection 3.2.5.

Some matrices are sensitive to even a small error in the right hand side vector of a linear system. Such a matrix can be identified with the help of the **condition number** of the matrix. The condition number of a matrix is defined in terms of the matrix norm. In Section 3.3, we introduce the notion of matrix norms, define condition number of a matrix and discuss few important theorems that are used in the error analysis of iterative methods. We continue the chapter with the discussion of iterative methods to linear system in Section 3.4, where we introduce two basic iterative methods and discuss the sufficient condition under which the methods converge.

We end this section with the definition of the residual error and another iterative method called the **residual corrector method**.

Finally in section 3.5 we discuss the power method, which is used to capture the dominant eigenvalue and a corresponding eigen vectors of a given matrix. We end the chapter with the Gerschgorin's Theorem and its application to power method.

### 3.1 System of Linear Equations

General form of a system of  $n$  linear equations in  $n$  variables is

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n &= b_1, \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n &= b_2, \\ &\vdots \\ &\vdots \\ &\vdots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n &= b_n. \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.1}$$

Throughout this chapter, we assume that the coefficients  $a_{ij}$  and the right hand side numbers  $b_i$ ,  $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$  are real.

The above system of linear equations can be written in the matrix notation as

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.1.2}$$

The last equation is usually written in the short form

$$A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}, \tag{3.1.3}$$

where  $A$  stands for the  $n \times n$  matrix with entries  $a_{ij}$ ,  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$  and the right hand side vector  $\mathbf{b} = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)^T$ .

Let us now state a result concerning the solvability of the system (3.1.2).

**Theorem 3.1.** *Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix and  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then the following statements concerning the system of linear equations  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  are equivalent.*

(1)  $\det(A) \neq 0$

(2) For each right hand side vector  $\mathbf{b}$ , the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  has a unique solution  $\mathbf{x}$ .

(3) For  $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$ , the only solution of the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  is  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ .

We always assume that the coefficient matrix  $A$  is invertible. Any discussion of what happens when  $A$  is not invertible is outside the scope of this course.

## 3.2 Direct Methods for Linear Systems

In this section, we discuss two direct methods namely, the Gaussian elimination method and the LU factorization method. We also introduce the Thomas algorithm, which is a particular case of the Gaussian elimination method for tri-diagonal systems.

### 3.2.1 Naive Gaussian Elimination Method

Let us describe the Gaussian elimination method to solve a system of linear equations in three variables. The method for a general system is similar.

Consider the following system of three linear equations in three variables  $x_1, x_2, x_3$ :

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 &= b_1, \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 &= b_2, \\ a_{31}x_1 + a_{32}x_2 + a_{33}x_3 &= b_3. \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.4}$$

For convenience, we call the first, second, and third equations by names  $E_1$ ,  $E_2$ , and  $E_3$  respectively.

**Step 1:** If  $a_{11} \neq 0$ , then define

$$m_{21} = \frac{a_{21}}{a_{11}}, \quad m_{31} = \frac{a_{31}}{a_{11}}. \tag{3.2.5}$$

We will now obtain a new system that is equivalent to the system (3.2.4) as follows:

- Retain the first equation  $E_1$  as it is.
- Replace the second equation  $E_2$  by the equation  $E_2 - m_{21}E_1$ .
- Replace the third equation  $E_3$  by the equation  $E_3 - m_{31}E_1$ .

The new system equivalent to (3.2.4) is given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 &= b_1 \\ 0 + a_{22}^{(2)}x_2 + a_{23}^{(2)}x_3 &= b_2^{(2)} \\ 0 + a_{32}^{(2)}x_2 + a_{33}^{(2)}x_3 &= b_3^{(2)}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.6}$$

where the coefficients  $a_{ij}^{(2)}$ , and  $b_k^{(2)}$  are given by

$$\left. \begin{aligned} a_{ij}^{(2)} &= a_{ij} - m_{i1}a_{1j}, & i, j &= 2, 3 \\ b_k^{(2)} &= b_k - m_{k1}b_1, & k &= 2, 3. \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (3.2.7)$$

Note that the variable  $x_1$  has been eliminated from the last two equations.

**Step 2:** If  $a_{22}^{(2)} \neq 0$ , then define

$$m_{32} = \frac{a_{32}^{(2)}}{a_{22}^{(2)}}. \quad (3.2.8)$$

We still use the same names  $E_1, E_2, E_3$  for the first, second, and third equations of the modified system (3.2.6), respectively. We will now obtain a new system that is equivalent to the system (3.2.6) as follows:

- Retain the first two equations in (3.2.6) as they are.
- Replace the third equation by the equation  $E_3 - m_{32}E_2$ .

The new system is given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 &= b_1 \\ 0 + a_{22}^{(2)}x_2 + a_{23}^{(2)}x_3 &= b_2^{(2)} \\ 0 + 0 + a_{33}^{(3)}x_3 &= b_3^{(3)}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.9)$$

where the coefficient  $a_{33}^{(3)}$ , and  $b_3^{(3)}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{33}^{(3)} &= a_{33}^{(2)} - m_{32}a_{23}^{(2)}, \\ b_3^{(3)} &= b_3^{(2)} - m_{32}b_2^{(2)}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the variable  $x_2$  has been eliminated from the last equation. This phase of the (Naive) Gaussian elimination method is called **Forward elimination phase**.

Observe that the system (3.2.9) is readily solvable for  $x_3$  if the coefficient  $a_{33}^{(3)} \neq 0$ . Substituting the value of  $x_3$  in the second equation of (3.2.9), we can solve for  $x_2$ . Substituting the values of  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  in the first equation, we can solve for  $x_1$ . This solution phase of the (Naive) Gaussian elimination method is called **Backward substitution phase**.

The coefficient matrix of the system (3.2.9) is an upper triangular matrix given by

$$U = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ 0 & a_{22}^{(2)} & a_{23}^{(2)} \\ 0 & 0 & a_{33}^{(3)} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.2.10)$$

Define a lower triangular matrix  $L$  by

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ m_{21} & 1 & 0 \\ m_{31} & m_{32} & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.2.11)$$

It is easy to verify that  $LU = A$ .

**Remark 3.2 (Why Naive?).** We explain why the word “Naive” is used for the method described above.

- (1) First of all, we do not know if the method described here can be successfully applied for all systems of linear equations which are uniquely solvable (that is, the coefficient matrix is invertible).
- (2) Secondly, even when we apply the method successfully, it is not clear if the computed solution is the exact solution. In fact, it is not even clear that the computed solution is close to the exact solution.

We illustrate these points in Example 3.3 and Example 3.4. □

**Example 3.3.** Consider the system of equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.2.12)$$

The Step 1 cannot be started as  $a_{11} = 0$ . Thus the naive Gaussian elimination method fails. □

**Example 3.4.** Let  $0 < \epsilon \ll 1$ . Consider the system of equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} \epsilon & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.2.13)$$

Since  $\epsilon \neq 0$ , after Step 1 of the Naive Gaussian elimination method, we get the system

$$\begin{pmatrix} \epsilon & 1 \\ 0 & 1 - \epsilon^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 - \epsilon^{-1} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.2.14)$$

Thus the solution is given by

$$x_2 = \frac{2 - \epsilon^{-1}}{1 - \epsilon^{-1}}, \quad x_1 = (1 - x_2)\epsilon^{-1}. \quad (3.2.15)$$

Note that for a sufficiently small  $\epsilon$ , the computer evaluates  $2 - \epsilon^{-1}$  as  $-\epsilon^{-1}$ , and  $1 - \epsilon^{-1}$  also as  $-\epsilon^{-1}$ . Thus,  $x_2 \approx 1$  and as a consequence  $x_1 \approx 0$ . However the exact/correct solution is given by

$$x_1 = \frac{1}{1 - \epsilon} \approx 1, \quad x_2 = \frac{1 - 2\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon} \approx 1. \quad (3.2.16)$$

Thus, in this particular example, the solution obtained by the naive Gaussian elimination method is completely wrong.

To understand this example better, we instruct the reader to solve the system (3.2.13) for the cases (1)  $\epsilon = 10^{-3}$ , and (2)  $\epsilon = 10^{-5}$  using 3-digit rounding. □



Let us see a numerical example.

**Example 3.5.** Consider the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} 6x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 &= -2 \\ 2x_1 + \frac{2}{3}x_2 + \frac{1}{3}x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.17}$$

Let us solve this system using (naive) Gaussian elimination method using 4-digit rounding.

In 4-digit rounding approximation, the above system takes the form

$$\begin{aligned} 6.000x_1 + 2.000x_2 + 2.000x_3 &= -2.000 \\ 2.000x_1 + 0.6667x_2 + 0.3333x_3 &= 1.000 \\ 1.000x_1 + 2.000x_2 - 1.000x_3 &= 0.000 \end{aligned}$$

After eliminating  $x_1$  from the second and third equations, we get (with  $m_{21} = 0.3333$ ,  $m_{31} = 0.1667$ )

$$\begin{aligned} 6.000x_1 + 2.000x_2 + 2.000x_3 &= -2.000 \\ 0.000x_1 + 0.0001x_2 - 0.3333x_3 &= 1.667 \\ 0.000x_1 + 1.667x_2 - 1.333x_3 &= 0.3334 \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.18}$$

After eliminating  $x_2$  from the third equation, we get (with  $m_{32} = 16670$ )

$$\begin{aligned} 6.000x_1 + 2.000x_2 + 2.000x_3 &= -2.000 \\ 0.000x_1 + 0.0001x_2 - 0.3333x_3 &= 1.667 \\ 0.000x_1 + 0.0000x_2 + 5555x_3 &= -27790 \end{aligned}$$

Using back substitution, we get  $x_1 = 1.335$ ,  $x_2 = 0$  and  $x_3 = -5.003$ , whereas the actual solution is  $x_1 = 2.6$ ,  $x_2 = -3.8$  and  $x_3 = -5$ . The difficulty with this elimination process is that the second equation in (3.2.18), where the coefficient of  $x_2$  should have been zero, but rounding error prevented it and makes the relative error very large.  $\square$

The above examples highlight the inadequacy of the Naive Gaussian elimination method. These inadequacies can be overcome by modifying the procedure of Naive Gaussian elimination method. There are many kinds of modification. We will discuss one of the most popular modified methods which is called **Modified Gaussian elimination method with partial pivoting**.

### 3.2.2 Modified Gaussian Elimination Method with Partial Pivoting

Consider the following system of three linear equations in three variables  $x_1, x_2, x_3$ :

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 &= b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 &= b_2 \\ a_{31}x_1 + a_{32}x_2 + a_{33}x_3 &= b_3. \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.19)$$

For convenience, we call the first, second, and third equations by names  $E_1$ ,  $E_2$ , and  $E_3$  respectively.

**Step 1:** Define  $s_1 = \max \{ |a_{11}|, |a_{21}|, |a_{31}| \}$ . Note that  $s_1 \neq 0$  (why?). Let  $k$  be the least number such that  $s_1 = |a_{k1}|$ . Interchange the first equation and the  $k^{\text{th}}$  equation. Let us re-write the system after this modification.

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}^{(1)}x_1 + a_{12}^{(1)}x_2 + a_{13}^{(1)}x_3 &= b_1^{(1)} \\ a_{21}^{(1)}x_1 + a_{22}^{(1)}x_2 + a_{23}^{(1)}x_3 &= b_2^{(1)} \\ a_{31}^{(1)}x_1 + a_{32}^{(1)}x_2 + a_{33}^{(1)}x_3 &= b_3^{(1)}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.20)$$

where

$$a_{11}^{(1)} = a_{k1}, a_{12}^{(1)} = a_{k2}, a_{13}^{(1)} = a_{k3}, a_{k1}^{(1)} = a_{11}, a_{k2}^{(1)} = a_{12}, a_{k3}^{(1)} = a_{13}; b_1^{(1)} = b_k, b_k^{(1)} = b_1, \quad (3.2.21)$$

and rest of the coefficients  $a_{ij}^{(1)}$  are same as  $a_{ij}$  as all equations other than the first and  $k^{\text{th}}$  remain untouched by the interchange of first and  $k^{\text{th}}$  equation. Now eliminate the  $x_1$  variable from the second and third equations of the system (3.2.20). Define

$$m_{21} = \frac{a_{21}^{(1)}}{a_{11}^{(1)}}, \quad m_{31} = \frac{a_{31}^{(1)}}{a_{11}^{(1)}}. \quad (3.2.22)$$

We will now obtain a new system that is equivalent to the system (3.2.20) as follows:

- The first equation will be retained as it is.
- Replace the second equation by the equation  $E_2 - m_{21}E_1$ .
- Replace the third equation by the equation  $E_3 - m_{31}E_1$ .

The new system is given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}^{(1)}x_1 + a_{12}^{(1)}x_2 + a_{13}^{(1)}x_3 &= b_1^{(1)} \\ 0 + a_{22}^{(2)}x_2 + a_{23}^{(2)}x_3 &= b_2^{(2)} \\ 0 + a_{32}^{(2)}x_2 + a_{33}^{(2)}x_3 &= b_3^{(2)}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.23)$$

where the coefficients  $a_{ij}^{(2)}$ , and  $b_k^{(2)}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{ij}^{(2)} &= a_{ij}^{(1)} - m_{i1}a_{1j}^{(1)}, \quad i, j = 2, 3 \\ b_i^{(2)} &= b_i^{(1)} - m_{i1}b_1^{(1)}, \quad i = 2, 3. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the variable  $x_1$  has been eliminated from the last two equations.

**Step 2:** Define  $s_2 = \max \left\{ |a_{22}^{(2)}|, |a_{32}^{(2)}| \right\}$ . Note that  $s_2 \neq 0$  (why?). Let  $l$  be the least number such that  $s_l = |a_{l2}^{(2)}|$ . Interchange the second row and the  $l^{\text{th}}$  rows. Let us re-write the system after this modification.

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}^{(1)}x_1 + a_{12}^{(1)}x_2 + a_{13}^{(1)}x_3 &= b_1^{(1)} \\ 0 + a_{22}^{(3)}x_2 + a_{23}^{(3)}x_3 &= b_2^{(3)} \\ 0 + a_{32}^{(3)}x_2 + a_{33}^{(3)}x_3 &= b_3^{(3)}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.24}$$

where the coefficients  $a_{ij}^{(3)}$ , and  $b_i^{(3)}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{22}^{(3)} &= a_{l2}^{(2)}, a_{23}^{(3)} = a_{l3}^{(2)}, a_{l2}^{(3)} = a_{22}^{(2)}, a_{l3}^{(3)} = a_{23}^{(2)}, \\ b_2^{(3)} &= b_l^{(2)}, b_l^{(3)} = b_2^{(2)} \end{aligned}$$

We still use the same names  $E_1, E_2, E_3$  for the first, second, and third equations of the modified system (3.2.24), respectively.

In case  $l = 2$ , both second and third equations stay as they are. Let us now eliminate  $x_2$  from the last equation. Define

$$m_{32} = \frac{a_{32}^{(3)}}{a_{22}^{(3)}} \tag{3.2.25}$$

We will now obtain a new system that is equivalent to the system (3.2.24) as follows:

- The first two equations in (3.2.24) will be retained as they are.
- Replace the third equation by the equation  $E_3 - m_{32}E_2$ .

The new system is given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}^{(1)}x_1 + a_{12}^{(1)}x_2 + a_{13}^{(1)}x_3 &= b_1^{(1)} \\ 0 + a_{22}^{(3)}x_2 + a_{23}^{(3)}x_3 &= b_2^{(3)} \\ 0 + 0 + a_{33}^{(4)}x_3 &= b_3^{(4)}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.26}$$

where the coefficient  $a_{33}^{(4)}$ , and  $b_3^{(4)}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} a_{33}^{(4)} &= a_{33}^{(3)} - m_{32}a_{23}^{(3)}, \\ b_3^{(4)} &= b_3^{(3)} - m_{32}b_2^{(3)}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the variable  $x_2$  has been eliminated from the last equation. This phase of the modified Gaussian elimination method is called **Forward elimination phase with partial pivoting**.

Now the system (3.2.26) is readily solvable for  $x_3$  if the coefficient  $a_{33}^{(4)} \neq 0$ . In fact, it is non-zero (why?). Substituting the value of  $x_3$  in the second equation of (3.2.26), we can solve for  $x_2$ . Substituting the values of  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  in the first equation, we can solve for  $x_1$ . This solution phase of the modified Gaussian elimination method with partial pivoting is called **Backward substitution phase**.

### 3.2.3 Operations Count in Naive Gaussian Elimination Method

It is important to know the length of a computation and for that reason, we count the number of arithmetic operations involved in Gaussian elimination. Let us divide the count into three parts.

- (1) **The elimination step:** We now count the additions/subtractions, multiplications and divisions in going from the given system to the triangular system.

Step	Additions/Subtractions	Multiplications	Divisions
1	$(n-1)^2$	$(n-1)^2$	$n-1$
2	$(n-2)^2$	$(n-2)^2$	$n-2$
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.
$n-1$	1	1	1
Total	$\frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6}$	$\frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6}$	$\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$

Here we use the formula

$$\sum_{j=1}^p j = \frac{p(p+1)}{2}, \quad \sum_{j=1}^p j^2 = \frac{p(p+1)(2p+1)}{6}, \quad p \geq 1.$$

Let us explain the first row of the above table. In the first step, computation of  $m_{21}, m_{31}, \dots, m_{n1}$  involve  $(n-1)$  divisions. For each  $i, j = 2, 3, \dots, n$ , the computation of  $a_{ij}^{(2)}$  involves a multiplication and a subtraction. In total, there are  $(n-1)^2$  multiplications and  $(n-1)^2$  subtractions. Note that we do not count the operations involved in computing the coefficients of  $x_1$  in the 2<sup>nd</sup> to  $n^{\text{th}}$  equations (namely,  $a_{i1}^{(2)}$ ), as we do not compute them and simply take them as zero. Similarly, other entries in the above table can be accounted for.

- (2) **Modification of the right side:** Proceeding as before, we get

$$\text{Addition/Subtraction} = (n-1) + (n-2) + \dots + 1 = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

$$\text{Multiplication/Division} = (n-1) + (n-2) + \cdots + 1 = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

(3) **The back substitution:**

$$\text{Addition/Subtraction} = (n-1) + (n-2) + \cdots + 1 = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

$$\text{Multiplication/Division} = n + (n-1) + \cdots + 1 = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$

**Total number of operations:** The total number of operations in obtaining  $x$  is

$$\text{Addition/Subtraction} = \frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \frac{n(n-1)(2n+5)}{6}$$

$$\text{Multiplication/Division} = \frac{n(n^2 + 3n - 1)}{3}$$

Even if we take only multiplication and division into consideration, we see that for large value of  $n$ , the operation count required for Gaussian elimination is about  $\frac{1}{3}n^3$ . This means that as  $n$  doubled, the cost of solving the linear system goes up by a factor of 8. In addition, most of the cost of Gaussian elimination is in the elimination step. For elimination, we have

$$\text{Multiplication/Division} = \frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \frac{n^3}{3} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \approx \frac{1}{3}n^3.$$

The operation count in

$$\text{Elimination step} = O(n^3),$$

$$\text{RHS modification} = O(n^2),$$

$$\text{Backward substitution} = O(n^2),$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Hence, once the elimination part is completed, it is much less expensive to solve the linear system.

### 3.2.4 Thomas Method for Tri-diagonal System

The Gaussian elimination method can be simplified in the case of a tri-diagonal system so as to increase the efficiency. The resulting simplified method is called the **Thomas method**.

A tri-diagonal system of linear equations is of the form

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccl}
 \beta_1 x_1 + \gamma_1 x_2 + 0x_3 & +0x_4 & +0x_5 & +0x_6 & +\cdots & +0x_{n-2} & +0x_{n-1} & +0x_n & = & b_1 \\
 \alpha_2 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \gamma_2 x_3 & +0x_4 & +0x_5 & +0x_6 & +\cdots & +0x_{n-2} & +0x_{n-1} & +0x_n & = & b_2 \\
 0x_1 & +\alpha_3 x_2 + \beta_3 x_3 + \gamma_3 x_4 & +0x_5 & +0x_6 & +\cdots & +0x_{n-2} & +0x_{n-1} & +0x_n & = & b_3 \\
 0x_1 & +0x_2 & +\alpha_4 x_3 + \beta_4 x_4 + \gamma_4 x_5 & +0x_6 & +\cdots & +0x_{n-2} & +0x_{n-1} & +0x_n & = & b_4 \\
 & & & & \cdots & & & & & \\
 & & & & \cdots & & & & & \\
 & & & & \cdots & & & & & 
 \end{array} \tag{3.2.27}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
 0x_1 & +0x_2 & +0x_3 & +0x_4 & +0x_5 & +0x_6 & +\cdots & +\alpha_{n-1}x_{n-2} & +\beta_{n-1}x_{n-1} & +\gamma_{n-1}x_n & = & b_{n-1} \\
 0x_1 & +0x_2 & +0x_3 & +0x_4 & +0x_5 & +0x_6 & +\cdots & +0x_{n-2} & +\alpha_n x_{n-1} & +\beta_n x_n & = & b_n
 \end{array}$$

Here, we assume that all  $\alpha_i, i = 2, 3, \dots, n$ ,  $\beta_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , and  $\gamma_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$  are non-zero.

The first equation of the system reads

$$\beta_1 x_1 + \gamma_1 x_2 = b_1.$$

This equation can be rewritten as

$$x_1 + e_1 x_2 = f_1, \quad e_1 = \frac{\gamma_1}{\beta_1}, \quad f_1 = \frac{b_1}{\beta_1}.$$

Eliminating  $x_1$  from the second equation of the system (3.2.27) by multiplying the above equation by  $\alpha_2$  and subtracting the resulting equation with the second equation of (3.2.27), we get

$$x_2 + e_2 x_3 = f_2, \quad e_2 = \frac{\gamma_2}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2 e_1}, \quad f_2 = \frac{b_2 - \alpha_2 f_1}{\beta_2 - \alpha_2 e_1}.$$

We now generalize the above procedure by assuming that the  $j^{\text{th}}$  equation is reduced to the form

$$x_j + e_j x_{j+1} = f_j,$$

where  $e_j$  and  $f_j$  are known quantity, reduce the  $(j+1)^{\text{th}}$  equation in the form

$$x_{j+1} + e_{j+1} x_{j+2} = f_{j+1}, \quad e_{j+1} = \frac{\gamma_{j+1}}{\beta_{j+1} - \alpha_{j+1} e_j}, \quad f_{j+1} = \frac{b_{j+1} - \alpha_{j+1} f_j}{\beta_{j+1} - \alpha_{j+1} e_j},$$

for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n-2$ . Note that for  $j = n-2$ , we obtain the  $j+1 = (n-1)^{\text{th}}$  equation as

$$x_{n-1} + e_{n-1} x_n = f_{n-1}, \quad e_{n-1} = \frac{\gamma_{n-1}}{\beta_{n-1} - \alpha_{n-1} e_{n-2}}, \quad f_{n-1} = \frac{b_{n-1} - \alpha_{n-1} f_{n-2}}{\beta_{n-1} - \alpha_{n-1} e_{n-2}}.$$

To obtain the reduced form of the  $n^{\text{th}}$  equation of the system (3.2.27), eliminate  $x_{n-1}$  from the  $n^{\text{th}}$  equation by multiplying the above equation by  $\alpha_n$  and subtracting the resulting equation with the  $n^{\text{th}}$  equation of (3.2.27), which gives

$$(\alpha_n e_{n-1} - \beta_n)x_n = \alpha_n f_{n-1} - b_n.$$

Thus, the given tri-diagonal system (3.2.27) is now reduced to the system

$$\begin{array}{rcl} x_1 + e_1 x_2 + 0x_3 + 0x_4 + 0x_5 + 0x_6 + \cdots + 0x_{n-2} + 0x_{n-1} + 0x_n & = & f_1 \\ 0x_1 + x_2 + e_2 x_3 + 0x_4 + 0x_5 + 0x_6 + \cdots + 0x_{n-2} + 0x_{n-1} + 0x_n & = & f_2 \\ \vdots & & \\ \vdots & & \\ \vdots & & \\ 0x_1 + 0x_2 + 0x_3 + 0x_4 + 0x_5 + 0x_6 + \cdots + 0x_{n-2} + x_{n-1} + e_{n-1} x_n & = & f_{n-1} \\ 0x_1 + 0x_2 + 0x_3 + 0x_4 + 0x_5 + 0x_6 + \cdots + 0x_{n-2} + 0x_{n-1} + (\alpha_n e_{n-1} - \beta_n)x_n & = & \alpha_n f_{n-1} - b_n \end{array}$$

which is an upper triangular matrix and hence, by back substitution we can get the solution.

**Remark 3.6.** If the denominator of any of the  $e_j$ 's or  $f_j$ 's is zero, then the Thomas method fails. This is the situation when  $\beta_j - \alpha_j e_{j-1} = 0$  which is the coefficient of  $x_j$  in the reduced equation. A suitable partial pivoting as done in the modified Gaussian elimination method may sometime help us to overcome this problem.  $\square$

### 3.2.5 LU Factorization

In Theorem 3.1, we have stated that when a matrix is invertible, then the corresponding linear system can be solved. Let us now ask the next question:

‘Can we give examples of a class(es) of invertible matrices for which the system of linear equations (3.1.2) given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix}$$

is “easily” solvable?’

There are three types of matrices whose simple structure makes the linear system solvable “readily”. These matrices are as follows:

(1) **Invertible Diagonal matrices:** These matrices look like

$$\begin{pmatrix} d_1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & d_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & d_n \end{pmatrix}$$

and  $d_i \neq 0$  for each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . In this case, the solution  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$  is given by  $\mathbf{x} = \left( \frac{b_1}{d_1}, \frac{b_2}{d_2}, \dots, \frac{b_n}{d_n} \right)^T$ .

(2) **Invertible Lower triangular matrices:** These matrices look like

$$\begin{pmatrix} l_{11} & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ l_{21} & l_{22} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ l_{n1} & l_{n2} & l_{n3} & \cdots & l_{nn} \end{pmatrix}$$

and  $l_{ii} \neq 0$  for each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . The linear system takes the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} l_{11} & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ l_{21} & l_{22} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ l_{n1} & l_{n2} & l_{n3} & \cdots & l_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.2.28)$$

From the first equation, we solve for  $x_1$  given by

$$x_1 = \frac{b_1}{l_{11}}.$$

Substituting this value of  $x_1$  in the second equation, we get the value of  $x_2$  as

$$x_2 = \frac{b_2 - l_{21} \frac{b_1}{l_{11}}}{l_{22}}.$$

Proceeding in this manner, we solve for the vector  $\mathbf{x}$ . This procedure of obtaining solution may be called the **forward substitution**.

(3) **Invertible Upper triangular matrices:** These matrices look like

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} & u_{13} & \cdots & u_{1n} \\ 0 & u_{22} & u_{23} & \cdots & u_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & u_{nn} \end{pmatrix}$$

and  $u_{ii} \neq 0$  for each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . The linear system takes the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} & u_{13} & \cdots & u_{1n} \\ 0 & u_{22} & u_{23} & \cdots & u_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & u_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.2.29)$$

From the last equation, we solve for  $x_n$  given by



$$x_n = \frac{b_n}{u_{nn}}.$$

Substituting this value of  $x_n$  in the penultimate equation, we get the value of  $x_{n-1}$  as

$$x_{n-1} = \frac{b_{n-1} - u_{n-1,n} \frac{b_n}{u_{nn}}}{u_{n-1,n-1}}.$$

Proceeding in this manner, we solve for the vector  $\mathbf{x}$ . This procedure of obtaining solution may be called the **backward substitution**.

In general, an invertible matrix  $A$  need not be one among the simple structures listed above. However, in certain situations we can always find an invertible lower triangular matrix  $L$  and an invertible upper triangular matrix  $U$  in such a way that

$$A = LU.$$

In this case, the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  becomes

$$L(U\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{b}.$$

To solve for  $\mathbf{x}$ , we first solve the lower triangular system

$$L\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{b}$$

for the vector  $\mathbf{z}$ , which can be obtained easily using forward substitution. After obtaining  $\mathbf{z}$ , we solve the upper triangular system

$$U\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{z}$$

for the vector  $\mathbf{x}$ , which is again obtained easily using backward substitution.

**Remark 3.7.** In Gaussian elimination method discussed in Section 3.2.1, we have seen that a given matrix  $A$  can be reduced to an upper triangular matrix  $U$  by an elimination procedure and thereby can be solved using backward substitution. In the elimination procedure, we also obtained a lower triangular matrix  $L$  in such a way that

$$A = LU$$

as remarked in this section. □

The above discussion motivates the questions of  $LU$  factorizations of matrices and we turn our attention to these questions.

**Definition 3.8 (LU factorization).** *A matrix  $A$  is said to have **LU factorization** (or **decomposition**) if there exists a lower triangular matrix  $L$  and an upper triangular matrix  $U$  such that*

$$A = LU.$$

Clearly if a matrix has an  $LU$  decomposition, the matrices  $L$  and  $U$  are not unique as

$$A = LU = (LD)(D^{-1}U) = \tilde{L}\tilde{U}$$

for any invertible diagonal matrix  $D$ . Note that  $A = \tilde{L}\tilde{U}$  is also an  $LU$  decomposition of  $A$  as  $\tilde{L}$  is a lower triangular matrix and  $\tilde{U}$  is an upper triangular matrix.

There are three special  $LU$  decompositions that we will discuss now.

### Doolittle's factorization

**Definition 3.9 (Doolittle's factorization).** *A matrix  $A$  is said to have a Doolittle's factorization if there exists a lower triangular matrix  $L$  with all diagonal elements as 1, and an upper triangular matrix  $U$  such that*

$$A = LU.$$

We now state the sufficient condition under which the Doolittle's factorization of a given matrix exists. For this, we need the notion of leading principal minors of a given matrix, which we define first and then state the required theorem.

### Definition 3.10 (Principal Minors of a Matrix).

- (1) Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. A **sub-matrix** of order  $k$  ( $< n$ ) of the matrix  $A$  is a  $k \times k$  matrix obtained by removing  $n - k$  rows and  $n - k$  columns from  $A$ .

The determinant of such a sub-matrix of order  $k$  of  $A$  is called a **minor** of order  $k$  of the matrix  $A$ .

- (2) The **principal sub-matrix** of order  $k$  of the matrix  $A$  is obtained by removing the last  $n - k$  rows and the last  $n - k$  columns from  $A$ .

The determinant of the leading principal sub-matrix of order  $k$  of  $A$  is called the **principal minor** of order  $k$  of the matrix  $A$ .

- (3) A principal sub-matrix and the corresponding principal minor are called the **leading principal sub-matrix** and the **leading principal minor** of order  $k$ , respectively, if  $k < n$ .

**Example 3.11.** Consider the  $3 \times 3$  matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix}.$$

There are two leading principal minors corresponding to the matrix  $A$ .

- The leading principal minor of order 1 of  $A$  is

$$|a_{11}| = a_{11}.$$

- The leading principal minor of order 2 of  $A$  is

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix} = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}.$$

**Theorem 3.12.** *Let  $n \geq 2$ , and  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix such that all of its first  $n - 1$  leading principal minors are non-zero. Then  $A$  has an LU-decomposition where  $L$  is a unit lower triangular matrix and  $U$  is an upper triangular matrix. That is,  $A$  has a Doolittle's factorization.*

**Proof:** Let  $P(n)$  denote the following statement.

“ $P(n)$ : Every  $n \times n$  matrix all of whose first  $n - 1$  leading principal minors are non-zero has a Doolittle's factorization.”

We want to prove that the statement  $P(n)$  is true for all natural numbers that are greater than or equal to 2, using mathematical induction.

**Step 1: ( $P(2)$  is true)** Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{pmatrix}$  be a  $2 \times 2$  matrix such that its leading principal minor is non-zero. We want to prove that  $A$  has a Doolittle's factorization  $A = LU$  where

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ l_{21} & 1 \end{pmatrix}, U = \begin{pmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} \\ 0 & u_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

The equality  $A = LU$  now becomes

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} \\ l_{21}u_{11} & l_{21}u_{12} + u_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.2.30)$$

Equating the elements of the first rows of the two matrices in the equation (3.2.30), we get

$$a_{11} = u_{11}, \quad a_{12} = u_{12}.$$

That is, the first row of  $U$  has been found. Now equating the elements of the second rows of the two matrices in the equation (3.2.30), we get

$$a_{21} = l_{21}u_{11}, \quad a_{22} = l_{21}u_{12} + u_{22}.$$

From the last equation, in view of  $a_{11} \neq 0$  (as it is the leading principal minor of  $A$ ), we get

$$l_{21} = \frac{a_{21}}{u_{11}} = \frac{a_{21}}{a_{11}}, \quad u_{22} = a_{22} - l_{21}u_{12} = a_{22} - \frac{a_{21}}{a_{11}}a_{12}.$$

Thus the statement  $P(2)$  is true.

**Step 2:** Assume that  $P(k)$  is true. We will prove that  $P(k+1)$  is true. Let us assume that  $A$  is an  $(k+1) \times (k+1)$  matrix such that its first  $k$  leading principal minors are non-zero. Let  $A_k$  denote the leading sub-matrix consisting of the first  $k$  rows and

$k$  columns. That is  $(A_k)_{ij} = a_{ij}$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$  and  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Note that all the leading principal minors of the matrix  $A_k$  are non-zero as they are also the leading principal minors of the matrix  $A$ .

By induction hypothesis there exist a unit lower triangular  $k \times k$  matrix  $L_k$ , and an upper triangular  $k \times k$  matrix  $U_k$  such that  $A_k = L_k U_k$ . We will now prove that there exists a matrix  $L$  and  $U$  of the form

$$L = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} & & & 0 \\ & & & \vdots \\ & & & 0 \\ \hline l_{k+1,1} & l_{k+1,2} & \cdots & l_{k+1,k} \\ & & & 1 \end{array} \right), \quad U = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} & & & u_{1,k+1} \\ & & & u_{2,k+1} \\ & & & \vdots \\ & & & u_{k,k+1} \\ \hline 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ & & & u_{k+1,k+1} \end{array} \right).$$

such that

$$A = LU.$$

We claim that there exist real numbers  $l_{k+1,1}, l_{k+1,2}, \dots, l_{k+1,k}$ , and  $u_{1,k+1}, u_{2,k+1}, \dots, u_{k+1,k+1}$  such that

$$LU = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} & & & 0 \\ & & & \vdots \\ & & & 0 \\ \hline l_{k+1,1} & l_{k+1,2} & \cdots & l_{k+1,k} \\ & & & 1 \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} & & & u_{1,k+1} \\ & & & u_{2,k+1} \\ & & & \vdots \\ & & & u_{k,k+1} \\ \hline 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ & & & u_{k+1,k+1} \end{array} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} & & & a_{1,k+1} \\ & & & a_{2,k+1} \\ & & & \vdots \\ & & & a_{k,k+1} \\ \hline a_{k+1,1} & a_{k+1,2} & \cdots & a_{k+1,k} \\ & & & a_{k+1,k+1} \end{array} \right).$$

Note that the  $pq^{\text{th}}$  entry of the matrix  $LU$  is given by

$$(LU)_{pq} = \sum_{j=1}^{k+1} l_{pj} u_{jq} = \sum_{j=1}^{\min\{p,q\}} l_{pj} u_{jq}, \quad (3.2.31)$$

where the last equality follows from the fact that  $L$  and  $U$  are lower and upper triangular matrices respectively. Thus, for  $p, q$  such that  $1 \leq p \leq k$  and  $1 \leq q \leq k$  we get

$$(LU)_{pq} = \sum_{j=1}^{\min\{p,q\}} l_{pj}u_{jq} = (L_k U_k)_{pq} = (A_k)_{pq},$$

as  $A_k = L_k U_k$  holds.

For each  $s = 1, 2, \dots, k+1$ , on equating the elements in the  $(k+1)^{\text{th}}$  column of  $LU$  to those of the matrix  $A$ , in view of (3.2.31), we get the equations

$$a_{s k+1} = \sum_{j=1}^{\min\{s,k+1\}} l_{sj}u_{j k+1} = \sum_{j=1}^s l_{sj}u_{j k+1} = u_{s k+1} + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} l_{sj}u_{j k+1}. \quad (3.2.32)$$

Note that for  $s = 1$ , the equation (3.2.32) reduces to  $a_{1 k+1} = u_{1 k+1}$ , and for  $2 \leq s \leq k+1$ , the equation (3.2.32) gives a recursive formula for computing  $u_{s k+1}$ . Thus the last column of the matrix  $U$  is determined.

For each  $s = 1, 2, \dots, k+1$ , on equating the elements in the  $(k+1)^{\text{th}}$  row of  $LU$  to those of the matrix  $A$ , in view of (3.2.31), we get the equations

$$a_{k+1 s} = \sum_{j=1}^{\min\{s,k+1\}} l_{k+1 j} u_{js} = \sum_{j=1}^s l_{k+1 j} u_{js} = l_{k+1 s} u_{ss} + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} l_{k+1 j} u_{js} \quad (3.2.33)$$

Note that for  $s = 1$ , the equation (3.2.33) reduces to  $a_{k+1 1} = l_{k+1 1} u_{11}$ . Since  $A_k = L_k U_k$ , and  $A_k$  is invertible, it follows that  $u_{ii} \neq 0$  for each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Thus we get  $l_{k+1 1} = \frac{a_{k+1 1}}{u_{11}}$ . For  $2 \leq s \leq k$ , the equation (3.2.33) gives a recursive formula for computing  $l_{k+1 s}$ . Thus the last row of the matrix  $L$  is determined.

This shows that the statement  $P(k+1)$  is true. By the principle of mathematical induction, it follows that  $P(n)$  is true for all  $n \geq 2$ .  $\square$

### Example 3.13 (Computing the Doolittle's factorization for a $3 \times 3$ matrix).

Let us illustrate the direct computation of the factors  $L$  and  $U$  of a  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $A$ , whenever its leading principal minors of order 1, 2, and 3 are non-zero. Write  $A = LU$  as

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ l_{21} & 1 & 0 \\ l_{31} & l_{32} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} & u_{13} \\ 0 & u_{22} & u_{23} \\ 0 & 0 & u_{33} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.2.34)$$

The right hand matrix multiplication yields

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11} &= u_{11}, a_{12} = u_{12}, a_{13} = u_{13}, \\ a_{21} &= l_{21}u_{11}, a_{31} = l_{31}u_{11}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.35)$$

These gives first column of  $L$  and the first row of  $U$ . Next multiply row 2 of  $L$  times columns 2 and 3 of  $U$ , to obtain

$$a_{22} = l_{21}u_{12} + u_{22}, \quad a_{23} = l_{21}u_{13} + u_{23}. \quad (3.2.36)$$

These can be solved for  $u_{22}$  and  $u_{23}$ . Next multiply row 3 of  $L$  to obtain

$$l_{31}u_{12} + l_{32}u_{22} = a_{32}, \quad l_{31}u_{13} + l_{32}u_{23} + u_{33} = a_{33}. \quad (3.2.37)$$

These equations yield values for  $l_{32}$  and  $u_{33}$ , completing the construction of  $L$  and  $U$ . In this process, we must have  $u_{11} \neq 0$ ,  $u_{22} \neq 0$  in order to solve for  $L$ , which is true because of the assumptions that all the leading principal minors of  $A$  are non-zero.

The decomposition we have found is the Doolittle's factorization of  $A$ .  $\square$

**Example 3.14.** Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using (3.2.35), we get

$$u_{11} = 1, \quad u_{12} = 1, \quad u_{13} = -1, \quad l_{21} = \frac{a_{21}}{u_{11}} = 1, \quad l_{31} = \frac{a_{31}}{u_{11}} = -2$$

Using (3.2.36) and (3.2.37),

$$\begin{aligned} u_{22} &= a_{22} - l_{21}u_{12} = 2 - 1 \times 1 = 1 \\ u_{23} &= a_{23} - l_{21}u_{13} = -2 - 1 \times (-1) = -1 \\ l_{32} &= (a_{32} - l_{31}u_{12})/u_{22} = (1 - (-2) \times 1)/1 = 3 \\ u_{33} &= a_{33} - l_{31}u_{13} - l_{32}u_{23} = 1 - (-2) \times (-1) - 3 \times (-1) = 2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain the Doolittle's factorization of  $A$  as

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Further, taking  $\mathbf{b} = (1, 1, 1)^T$ , we now solve the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  using LU factorization, with the matrix  $A$  given above. As discussed earlier, first we have to solve the lower triangular system

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ z_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Forward substitution yields  $z_1 = 1, z_2 = 0, z_3 = 3$ . Keeping the vector  $\mathbf{z} = (1, 0, 3)^T$  as the right hand side, we now solve the upper triangular system

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Backward substitution yields  $x_1 = 1, x_2 = 3/2, x_3 = 3/2$ .  $\square$

### Crout's factorization

In Doolittle's factorization, the lower triangular matrix has special property. If we ask the upper triangular matrix to have special property in the  $LU$  decomposition, it is known as **Crout's factorization**. We give the definition below.

**Definition 3.15 (Crout's factorization).** *A matrix  $A$  is said to have a **Crout's factorization** if there exists a lower triangular matrix  $L$ , and an upper triangular matrix  $U$  with all diagonal elements as 1 such that*

$$A = LU.$$

The computation of the Crout's factorization for a  $3 \times 3$  matrix can be done in a similar way as done for Doolittle's factorization in Example 3.13. For invertible matrices, one can easily obtain Doolittle's factorization from Crout's factorization and vice versa. See the Example ?? below.

### Cholesky's factorization

Before we introduce Cholesky's factorization, we recall the concept of a positive definite matrix.

**Definition 3.16 (Positive Definite Matrix).**

*A symmetric matrix  $A$  is said to be **positive definite** if*

$$\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x} > 0,$$

*for every non-zero vector  $\mathbf{x}$ .*

We state below some useful results concerning positive definite matrices.

**Lemma 3.17.** *The following statements concerning a symmetric  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  are equivalent.*

- (1) *The matrix  $A$  is positive definite.*
- (2) *All the principal minors of the matrix  $A$  are positive.*
- (3) *All the eigenvalues of the matrix  $A$  are positive.*

**Proof:** The statements (1) and (2) are equivalent by definition. The proof of equivalence of (3) with other two statements is out of the scope of this course.  $\square$

We now define Cholesky's factorization.

**Definition 3.18 (Cholesky's factorization).** *A matrix  $A$  is said to have a **Cholesky's factorization** if there exists a lower triangular matrix  $L$  such that*

$$A = LL^T.$$

**Remark 3.19.** It is clear from the definition that if a matrix has a Cholesky's factorization, then the matrix have to be necessarily a symmetric matrix.  $\square$

**Theorem 3.20.** *If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  symmetric and positive definite matrix, then  $A$  has a unique factorization*

$$A = LL^T$$

where  $L$  is a lower triangular matrix with positive diagonal elements.

**Proof:** We prove the theorem by induction. The proof of the theorem is trivial when  $n = 1$ . Let us assume that the theorem holds for  $n = k$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . That is, we assume that for every  $k \times k$  symmetric and positive definite matrix  $B_k$ , there exists a unique lower triangular  $k \times k$  matrix  $\tilde{L}_k$  such that

$$B_k = \tilde{L}_k \tilde{L}_k^T.$$

We prove the theorem for  $n = k + 1$ . Let  $A$  be a  $(k + 1) \times (k + 1)$  symmetric positive definite matrix.

We first observe that the matrix  $A$  can be written as

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_k & \mathbf{a} \\ \mathbf{a}^T & a_{(k+1)(k+1)} \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $A_k$  is the  $k \times k$  principal sub-matrix of  $A$  and  $\mathbf{a} = (a_{1(k+1)}, a_{2(k+1)}, \dots, a_{k(k+1)})^T$ . Observe that  $A_k$  is positive definite and therefore by our assumption, there exists a unique  $k \times k$  lower triangular matrix  $L_k$  such that  $A_k = L_k L_k^T$ . Define

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} L_k & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{l}^T & l_{(k+1)(k+1)} \end{pmatrix},$$

where the real number  $l_{(k+1)(k+1)}$  and the vector  $\mathbf{l} = (l_{1(k+1)}, l_{2(k+1)}, \dots, l_{k(k+1)})^T$  are to be chosen such that  $A = LL^T$ . That is

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_k & \mathbf{a} \\ \mathbf{a}^T & a_{(k+1)(k+1)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} L_k & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{l}^T & l_{(k+1)(k+1)} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} L_k^T & \mathbf{l} \\ \mathbf{0}^T & l_{(k+1)(k+1)} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.2.38)$$

Here  $\mathbf{0}$  denotes the zero vector of dimension  $k$ . Clearly,

$$L_k \mathbf{l} = \mathbf{a}, \quad (3.2.39)$$

which by forward substitution yields the vector  $\mathbf{l}$ . Here, we need to justify that  $L_k$  is invertible, which is left as an exercise.

Finally, we have  $\mathbf{l}^T \mathbf{l} + l_{(k+1)(k+1)}^2 = a_{(k+1)(k+1)}$  and this gives

$$l_{(k+1)(k+1)}^2 = a_{(k+1)(k+1)} - \mathbf{l}^T \mathbf{l}, \quad (3.2.40)$$

provided the positivity of  $l_{(k+1)(k+1)}^2$  is justified, which follows from taking determinant on both sides of (3.2.38) and using the property (3) of Lemma 3.17. A complete proof of this justification is left as an exercise.  $\square$



**Example 3.21.** Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 3 & -2 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 3 & 23 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can check that this matrix is positive definite by any of the equivalent conditions listed in Lemma 3.17. Therefore, we expect a unique Cholesky's factorization for  $A$ .

(1) For  $n = 1$ , we have  $A_1 = (9)$  and therefore let us take  $L_1 = (3)$ .

(2) For  $n = 2$ , we have

$$A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Therefore,

$$L_2 = \begin{pmatrix} L_1 & 0 \\ l & l_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ l & l_{22} \end{pmatrix}.$$

This gives  $l = 1$  and  $l^2 + l_{22}^2 = 2$  or  $l_{22} = 1$ . Thus, we have

$$L_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

(3) For  $n = 3$ , we take

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} L_2 & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{l}^T & l_{33} \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $\mathbf{l}^T = (l_{13}, l_{23})$  and  $l_{33}$  are to be obtained in such a way that  $A = LL^T$ . The vector  $\mathbf{l}$  is obtained by solving the lower triangular system (3.2.39) with  $\mathbf{a} = (-2, 3)^T$  (by forward substitution), which gives  $\mathbf{l} = (-2/3, 11/3)^T$ . Finally, from (3.2.40), we have  $l_{33}^2 = 82/9$ . Thus, the required lower triangular matrix  $L$  is

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2/3 & 11/3 & \sqrt{82}/3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

It is straightforward to check that  $A = LL^T$ . □

It can be observed that the idea of LU factorization method for solving a system of linear equations is parallel to the idea of Gaussian elimination method. However, LU factorization method has an advantage that once the factorization  $A = LU$  is done, the solution of the linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  is reduced to solving two triangular systems. Thus, if we want to solve a large set of linear systems where the coefficient matrix  $A$  is fixed but the right hand side vector  $\mathbf{b}$  varies, we can do the factorization once for  $A$  and then use this factorization with different  $\mathbf{b}$  vectors. This is obviously going to reduce the computation cost drastically as we have seen in the operation counting of Gaussian elimination method that the elimination part is the most expensive part of the computation.

### 3.3 Matrix Norms and Condition Number of a Matrix

Given any two real numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , the distance between them may be taken to be  $|\alpha - \beta|$ . We can also compare their magnitudes  $|\alpha|$  and  $|\beta|$ . Vector Norm may be thought of as a generalization of the Modulus  $|\cdot|$  concept to deal with vectors and in general matrices.

#### Definition 3.22 (Vector Norm).

A **vector norm** on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a function  $\|\cdot\| : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow [0, \infty)$  having the following properties:

- (1)  $\|\mathbf{x}\| \geq 0$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .
- (2)  $\|\mathbf{x}\| = 0$  if and only if  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ .
- (3)  $\|\alpha\mathbf{x}\| = |\alpha|\|\mathbf{x}\|$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and for all  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ .
- (4)  $\|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\| \leq \|\mathbf{x}\| + \|\mathbf{y}\|$  for all  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

The condition 4 in the above definition is called the **triangle inequality**.

We use the following notation for a vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  in terms of its components:

$$\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T.$$

**Example 3.23.** There can be many vector norms on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We will describe three important vector norms defined on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  now.

- (1) **Euclidean Norm** on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is denoted by  $\|\cdot\|_2$ , and is defined by

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^2}. \quad (3.3.41)$$

- (2)  $l_\infty$  **norm**, which is also called **maximum norm**, on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is denoted by  $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ , and is defined by

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty = \max \{ |x_1|, |x_2|, \dots, |x_n| \}. \quad (3.3.42)$$

- (3)  $l_1$  **norm** on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is denoted by  $\|\cdot\|_1$ , and is defined by

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_1 = |x_1| + |x_2| + \dots + |x_n|. \quad (3.3.43)$$

All the three norms defined above are indeed norms; it is easy to verify that they satisfy the defining conditions of a norm given in Definition 3.22.  $\square$

**Example 3.24.** Let us compute norms of some vectors now. Let  $\mathbf{x} = (4, 4, -4, 4)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{y} = (0, 5, 5, 5)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{z} = (6, 0, 0, 0)^T$ . Verify that  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_1 = 16$ ,  $\|\mathbf{y}\|_1 = 15$ ,  $\|\mathbf{z}\|_1 = 6$ ;  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2 = 8$ ,  $\|\mathbf{y}\|_2 = 8.66$ ,  $\|\mathbf{z}\|_2 = 6$ ;  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty = 4$ ,  $\|\mathbf{y}\|_\infty = 5$ ,  $\|\mathbf{z}\|_\infty = 6$ .

From this example we see that asking which vector is big does not make sense. But once the norm is fixed, this question makes sense as the answer depends on the norm used. In this example each vector is big compared to other two but in different norms.  $\square$

**Remark 3.25.** In our computations, we employ any one of the norms depending on convenience. It is a fact that “all vector norms on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  are equivalent”; we will not elaborate further on this.  $\square$

We can also define matrix norms on  $n \times n$  matrices, which helps us in finding distance between two matrices.

**Definition 3.26 (Matrix Norm).**

A **matrix norm** on the vector space of all  $n \times n$  real matrices  $M_n(\mathbb{R})$  is a function  $\| \cdot \| : M_n(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$  having the following properties:

- (1)  $\|A\| \geq 0$  for all  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$ .
- (2)  $\|A\| = 0$  if and only if  $A = 0$ .
- (3)  $\|\alpha A\| = |\alpha| \|A\|$  for all  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  and for all  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ .
- (4)  $\|A + B\| \leq \|A\| + \|B\|$  for all  $A, B \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

As in the case of vector norms, the condition 4 in the above definition is called the **triangle inequality**. For a matrix  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$ , we use the notation

$$A = (a_{ij})_{1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq n}$$

where  $a_{ij}$  denotes the element in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  row and  $j^{\text{th}}$  column of  $A$ .

There can be many matrix norms on  $M_n(\mathbb{R})$ . We will describe some of them now.

**Example 3.27.** The following define norms on  $M_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

- (1)  $\|A\| = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n |a_{ij}|^2}$  .
- (2)  $\|A\| = \max \{ |a_{ij}| : 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq n \}$  .
- (3)  $\|A\| = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n |a_{ij}|$  .

All the three norms defined above are indeed norms; it is easy to verify that they satisfy the defining conditions of a matrix norm of Definition 3.26.  $\square$

Among matrix norms, there are special ones that satisfy very useful and important properties. They are called **Matrix norms subordinate to a vector norm**. As the name suggests, to define them we need to fix a vector norm. We will give a precise definition now.

**Definition 3.28 (Matrix Norm subordinate to a vector norm).**

Let  $\|\cdot\|$  be a vector norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$ . The matrix norm of  $A$  **subordinate** to the vector norm  $\|\cdot\|$  is defined by

$$\|A\| := \sup \{\|A\mathbf{x}\| : \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \|\mathbf{x}\| = 1\}. \quad (3.3.44)$$

The formula (3.3.44) indeed defines a matrix norm on  $M_n(\mathbb{R})$ . The proof of this fact is beyond the scope of our course. In this course, by matrix norm, we always mean a norm subordinate to some vector norm. An equivalent and more useful formula for the matrix norm subordinate to a vector norm is given in the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.29.** For any  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  and a given vector norm  $\|\cdot\|$ , we have

$$\|A\| = \max_{\mathbf{z} \neq 0} \frac{\|A\mathbf{z}\|}{\|\mathbf{z}\|}. \quad (3.3.45)$$

**Proof:** For any  $\mathbf{z} \neq 0$ , we have  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{z}/\|\mathbf{z}\|$  as a unit vector. Hence

$$\max_{\|\mathbf{x}\|=1} \|A\mathbf{x}\| = \max_{\|\mathbf{z}\| \neq 0} \left\| A \left( \frac{\mathbf{z}}{\|\mathbf{z}\|} \right) \right\| = \max_{\|\mathbf{z}\| \neq 0} \frac{\|A\mathbf{z}\|}{\|\mathbf{z}\|}.$$

□

The matrix norm subordinate to a vector norm has additional properties as stated in the following theorem whose proof is left as an exercise.

**Theorem 3.30.** Let  $\|\cdot\|$  be a matrix norm subordinate to a vector norm. Then

- (1)  $\|A\mathbf{x}\| \leq \|A\| \|\mathbf{x}\|$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .
- (2)  $\|I\| = 1$  where  $I$  is the identity matrix.
- (3)  $\|AB\| \leq \|A\| \|B\|$  for all  $A, B \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

□

We will now state a few results concerning matrix norms subordinate to some of the vector norms described in Example 3.23. We will not discuss their proofs.

**Theorem 3.31 (Matrix norm subordinate to the maximum norm).**

The matrix norm subordinate to the  $l_\infty$  **norm** (also called **maximum norm** given in (3.3.42)) on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is denoted by  $\|A\|_\infty$  and is given by

$$\|A\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \sum_{j=1}^n |a_{ij}|. \quad (3.3.46)$$

The norm  $\|A\|_\infty$  given by the formula (3.3.46) is called the **maximum-of-row-sums norm** of  $A$ . □

**Theorem 3.32 (Matrix Norm Subordinate to the  $l_1$ -norm).**

The matrix norm subordinate to the  $l_1$  **norm** (given in (3.3.43)) on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is denoted by  $\|A\|_1$  and is given by

$$\|A\|_1 = \max_{1 \leq j \leq n} \sum_{i=1}^n |a_{ij}|. \quad (3.3.47)$$

The norm  $\|A\|_1$  given by the formula (3.3.47) is called the **maximum-of-column-sums norm** of  $A$ .  $\square$

Description and computation of the matrix norm subordinate to the Euclidean vector norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is more subtle.

**Theorem 3.33 (Matrix norm subordinate to the Euclidean norm).**

The matrix norm subordinate to the  $l_2$  **norm** (also called **Euclidean norm** given in (3.3.41)) on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is denoted by  $\|A\|_2$  and is given by

$$\|A\|_2 = \sqrt{\max_{1 \leq i \leq n} |\lambda_i|}, \quad (3.3.48)$$

where  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  are eigenvalues of the matrix  $A^T A$ . The norm  $\|A\|_2$  given by the formula (3.3.48) is called the **spectral norm** of  $A$ .  $\square$

**Example 3.34.** Let us now compute  $\|A\|_\infty$  and  $\|A\|_2$  for the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

(1)  $\|A\|_\infty = 5$  since

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j=1}^3 |a_{1j}| &= |1| + |1| + |-1| = 3, \\ \sum_{j=1}^3 |a_{2j}| &= |1| + |2| + |-2| = 5, \\ \sum_{j=1}^3 |a_{3j}| &= |-2| + |1| + |1| = 4. \end{aligned}$$

(2)  $\|A\|_2 \approx 3.5934$  as the eigenvalues of  $A^T A$  are  $\lambda_1 \approx 0.0616$ ,  $\lambda_2 \approx 5.0256$  and  $\lambda_3 \approx 12.9128$ . Hence  $\|A\|_2 \approx \sqrt{12.9128} \approx 3.5934$ .  $\square$

The following theorem motivates the condition number for an invertible matrix which is similar to the condition number defined for a function in Section 2.5.1.

**Theorem 3.35.** *Let  $A$  be an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix. Let  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$  be the solutions of the systems*

$$A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b} \text{ and } A\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \tilde{\mathbf{b}},$$

*respectively, where  $\mathbf{b}$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}$  are given vectors. Then*

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{x} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\|}{\|\mathbf{x}\|} \leq \|A\| \|A^{-1}\| \frac{\|\mathbf{b} - \tilde{\mathbf{b}}\|}{\|\mathbf{b}\|} \quad (3.3.49)$$

*for any fixed vector norm and the matrix norm subordinate to this vector norm.*

**Proof:** Since  $A$  is invertible, we have  $\mathbf{x} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}} = A^{-1}(\mathbf{b} - \tilde{\mathbf{b}})$ . Taking norms on both sides and using the fact that  $\|A\mathbf{x}\| \leq \|A\|\|\mathbf{x}\|$  (see Theorem 3.30) holds for every  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , we get

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\| \leq \|A^{-1}\| \|\mathbf{b} - \tilde{\mathbf{b}}\| \quad (3.3.50)$$

The last inequality (3.3.50) estimates the error in the solution caused by error on the right hand side vector of the linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ . The inequality (3.3.49) is concerned with estimating the relative error in the solution in terms of the relative error in the right hand side vector  $\mathbf{b}$ .

Since  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ , we get  $\|\mathbf{b}\| = \|A\mathbf{x}\| \leq \|A\|\|\mathbf{x}\|$ . Therefore  $\|\mathbf{x}\| \geq \frac{\|\mathbf{b}\|}{\|A\|}$ . Using this inequality in (3.3.50), we get (3.3.49).  $\square$

**Remark 3.36.**

- (1) In the above theorem, it is important to note that a vector norm is fixed and the matrix norm used is subordinate to this fixed vector norm.
- (2) The theorem holds no matter which vector norm is fixed as long as the matrix norm subordinate to it is used.
- (3) In fact, whenever we do analysis on linear systems, we always fix a vector norm and then use matrix norm subordinate to it.  $\square$

Notice that the constant appearing on the right hand side of the inequality (3.3.49) (which is  $\|A\| \|A^{-1}\|$ ) depends only on the matrix  $A$  (for a given vector norm). This number is called the **condition number** of the matrix  $A$ . Notice that this condition number depends very much on the vector norm being used on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and the matrix norm that is subordinate to the vector norm.

**Definition 3.37 (Condition Number of a Matrix).** *Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  invertible matrix. Let a matrix norm be given that is subordinate to a vector norm. Then the **condition number** of the matrix  $A$  (denoted by  $\kappa(A)$ ) is defined as*

$$\kappa(A) := \|A\| \|A^{-1}\|. \quad (3.3.51)$$

**Remark 3.38.** From Theorem 3.35, it is clear that if the condition number is small, then the relative error in the solution will also be small whenever the relative error in the right hand side vector is small. On the other hand, if the condition number is large, then the relative error could be very large even though the relative error in the right hand side vector is small. We illustrate this in the following example.  $\square$

**Example 3.39.** The linear system

$$\begin{aligned} 5x_1 + 7x_2 &= 0.7 \\ 7x_1 + 10x_2 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

has the solution  $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0.1$ . Let us denote this by  $\mathbf{x} = (0, 0.1)^T$ , and the right hand side vector by  $\mathbf{b} = (0.7, 1)^T$ . The perturbed system

$$\begin{aligned} 5x_1 + 7x_2 &= 0.69 \\ 7x_1 + 10x_2 &= 1.01 \end{aligned}$$

has the solution  $x_1 = -0.17, x_2 = 0.22$ , which we denote by  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = (-0.17, 0.22)^T$ , and the right hand side vector by  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}} = (0.69, 1.01)^T$ . The relative error between the solutions of the above systems in the  $l_\infty$  vector norm is given by

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{x} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\|_\infty}{\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty} = 1.7,$$

which is too high compared to the relative error in the right hand side vector which is given by

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{b} - \tilde{\mathbf{b}}\|_\infty}{\|\mathbf{b}\|_\infty} = 0.01.$$

The condition number of the coefficient matrix of the system is 289. Therefore the magnification of the relative error is expected (see the inequality (3.3.49)).  $\square$

**Definition 3.40.** A matrix with a large condition number is said to be **ill conditioned**. A matrix with a small condition number is said to be **well conditioned**.

**Remark 3.41.** An immediate question is that how large should the condition number be to declare that a matrix is ill-conditioned. This quantification is very difficult in practical situations as it depends on how large the relative error in the right hand side vector and also the tolerance level of the user. That is, how much error a user can tolerate in the application for which the linear system is solved. For instance, in finance related applications, even 20% of error may be tolerable, whereas in computing the path of a missile even a 0.2% error may lead to fatal disasters.  $\square$

Discussion of condition numbers of matrices is incomplete without the mention of the famous **Hilbert matrix**.

**Example 3.42.** The **Hilbert matrix** of order  $n$  is given by

$$H_n = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & \cdots & \frac{1}{n} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{4} & \cdots & \frac{1}{n+1} \\ \cdot & & & \cdots & \\ \cdot & & & \cdots & \\ \cdot & & & \cdots & \\ \frac{1}{n} & \frac{1}{n+1} & \frac{1}{n+1} & \cdots & \frac{1}{2n-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.3.52)$$

For  $n = 4$ , we have

$$\kappa(H_4) = \|H_4\|_\infty \|H_4^{-1}\|_\infty = \frac{25}{12} 13620 \approx 28000$$

which may be taken as an ill-conditioned matrix. In fact, as the value of  $n$  increases, the corresponding condition number of the Hilbert matrix also increases.  $\square$

An interesting and important question is that what kind of matrices could have large condition numbers. A partial answer is stated in the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.43.** *Let  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  be non-singular. Then, for any singular  $n \times n$  matrix  $B$ , we have*

$$\frac{1}{\kappa(A)} \leq \frac{\|A - B\|}{\|A\|}. \quad (3.3.53)$$

**Proof.** We have

$$\frac{1}{\kappa(A)} = \frac{1}{\|A\| \|A^{-1}\|} = \frac{1}{\|A\|} \left( \frac{1}{\max_{\mathbf{x} \neq 0} \frac{\|A^{-1}\mathbf{x}\|}{\|\mathbf{x}\|}} \right) \leq \frac{1}{\|A\|} \left( \frac{1}{\frac{\|A^{-1}\mathbf{y}\|}{\|\mathbf{y}\|}} \right)$$

where  $\mathbf{y} \neq \mathbf{0}$  is arbitrary. Take  $\mathbf{y} = A\mathbf{z}$ , for some arbitrary vector  $\mathbf{z}$ . Then we get

$$\frac{1}{\kappa(A)} \leq \frac{1}{\|A\|} \left( \frac{\|A\mathbf{z}\|}{\|\mathbf{z}\|} \right).$$

Let  $\mathbf{z} \neq \mathbf{0}$  be such that  $B\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{0}$  (this is possible since  $B$  is singular), we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\kappa(A)} &\leq \frac{\|(A - B)\mathbf{z}\|}{\|A\| \|\mathbf{z}\|} \\ &\leq \frac{\|(A - B)\| \|\mathbf{z}\|}{\|A\| \|\mathbf{z}\|} \\ &= \frac{\|A - B\|}{\|A\|}, \end{aligned}$$

and we are done.  $\square$



From the above theorem it is apparent that if  $A$  is close to a singular matrix, then the reciprocal of the condition number will be near to zero, i.e.,  $\kappa(A)$  itself will be large. Let us illustrate this in the following example.

**Example 3.44.** Clearly the matrix

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

is not invertible. For any  $\epsilon > 0$ , let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 + \epsilon \\ 1 - \epsilon & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

As  $\epsilon > 0$ ,  $A$  is invertible and we have

$$A^{-1} = \epsilon^{-2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 - \epsilon \\ -1 + \epsilon & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let us use the  $l_\infty$  norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $\|A\|_\infty = 2 + \epsilon$  and  $\|A^{-1}\|_\infty = \epsilon^{-2}(2 + \epsilon)$ . Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa(A) &= \|A\|_\infty \|A^{-1}\|_\infty \\ &= \left( \frac{2 + \epsilon}{\epsilon} \right)^2 \\ &> \frac{4}{\epsilon^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, if  $\epsilon \leq 0.01$ , then  $\kappa(A) \geq 40,000$ . As  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ , the matrix  $A$  tends to approach the matrix  $B$  and consequently, the above inequality says that the condition number  $\kappa(A)$  tends to  $\infty$ .

Also, we can see that when we attempt to solve the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ , then the above inequality implies that a small relative perturbation in the right hand side vector  $\mathbf{b}$  could be magnified by a factor of at least 40,000 for the relative error in the solution.

□

### 3.4 Iterative Methods for Linear Systems

In Sections 3.2.1 and 3.2.5 we have discussed methods that obtain exact solution of a linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  in the absence of floating point errors (*i.e.*, exact arithmetic is used). Such methods are called the **direct methods**. The solution of a linear system can also be obtained using iterative procedures. Such methods are called **iterative methods**. There are many iterative procedures out of which **Jacobi** and **Gauss-Seidel** methods are the simplest ones. In this section we introduce these methods and discuss their convergence.

### 3.4.1 Jacobi Method

In section 3.2.5, we have seen that when a linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  is such that the coefficient matrix  $A$  is a diagonal matrix, then this system can be solved very easily. We explore this idea to build a new method based on iterative procedure. For this, we first rewrite the matrix  $A$  as

$$A = D - C,$$

where  $D, C \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  are such that

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & a_{22} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $a_{ii}$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  are the diagonal elements of the matrix  $A$ . Then the given system of linear equations can be re-written as

$$D\mathbf{x} = C\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}. \quad (3.4.54)$$

If we assume that the right hand side vector is fully known to us, then the above system can be solved very easily as  $D$  is a diagonal matrix. But obviously, the right hand side vector cannot be a known quantity because it involves the unknown vector  $\mathbf{x}$ . Rather, if we choose (arbitrarily) some specific value for  $\mathbf{x}$ , say  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ , then the resulting system

$$D\mathbf{x} = C\mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \mathbf{b}$$

can be readily solved. Let us call the solution of this system as  $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ . That is,

$$D\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = C\mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \mathbf{b}.$$

Now taking  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(1)}$  on the right hand side of (3.4.54) we can obtain the solution of this system, which we denote as  $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$  and repeat this procedure to get a general iterative procedure as

$$D\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = C\mathbf{x}^{(k)} + \mathbf{b}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

If  $D$  is invertible, then the above iterative procedure can be written as

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = B\mathbf{x}^{(k)} + \mathbf{c}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad (3.4.55)$$

where  $B = D^{-1}C$  and  $\mathbf{c} = D^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ . The iterative procedure (3.4.55) is called the **Jacobi method**.

**Example 3.45.** Let us illustrate the Jacobi method in the case of  $3 \times 3$  system

$$\begin{aligned}a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 &= b_1 \\a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 &= b_2 \\a_{31}x_1 + a_{32}x_2 + a_{33}x_3 &= b_3,\end{aligned}$$

where  $a_{11} \neq 0$ ,  $a_{22} \neq 0$ , and  $a_{33} \neq 0$ . We can rewrite the above system of linear equations as

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 &= \frac{1}{a_{11}}(b_1 - a_{12}x_2 - a_{13}x_3) \\x_2 &= \frac{1}{a_{22}}(b_2 - a_{21}x_1 - a_{23}x_3) \\x_3 &= \frac{1}{a_{33}}(b_3 - a_{31}x_1 - a_{32}x_2)\end{aligned}$$

Let  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (x_1^{(0)}, x_2^{(0)}, x_3^{(0)})^T$  be an initial guess to the true solution  $\mathbf{x}$ , which is chosen arbitrarily. Define a sequence of iterates (for  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ) by

$$\left. \begin{aligned}x_1^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{a_{11}}(b_1 - a_{12}x_2^{(k)} - a_{13}x_3^{(k)}) \\x_2^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{a_{22}}(b_2 - a_{21}x_1^{(k)} - a_{23}x_3^{(k)}) \\x_3^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{a_{33}}(b_3 - a_{31}x_1^{(k)} - a_{32}x_2^{(k)}).\end{aligned} \right\} \quad (\text{JS})$$

which is the **Jacobi iterative sequence** given by (3.4.55) in the case of  $3 \times 3$  system.  $\square$

Now, the question is that will the sequence of vectors  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)}\}$  generated by the iterative procedure (3.4.55) always converge to the exact solution  $\mathbf{x}$  of the given linear system?

The following example gives a system for which the Jacobi iterative sequence converges to the exact solution.

**Example 3.46.** The Jacobi iterative sequence for the system

$$\begin{aligned}6x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= -2, \\x_1 + 4x_2 + 0.5x_3 &= 1, \\-x_1 + 0.5x_2 - 4x_3 &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

is given by

$$\begin{aligned}x_1^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{6}(-2 - x_2^{(k)} - 2x_3^{(k)}), \\x_2^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{4}(1 - x_1^{(k)} - 0.5x_3^{(k)}), \\x_3^{(k+1)} &= \frac{-1}{4}(0 + x_1^{(k)} - 0.5x_2^{(k)}).\end{aligned}$$

The exact solution (upto 6-digit rounding) of this system is

$$\mathbf{x} \approx (-0.441176, 0.341176, 0.152941). \quad (3.4.56)$$

Choosing the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0, 0, 0)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} &\approx (-0.333333, 0.250000, 0.000000), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} &\approx (-0.375000, 0.333333, 0.114583), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(3)} &\approx (-0.427083, 0.329427, 0.135417), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(4)} &\approx (-0.433377, 0.339844, 0.147949), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(5)} &\approx (-0.439290, 0.339851, 0.150825),\end{aligned}$$

and so on. We observe from the above computed results that the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$  seems to be approaching the exact solution.  $\square$

In the following example we discuss a system for which the Jacobi iterative sequence does not converge to the exact solution.

**Example 3.47.** Consider the system

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 + 4x_2 + 0.5x_3 &= 1, \\ 6x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= -2, \\ -x_1 + 0.5x_2 - 4x_3 &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

which is exactly the same as the system discussed in Example 3.46 but the only difference is the interchange of first and second equation. Hence, the exact solution is same as given in (3.4.56). The Jacobi iterative sequence for this system is given by

$$\begin{aligned}x_1^{(k+1)} &= (1 - 4x_2^{(k)} - 0.5x_3^{(k)}), \\ x_2^{(k+1)} &= (-2 - 6x_1^{(k)} - 2x_3^{(k)}), \\ x_3^{(k+1)} &= \frac{-1}{4}(0 + x_1^{(k)} - 0.5x_2^{(k)}).\end{aligned}$$

Choosing the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0, 0, 0)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{x}^{(1)} &\approx (1, -2, 0), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(2)} &\approx (9, -8, -0.5), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(3)} &\approx (33.25, -55, -3.25), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(4)} &\approx (222.625, -195, -15.1875), \\ \mathbf{x}^{(5)} &\approx (788.59375, -1307.375, -80.03125),\end{aligned}$$

and so on. Here, we observe a diverging trend in the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$ .  $\square$

Thus, we need to look for a condition on the system for which the Jacobi iterative sequence converges to the exact solution. Define the error in the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iterate  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  compared to the exact solution by

$$\mathbf{e}^{(k)} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^{(k)}.$$

It follows easily that  $\mathbf{e}^{(k)}$  satisfies the system

$$\mathbf{e}^{(k+1)} = B\mathbf{e}^{(k)},$$

where  $B$  is as defined in (3.4.55). Using any vector norm and the matrix norm subordinate to it in the above equation, we get

$$\|\mathbf{e}^{(k+1)}\| = \|B\mathbf{e}^{(k)}\| \leq \|B\|\|\mathbf{e}^{(k)}\| \leq \dots \leq \|B\|^{k+1}\|\mathbf{e}^{(0)}\|.$$

Thus, when  $\|B\| < 1$ , the iteration method (3.4.55) always converges for any initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ .

Again the question is

“what are all the matrices  $A$  for which the corresponding matrices  $B$  in (3.4.55) have the property  $\|B\| < 1$ , for some matrix norm subordinate to some vector norm?”

One such class of matrices are the **diagonally dominant** matrices, which we define now.

**Definition 3.48 (Diagonally Dominant Matrices).** *A matrix  $A$  is said to be diagonally dominant if it satisfies the inequality*

$$\sum_{j=1, j \neq i}^n |a_{ij}| < |a_{ii}|, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

We now prove the sufficient condition for the convergence of the Jacobi method. This theorem asserts that if  $A$  is a diagonally dominant matrix, then  $B$  in (3.4.55) of the Jacobi method is such that  $\|B\|_{\infty} < 1$ .

**Theorem 3.49.** *If the coefficient matrix  $A$  is diagonally dominant, then the Jacobi method (3.4.55) converges to the exact solution of  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ .*

**Proof:** Since  $A$  is diagonally dominant, the diagonal entries are all non-zero and hence the Jacobi iterating sequence  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  given by

$$x_i^{(k+1)} = \frac{1}{a_{ii}} \left( b_i - \sum_{j=1, j \neq i}^n a_{ij}x_j^{(k)} \right), \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (3.4.57)$$

is well-defined. Each component of the error satisfies

$$e_i^{(k+1)} = - \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^n \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} e_j^{(k)}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (3.4.58)$$

which gives

$$|e_i^{(k+1)}| \leq \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^n \left| \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} \right| \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty. \quad (3.4.59)$$

Define

$$\mu = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^n \left| \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} \right|. \quad (3.4.60)$$

Then

$$|e_i^{(k+1)}| \leq \mu \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty, \quad (3.4.61)$$

which is true for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Therefore, we have

$$\|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty \leq \mu \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty. \quad (3.4.62)$$

The matrix  $A$  is diagonally dominant if and only if  $\mu < 1$ . Then iterating the last inequality we get

$$\|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty \leq \mu^{k+1} \|e^{(0)}\|_\infty. \quad (3.4.63)$$

Therefore, if  $A$  is diagonally dominant, the Jacobi method converges.  $\square$

**Remark 3.50.** Observe that the system given in Example 3.46 is diagonally dominant, whereas the system in Example 3.47 is not so.  $\square$

### 3.4.2 Gauss-Seidel Method

Gauss-Seidel method is a modified version of the Jacobi method discussed in Section 3.4.1. We demonstrate the method in the case of a  $3 \times 3$  system and the method for a general  $n \times n$  system can be obtained in a similar way.

**Example 3.51.** Consider the  $3 \times 3$  system

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 &= b_1, \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 &= b_2, \\ a_{31}x_1 + a_{32}x_2 + a_{33}x_3 &= b_3. \end{aligned}$$

When the diagonal elements of this system are non-zero, we can rewrite the above system as

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 &= \frac{1}{a_{11}}(b_1 - a_{12}x_2 - a_{13}x_3), \\x_2 &= \frac{1}{a_{22}}(b_2 - a_{21}x_1 - a_{23}x_3), \\x_3 &= \frac{1}{a_{33}}(b_3 - a_{31}x_1 - a_{32}x_2).\end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (x_1^{(0)}, x_2^{(0)}, x_3^{(0)})^T$$

be an initial guess to the true solution  $\mathbf{x}$ . Define a sequence of iterates (for  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ) by

$$\left. \begin{aligned}x_1^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{a_{11}}(b_1 - a_{12}x_2^{(k)} - a_{13}x_3^{(k)}), \\x_2^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{a_{22}}(b_2 - a_{21}x_1^{(k+1)} - a_{23}x_3^{(k)}), \\x_3^{(k+1)} &= \frac{1}{a_{33}}(b_3 - a_{31}x_1^{(k+1)} - a_{32}x_2^{(k+1)}).\end{aligned} \right\} \quad (\text{GSS})$$

This sequence of iterates is called the **Gauss-Seidel iterative sequence** and the method is called **Gauss-Seidel Iteration method**.

**Remark 3.52.** Compare (JS) and (GSS). □

**Theorem 3.53.** *If the coefficient matrix is diagonally dominant, then the Gauss-Seidel method converges to the exact solution of the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ .*

**Proof:**

Since  $A$  is diagonally dominant, all the diagonal elements of  $A$  are non-zero, and hence the Gauss-Seidel iterative sequence given by

$$x_i^{(k+1)} = \frac{1}{a_{ii}} \left\{ b_i - \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} a_{ij}x_j^{(k+1)} - \sum_{j=i+1}^n a_{ij}x_j^{(k)} \right\}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (3.4.64)$$

is well-defined. The error in each component is given by

$$e_i^{(k+1)} = - \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} e_j^{(k+1)} - \sum_{j=i+1}^n \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} e_j^{(k)}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (3.4.65)$$

For  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , define

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_i &= \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \left| \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} \right|, \\ \beta_i &= \sum_{j=i+1}^n \left| \frac{a_{ij}}{a_{ii}} \right|,\end{aligned}$$

with the convention that  $\alpha_1 = \beta_n = 0$ . Note that  $\mu$  given in (3.4.60) can be written as

$$\mu = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} (\alpha_i + \beta_i)$$

Since  $A$  is a diagonally dominant matrix, we have  $\mu < 1$ . Now

$$|e_i^{(k+1)}| \leq \alpha_i \|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty + \beta_i \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (3.4.66)$$

Let  $l$  be such that

$$\|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty = |e_l^{(k+1)}|.$$

Then with  $i = l$  in (3.4.66),

$$\|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty \leq \alpha_l \|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty + \beta_l \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty. \quad (3.4.67)$$

Since  $\mu < 1$ , we have  $\alpha_l < 1$  and therefore the above inequality gives

$$\|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty \leq \frac{\beta_l}{1 - \alpha_l} \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty. \quad (3.4.68)$$

Define

$$\eta = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \frac{\beta_i}{1 - \alpha_i}. \quad (3.4.69)$$

Then the above inequality yields

$$\|e^{(k+1)}\|_\infty \leq \eta \|e^{(k)}\|_\infty. \quad (3.4.70)$$

Since for each  $i$ ,

$$(\alpha_i + \beta_i) - \frac{\beta_i}{1 - \alpha_i} = \frac{\alpha_i [1 - (\alpha_i + \beta_i)]}{1 - \alpha_i} \geq \frac{\alpha_i}{1 - \alpha_i} [1 - \mu] \geq 0, \quad (3.4.71)$$

we have

$$\eta \leq \mu < 1. \quad (3.4.72)$$

Thus, when the coefficient matrix  $A$  is diagonally dominant, Gauss-Seidel method converges.  $\square$

**Remark 3.54.** A careful observation of the proof of the above theorem reveals that the Gauss-Seidel method converges faster than the Jacobi method by comparing (3.4.72) and (3.4.63).  $\square$

### 3.4.3 Mathematical Error

Let  $\mathbf{x}^*$  denote the computed solution using some method. The mathematical error in the approximate solution when compared to the exact solution of a linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  is given by



$$\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^*. \quad (3.4.73)$$

Recall from Chapter 2 that the mathematical error is due to the approximation made in the numerical method where the computation is done without any floating-point approximation (ie., without rounding or chopping). Observe that to get the mathematical error, we need to know the exact solution. But an astonishing feature of linear systems (which is not there in nonlinear equations) is that this error can be obtained exactly without the knowledge of the exact solution. To do this, we first define the **residual vector**

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^* \quad (3.4.74)$$

in the approximation of  $\mathbf{b}$  by  $A\mathbf{x}^*$ . This vector is also referred to as **residual error**. Since  $\mathbf{b} = A\mathbf{x}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^* = A\mathbf{x} - A\mathbf{x}^* = A(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^*).$$

The above identity can be written as

$$A\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{r}. \quad (3.4.75)$$

This shows that the error  $\mathbf{e}$  satisfies a linear system with the same coefficient matrix  $A$  as in the original system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ , but a different right hand side vector. Thus, by having the approximate solution  $\mathbf{x}^*$  in hand, we can obtain the error  $\mathbf{e}$  without knowing the exact solution  $\mathbf{x}$  of the system.

### 3.4.4 Residual Corrector Method

When we use a computing device for solving a linear system, irrespective to whether we use direct methods or iterative methods, we always get an approximate solution. An attractive feature (as discussed in the above section) of linear systems is that the error involved in the approximate solution when compared to the exact solution can theoretically be obtained exactly. In this section, we discuss how to use this error to develop an iterative procedure to increase the accuracy of the obtained approximate solution using any other numerical method.

There is an obvious difficulty in the process of obtaining  $\mathbf{e}$  as the solution of the system (3.4.75), especially on a computer. Since  $\mathbf{b}$  and  $A\mathbf{x}^*$  are very close to each other, the computation of  $\mathbf{r}$  involves loss of significant digits which leads to zero residual error, which is of no use. To avoid this situation, the calculation of (3.4.74) should be carried out at a higher-precision. For instance, if  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is computed using single-precision, then  $\mathbf{r}$  can be computed using double-precision and then rounded back to single precision. Let us illustrate the computational procedure of the residual error in the following example.

**Example 3.55 (Computation of residual at higher precision).**

Consider the system

$$\begin{aligned} 0.729x_1 + 0.81x_2 + 0.9x_3 &= 0.6867 \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0.8338 \\ 1.331x_1 + 1.210x_2 + 1.100x_3 &= 1.000 \end{aligned}$$

The exact solution of this system with 4-digit rounding is

$$x_1 \approx 0.2245, \quad x_2 \approx 0.2814, \quad x_3 \approx 0.3279.$$

The solution of the system by Gaussian elimination without pivoting using 4-digit rounding leads to

$$x_1^* \approx 0.2251, \quad x_2^* \approx 0.2790, \quad x_3^* \approx 0.3295.$$

As we have used 4-digit rounding arithmetic in obtaining the approximate solution vector  $\mathbf{x}^*$ , we use 8-digit rounding arithmetic in computing the residual, which is obtained as

$$\mathbf{r} = (0.00006210, 0.0002000, 0.0003519)^T.$$

Solving the linear system  $A\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{r}$  using 8-digit rounding arithmetic, we obtain the approximation as

$$\mathbf{e}^* = [-0.00044710, 0.00215000, -0.00150400]^T.$$

Compare this to the true error

$$\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^* = [-0.0007, 0.0024, -0.0016]^T$$

Thus  $\mathbf{e}^*$  gives a good idea of the size of the error  $\mathbf{e}$  in the computed solution  $\mathbf{x}^*$ .  $\square$

Let us now propose an iterative procedure by first predicting the error by solving the system (3.4.75) and then correcting the approximate solution  $\mathbf{x}^*$  by adding the predicted error to the vector  $\mathbf{x}^*$ .

If we take  $\mathbf{x}^* = \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ , and define  $\mathbf{r}^{(0)} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ , then the error  $\mathbf{e}^{(0)} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  can be obtained by solving the linear system

$$A\mathbf{e}^{(0)} = \mathbf{r}^{(0)}.$$

Now, define

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \mathbf{e}^{(0)}.$$

We expect the vector  $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$  is more closer to the exact solution than  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ . Again compute the residual error vector  $\mathbf{r}^{(1)}$  using the formula

$$\mathbf{r}^{(1)} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^{(1)},$$

and solve the corresponding linear system

$$A\mathbf{e}^{(1)} = \mathbf{r}^{(1)}$$

and define

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \mathbf{e}^{(1)}.$$

Continuing in this way, we can generate a sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$  using the formula

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = \mathbf{x}^{(k)} + \mathbf{e}^{(k)}. \quad (3.4.76)$$

where

$$A\mathbf{e}^{(k)} = \mathbf{r}^{(k)}$$

with

$$\mathbf{r}^{(k)} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^{(k)},$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots$ . The above iterative procedure is called the **residual corrector method** (also called the **iterative refinement method**). Note that in computing  $\mathbf{r}^{(k)}$  and  $\mathbf{e}^{(k)}$ , we use a higher precision than the precision used in computing  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ .

**Example 3.56.** Using Gaussian elimination with pivoting and four digit rounding in solving the linear system

$$x_1 + 0.5x_2 + 0.3333x_3 = 1$$

$$0.5x_1 + 0.3333x_2 + 0.25x_3 = 0$$

$$0.3333x_1 + 0.25x_2 + 0.2x_3 = 0$$

we obtain the solution as  $\mathbf{x} = (9.062, -36.32, 30.30)^T$ . Let us start with an initial guess of

$$\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (8.968, -35.77, 29.77)^T.$$

Using 8-digit rounding arithmetic, we obtain

$$\mathbf{r}^{(0)} = (-0.00534100, -0.00435900, -0.00053440)^T.$$

After solving the system  $A\mathbf{e}^{(0)} = \mathbf{r}^{(0)}$  using Gaussian elimination with pivoting using 8-digit rounding and the final answer is rounded to four digits, we get

$$\mathbf{e}^{(0)} = (0.0922, -0.5442, 0.5239)^T.$$

Hence, the corrected solution after the first iteration is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (9.060, -36.31, 30.29)^T.$$

Similarly, we can predict the error in  $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$  when compared to the exact solution and correct the solution to obtain the second iterated vector as

$$\mathbf{r}^{(1)} = (-0.00065700, -0.00037700, -0.00019800)^T,$$

$$\mathbf{e}^{(2)} = (0.0017, -0.0130, 0.0124)^T,$$

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (9.062, -36.32, 30.30)^T,$$

and so on. □

The convergence of the iterative procedure to the exact solution is omitted for this course.

### 3.4.5 Stopping Criteria

In the iterative methods discussed above, we have a sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$  that is expected to converge to the exact solution of the given linear system. In practical situation, we cannot go on computing the  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  indefinitely and we need to terminate our computation once the value of  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  reaches a desired accuracy for a sufficiently large  $k$ . That is, when the error

$$\|\mathbf{e}^{(k)}\| = \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^{(k)}\|$$

in the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration in some norm is sufficiently small. Since, we do not know the exact solution  $\mathbf{x}$ , the error given above cannot be computed easily and needs another linear system (3.4.75) to be solved. Therefore, the question is how to decide where we have to stop our computation (without solving this linear system)? In other words, how do we know whether the computed vector  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  at the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration is sufficiently close to the exact solution or not. This can be decided by looking at the residual error vector of the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration defined as

$$\mathbf{r}^{(k)} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^{(k)}. \quad (3.4.77)$$

Thus, for a given sufficiently small positive number  $\epsilon$ , we stop the iteration if

$$\|\mathbf{r}^{(k)}\| < \epsilon,$$

for some vector norm  $\|\cdot\|$ .

## 3.5 Eigenvalue Problems

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix with real entries. Eigenvalues of  $A$  are defined as the roots of the equation

$$\det(\lambda I - A) = 0. \quad (3.5.78)$$

Note that  $\det(\lambda I - A)$  is a polynomial in  $\lambda$  of degree  $n$ , which is known as **characteristic polynomial of the matrix  $A$** . We know that even if  $A$  has real entries, the eigenvalues need not be real numbers. It is also a known fact that for every matrix, there are  $n$  eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  (in this list, each eigenvalue is repeated as many times as its algebraic multiplicity, *i.e.*, multiplicity of the eigenvalue as a root of the characteristic polynomial).

When  $n = 2$  the characteristic polynomial is a quadratic polynomial for which there is a nice formula for computing roots. When  $n = 3$ , there is a formula that many of us do not remember. When  $n = 4$ , none has a formula. But computing

eigenvalues is important for applications. Therefore, numerically approximating the eigenvalues is the only way out.

One obvious way of approximating an eigenvalue of a matrix is to first obtain the characteristic polynomial (3.5.78) explicitly in  $\lambda$  and then use one of the numerical methods discussed in Chapter 4 to compute a root of this polynomial. But this is not an efficient way of computing eigenvalues because of two reasons. One reason is that obtaining explicit form of (3.5.78) is itself a difficult task when the dimension of the matrix is very large. Secondly, if we make any small error (like floating-point error) in obtaining the explicit form of the polynomial (3.5.78), the resulting polynomial may have a root which is entirely different from any of the eigenvalues that we are looking for. This is illustrated in the following example by Wilkinson where we see that “the roots of polynomials are extremely sensitive to perturbations in the coefficients”.

**Example 3.57 (Wilkinson’s example).** Let  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  be two polynomials given by

$$f(x) = (x - 1)(x - 2) \cdots (x - 10), \quad g(x) = x^{10}.$$

The roots of the polynomial  $f(x)$  are  $1, 2, \dots, 10$ , and all these roots are simple roots. If we perturb this polynomial as  $F(x) = f(x) + 0.01g(x)$ , then all the roots lie in the interval  $[1, 3.5]$  (verified graphically). In fact, the largest root of the polynomial  $f(x)$  is 10 and the largest root of the polynomial  $F(x)$  is approximately equal to 3.398067. Thus, if the coefficient of  $x^{10}$  is perturbed by a small amount of 0.01, the root 10 of  $f(x)$  could move as much a distance as approximately 6.6.  $\square$

Due to the two reasons discussed above, we look for an alternate method to compute the eigenvalues of a given matrix. One such method is the **power method** that can be used to obtain the eigenvalue which is the largest in magnitude among all the other eigenvalues and the corresponding eigen vector. In Subsection 3.5.1, we present the power method and discuss the condition under which this method can be applied. In Subsection 3.5.2 we prove the Gerschgorin theorem which may be used as a tool to find a class of matrices for which power method can be applied successfully.

### 3.5.1 Power Method

There are many variations of Power method in the literature. We will present the most elementary form of Power method. We always deal with matrices with real entries, all of whose eigenvalues are real numbers.

Power method is used to obtain a specific eigenvalue called **dominant eigenvalue** and corresponding eigenvector for a given  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$ . The concept of a dominant eigenvalue plays a very important role in many applications. The Power method provides an approximation to it under some conditions on the matrix. We now define the concept of a dominant eigenvalue.

**Definition 3.58 (Dominant Eigenvalue of a Matrix).**

An eigenvalue  $\lambda$  of an  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  is said to be a **dominant eigenvalue** of  $A$  if

$$|\lambda| = \max\{|z| : z \text{ is an eigenvalue of } A\}.$$

**Remark 3.59.**

- (1) If a dominant eigenvalue of a matrix is equal to zero, then all its eigenvalues are zero and an eigenvector can be found by solving the linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ .
- (2) If  $\lambda$  is a dominant eigenvalue of a matrix  $A$ , then there is no other eigenvalue of  $A$  whose distance from zero is more than that of  $\lambda$  from zero.
- (3) Let  $\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_n$  be the eigenvalues of  $A$  (repeated according to their algebraic multiplicities) of an  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$ . These eigenvalues can be re-named (re-labelled, re-indexed) as  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  such that they satisfy the condition:

$$|\lambda_1| \geq |\lambda_2| \geq \dots \geq |\lambda_n|.$$

Note that  $\lambda_1$  is a **dominant eigenvalue** of  $A$ . □

**Example 3.60.** A matrix may have a unique dominant eigenvalue or more than one dominant eigenvalues. Further, even if dominant eigenvalue is unique the corresponding algebraic and geometric multiplicities could be more than one, and also both algebraic and geometric multiplicities may not be the same. All these possibilities are illustrated in this example.

- (1) The matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

has eigenvalues 1,  $-1$ , and  $-2$ . The matrix  $A$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue, which is  $-2$  as this is the largest in absolute value, of all eigenvalues. Note that the dominant eigenvalue of  $A$  is a simple eigenvalue.

- (2) The matrix

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

has eigenvalues 1,  $-2$ , and 2. According to our definition, the matrix  $B$  has two dominant eigenvalues. They are  $-2$  and 2. Note that both the dominant eigenvalues of  $B$  are simple eigenvalues.

- (3) Consider the matrices

$$C_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, C_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, C_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The matrix  $C_1$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue 2, which has algebraic multiplicity 2 and geometric multiplicity 1. The matrix  $C_2$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue 2, whose algebraic and geometric multiplicities equal 2. The matrix  $C_3$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue 2, which has algebraic multiplicity 2 and geometric multiplicity 1.  $\square$

As mentioned above the power method is used to compute the dominant eigenvalue and the corresponding eigen vector of a given  $n \times n$  matrix provided this eigenvalue is unique. Thus, in the above examples, power method can be used for the matrices  $A$  but not for  $B$  even though  $B$  has distinct eigenvalues. Let us now detail the **power method**.

### Assumptions on the matrix for which the power method can work

Assume that an  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  has real eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots$ , and  $\lambda_n$  (repeated according to their algebraic multiplicities) with the following properties:

- (1) The eigenvalues are such that

$$|\lambda_1| > |\lambda_2| \geq |\lambda_3| \geq \dots \geq |\lambda_n| \quad (3.5.79)$$

That is,  $A$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$  which is a simple eigenvalue.

- (2) There exists a basis of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $A$ . That is, there exists  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$  satisfying  $A\mathbf{v}_k = \lambda_k \mathbf{v}_k$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ; and such that for each  $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  there exists unique real numbers  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  such that

$$\mathbf{v} = c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + c_n \mathbf{v}_n.$$

Equivalently, the matrix  $A$  is diagonalizable.

Let us now discuss the key idea behind power method.

- Choose a non-zero vector  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  arbitrarily so that we can find scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + c_n \mathbf{v}_n, \quad c_1 \neq 0.$$

- Pre-multiplying by  $A$  and substituting  $A\mathbf{v}_i = \lambda_i \mathbf{v}_i, i = 1, \dots, n$ , we get

$$A\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = c_1 \lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + c_n \lambda_n \mathbf{v}_n = \lambda_1 \left( c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2 \left( \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} \right) \mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + c_n \left( \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_1} \right) \mathbf{v}_n \right).$$

Note here that we have assumed  $\lambda_1 \neq 0$ , which follows from the Assumption (1) above.

- Pre-multiplying by  $A$  again and simplifying, we get

$$A^2 \mathbf{x}^{(0)} = \lambda_1^2 \left( c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2 \left( \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} \right)^2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n \left( \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_1} \right)^2 \mathbf{v}_n \right)$$

- For each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , applying  $A$   $k$ -times on  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  yields

$$A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)} = \lambda_1^k \left( c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2 \left( \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} \right)^k \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n \left( \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_1} \right)^k \mathbf{v}_n \right) \quad (3.5.80)$$

- Using the assumption (3.5.79), we get  $|\lambda_k/\lambda_1| < 1$ , for  $k = 2, \dots, n$ . Therefore, we have

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)}}{\lambda_1^k} = c_1 \mathbf{v}_1. \quad (3.5.81)$$

For  $c_1 \neq 0$ , the right hand side of the above equation is a scalar multiple of the eigenvector.

- From the above expression for  $A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ , we also see that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(A^{k+1} \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_i}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_i} = \lambda_1, \quad (3.5.82)$$

where  $i$  is any index such that the fractions on the left hand side are meaningful (which is the case when  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} \notin \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} \text{Ker } A^k$ ).

The power method generates two sequences  $\{\mu_k\}$  and  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$ , using the results (3.5.81) and (3.5.82), that converge to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$  and the corresponding eigen vectors  $\mathbf{v}_1$ , respectively. We will now give the method of generating these two sequences.

**Step 1:** Choose a vector  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  arbitrarily and set  $\mathbf{y}^{(1)} := A\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ .

**Step 2:** Define  $\mu_1 := y_i^{(1)}$ , where  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$  is the least index such that  $\|\mathbf{y}^{(1)}\|_{\infty} = |y_i^{(1)}|$  and set  $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} := \mathbf{y}^{(1)}/\mu_1$ .

From  $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ , we can obtain  $\mu_2$  and  $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$  in a similar way.

**Power method iterative sequence:**

In general, for  $k = 0, 1, \dots$ , we choose the initial vector  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  arbitrarily and generate the sequences  $\{\mu^{(k)}\}$  and  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$  using the formulas

$$\mu_{k+1} = y_i^{(k+1)}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = \frac{\mathbf{y}^{(k+1)}}{\mu_{k+1}}, \quad (3.5.83)$$

where

$$\mathbf{y}^{(k+1)} = A\mathbf{x}^{(k)}, \quad \|\mathbf{y}^{(k+1)}\|_{\infty} = |y_i^{(k+1)}|. \quad (3.5.84)$$

This iterative procedure is called the **power method**.



**Remark 3.61.** The scaling factor  $\mu_k$  introduced in (3.5.83) makes sure that  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  has its maximum norm equal to 1, i.e.,  $\|\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\|_\infty = 1$ . This rules out the possibilities of  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  being  $\mathbf{0}$  or the vector  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  escaping to infinity.  $\square$

We now discuss sufficient conditions under which the power method converges.

**Theorem 3.62 (Convergence Theorem for Power method).**

**Hypothesis:** Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix with real eigenvalues having the following properties:

(H1)  $A$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$  which is a simple eigenvalue. That is,

$$|\lambda_1| > |\lambda_2| \geq \dots \geq |\lambda_n|,$$

where  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  are the eigenvalues of  $A$  (repeated according to their algebraic multiplicities).

(H2)  $A$  has  $n$  linearly independent real eigenvectors,  $\mathbf{v}_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .

(H3) An initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  be chosen such that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = \sum_{j=1}^n c_j \mathbf{v}_j, \quad (3.5.85)$$

for some scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n \in \mathbb{R}$  with  $c_1 \neq 0$  and  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} \notin \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} \text{Ker } A^k$ .

**Conclusion:** Then, in the power method (3.5.83)-(3.5.84),

- (1) the sequence  $\{\mu_k\}$  converges to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$  and
- (2) the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$  converges either to  $+\mathbf{v}_1/\|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty$  or to  $-\mathbf{v}_1/\|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty$  or oscillates between these two vectors. Here,  $\mathbf{v}_1$  denotes the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$ .

**Remark 3.63.** Note that in Conclusion (2) of the above theorem, we see that whatever may be the case (among the three cases stated), the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$  approaches the eigenspace associated with the eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$ , as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

**Proof.** From the definition of  $\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = \frac{A\mathbf{x}^{(k)}}{\mu_{k+1}} = \frac{A\mathbf{y}^{(k)}}{\mu_{k+1}\mu_k} = \frac{AA\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)}}{\mu_{k+1}\mu_k} = \frac{A^2\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)}}{\mu_{k+1}\mu_k} = \dots = \frac{A^{k+1}\mathbf{x}^{(0)}}{\mu_{k+1}\mu_k \dots \mu_1}.$$

Therefore, we have

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = m_{k+1} A^{k+1} \mathbf{x}^{(0)},$$

where  $m_{k+1} = 1/(\mu_1\mu_2\cdots\mu_{k+1})$ . But,  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = \sum_{j=1}^n c_j \mathbf{v}_j$ ,  $c_1 \neq 0$ . Therefore

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = m_{k+1} \lambda_1^{k+1} \left( c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \sum_{j=2}^n c_j \left( \frac{\lambda_j}{\lambda_1} \right)^{k+1} \mathbf{v}_j \right).$$

Taking maximum norm on both sides and noting that  $\|\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\|_\infty = 1$ , we get

$$1 = |m_{k+1} \lambda_1^{k+1}| \left\| c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \sum_{j=2}^n c_j \left( \frac{\lambda_j}{\lambda_1} \right)^{k+1} \mathbf{v}_j \right\|_\infty.$$

Since  $|\lambda_j/\lambda_1|^k \rightarrow 0$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , we get

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} |m_{k+1} \lambda_1^{k+1}| = \frac{1}{|c_1| \|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty} < \infty.$$

Using this, we get

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} m_{k+1} \lambda_1^{k+1} c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{cases} \text{either} & + \frac{\mathbf{v}_1}{\|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty} \\ \text{or} & - \frac{\mathbf{v}_1}{\|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty} \\ \text{or} & \text{oscillates between} \\ & \text{the above two vectors} \end{cases}. \quad (3.5.86)$$

This completes the proof of Conclusion (2).

Let us now prove that  $\mu_k \rightarrow \lambda_1$ . For this, we first note that

$$\mathbf{y}^{(k+1)} = A\mathbf{x}^{(k)}.$$

Therefore, from (3.5.86), we see that (up to a subsequence)

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{y}^{(k+1)} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} A\mathbf{x}^{(k)} = K\lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1,$$

where  $K = \pm 1/\|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty$ . Since  $\mathbf{v}_1$  is an eigen vector, there is at least one non-zero component of  $\mathbf{v}_1$ . We choose one such component of  $\mathbf{v}_1$  and denote it by  $(v_1)_j$ . Since  $(v_1)_j \neq 0$  and  $y_j^{(k+1)} \rightarrow K\lambda_1(v_1)_j$ , there exists an integer  $N > 0$  such that

$$y_j^{(k+1)} \neq 0, \text{ for all } k \geq N.$$

Similarly, we see that

$$x_j^{(k+1)} \neq 0, \text{ for all } k \geq N.$$

Also, we know that

$$\mu_{k+1} \mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = \mathbf{y}^{(k+1)}.$$

Therefore, we can write

$$\mu_{k+1} = \frac{y_j^{(k+1)}}{x_j^{(k+1)}} = \frac{(A\mathbf{x}^{(k)})_j}{(\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)})_j},$$

where  $j$  denotes the component as given above. Taking limit, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \mu_{k+1} &= \frac{K(A\mathbf{v}_1)_j}{K(\mathbf{v}_1)_j} \\ &= \frac{\lambda_1(\mathbf{v}_1)_j}{(\mathbf{v}_1)_j} \\ &= \lambda_1. \end{aligned}$$

which gives the desired result.  $\square$

Note that the above theorem does not guarantee the convergence of the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}$  to an eigenvector corresponding to the dominant eigenvalue. However, if the dominant eigenvalue has an eigenvector with a unique dominant component, then this sequence converges as discussed in the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.64 (Second Convergence Theorem for Power Method).**

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix satisfying the hypotheses (H1), (H2), and (H3) of Theorem 3.62. In addition to these hypotheses,

- (H4) let  $\mathbf{v}_1 = (v_{11}, v_{12}, \dots, v_{1n})^T$  be such that there exists a unique index  $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  with the property

$$|v_{1j}| = \|\mathbf{v}_1\|_\infty \quad (3.5.87)$$

This hypothesis is referred to as  $\mathbf{v}_1$  has a single maximal component.

**Conclusion:** Then, in the power method (3.5.83)-(3.5.84),

- (1) the sequence  $\{\mu_k\}$  converges to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$  and
- (2) The sequence of vectors  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  converges to an eigenvector corresponding to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$ .

**Proof.** Let us first set up some notation. Let the eigenvectors  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$  be given by

$$\mathbf{v}_j = (v_{j1}, v_{j2}, \dots, v_{jn})^T, \text{ for } j = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (3.5.88)$$

Since  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\mathbf{v}_n$ , we have

$$A\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = c_1\lambda_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\lambda_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\lambda_n\mathbf{v}_n.$$

In coordinate form, we have

$$A\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (\lambda_1 c_1 v_{11} + \lambda_2 c_2 v_{21} + \cdots + \lambda_n c_n v_{n1}, \cdots, \lambda_1 c_1 v_{1n} + \lambda_2 c_2 v_{2n} + \cdots + \lambda_n c_n v_{nn})^T \quad (3.5.89)$$

In fact, for each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have

$$A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (\lambda_1^k c_1 v_{11} + \lambda_2^k c_2 v_{21} + \cdots + \lambda_n^k c_n v_{n1}, \cdots, \lambda_1^k c_1 v_{1n} + \lambda_2^k c_2 v_{2n} + \cdots + \lambda_n^k c_n v_{nn})^T \quad (3.5.90)$$

Maximum norm of the vector  $A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  is going to be the modulus of one of its components. From **(H4)**, we have

$$\frac{|v_{1i}|}{|v_{1j}|} \leq 1 \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \cdots, n. \quad (3.5.91)$$

Observe that

$$\frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_i}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j} = \frac{\lambda_1^k c_1 v_{1i} + \lambda_2^k c_2 v_{2i} + \cdots + \lambda_n^k c_n v_{ni}}{\lambda_1^k c_1 v_{1j} + \lambda_2^k c_2 v_{2j} + \cdots + \lambda_n^k c_n v_{nj}}.$$

The last equation can be written in the form

$$\frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_i}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j} = \frac{v_{1i} + \frac{\lambda_2^k c_2}{\lambda_1^k c_1} v_{2i} + \cdots + \frac{\lambda_n^k c_n}{\lambda_1^k c_1} v_{ni}}{v_{1j} + \frac{\lambda_2^k c_2}{\lambda_1^k c_1} v_{2j} + \cdots + \frac{\lambda_n^k c_n}{\lambda_1^k c_1} v_{nj}} \quad (3.5.92)$$

Note that the RHS in the equation (3.5.92) converges to  $\frac{v_{1i}}{v_{1j}}$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . Since,

$$\left| \frac{v_{1i}}{v_{1j}} \right| < 1, \quad \text{for } i \neq j, \quad (3.5.93)$$

we can conclude that there exists a  $K \in \mathbb{N}$  such that for  $k \geq K$ ,

$$\left| \frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_i}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j} \right| < 1. \quad (3.5.94)$$

As a consequence, the maximum norm of  $A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  is equal to  $|(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j|$  where  $j$  is as given in **(H4)**.

For  $k \geq K$ , the sequence  $\mu_k$  is given by

$$\mu_k = \frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j}{(A^{k-1} \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j} = \lambda_1 \frac{v_{1j} + \frac{\lambda_2^k c_2}{\lambda_1^k c_1} v_{2j} + \cdots + \frac{\lambda_n^k c_n}{\lambda_1^k c_1} v_{nj}}{v_{1j} + \frac{\lambda_2^{k-1} c_2}{\lambda_1^{k-1} c_1} v_{2j} + \cdots + \frac{\lambda_n^{k-1} c_n}{\lambda_1^{k-1} c_1} v_{nj}}. \quad (3.5.95)$$

Thus,

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \mu_k = \lambda_1. \quad (3.5.96)$$

For  $k \geq K$ , the sequence  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}^{(k)} &= \frac{A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)}}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j} \\ &= \left( \frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_1}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j}, \dots, \frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_{j-1}}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j}, 1, \frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_{j+1}}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j}, \dots, \frac{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_n}{(A^k \mathbf{x}^{(0)})_j} \right)^T. \end{aligned}$$

In view of (3.5.92), we now conclude that the sequence  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  converges to  $\frac{1}{v_{1j}} \mathbf{v}_1$  which is an eigenvector corresponding to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$ .  $\square$

We now give a numerical example illustrating power method procedure.

**Example 3.65.** Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ -4 & 6 & 2 \\ 16 & -15 & -5 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The eigenvalues of this matrix are

$$\lambda_1 = 3, \lambda_2 = 1 \text{ and } \lambda_3 = 0.$$

The corresponding eigen vectors are

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = (1, 0, 2)^T, \mathbf{v}_2 = (0, 2, -5)^T \text{ and } \mathbf{v}_3 = (0, 1, -3)^T.$$

Thus, the hypothesis (H1) and (H2) of the Theorem 3.62 are satisfied. Choose the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}_0 = (1, 0.5, 0.25)^T$ , which also satisfies the hypothesis (H3).

The first ten terms of the iterative sequence in power method given by (3.5.83)-(3.5.84) for the given matrix  $A$  are as follows:

**Iteration No: 1**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_1 &= A\mathbf{x}_0 = (3.000000, -0.500000, 7.250000)^T \\ \mu_1 &= 7.250000 \\ \mathbf{x}_1 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_1}{\mu_1} = (0.413793, -0.068966, 1.000000)^T \end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 2**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_2 &= A\mathbf{x}_1 = (1.241379, -0.068966, 2.655172)^T \\ \mu_2 &= 2.655172 \\ \mathbf{x}_2 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_2}{\mu_2} = (0.467532, -0.025974, 1.000000)^T \end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 3**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_3 &= A\mathbf{x}_2 = (1.402597, -0.025974, 2.870130)^T \\ \mu_3 &= 2.870130 \\ \mathbf{x}_3 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_3}{\mu_3} = (0.488688, -0.009050, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 4**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_4 &= A\mathbf{x}_3 = (1.466063, -0.009050, 2.954751)^T \\ \mu_4 &= 2.954751 \\ \mathbf{x}_4 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_4}{\mu_4} = (0.496172, -0.003063, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 5**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_5 &= A\mathbf{x}_4 = (1.488515, -0.003063, 2.984686)^T \\ \mu_5 &= 2.984686 \\ \mathbf{x}_5 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_5}{\mu_5} = (0.498717, -0.001026, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 6**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_6 &= A\mathbf{x}_5 = (1.496152, -0.001026, 2.994869)^T \\ \mu_6 &= 2.994869 \\ \mathbf{x}_6 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_6}{\mu_6} = (0.499572, -0.000343, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 7**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_7 &= A\mathbf{x}_6 = (1.498715, -0.000343, 2.998287)^T \\ \mu_7 &= 2.998287 \\ \mathbf{x}_7 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_7}{\mu_7} = (0.499857, -0.000114, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 8**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_8 &= A\mathbf{x}_7 = (1.499571, -0.000114, 2.999429)^T \\ \mu_8 &= 2.999429 \\ \mathbf{x}_8 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_8}{\mu_8} = (0.499952, -0.000038, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 9**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_9 &= A\mathbf{x}_8 = (1.499857, -0.000038, 2.999809)^T \\ \mu_9 &= 2.999809 \\ \mathbf{x}_9 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_9}{\mu_9} = (0.499984, -0.000013, 1.000000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 10**

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{y}_{10} &= A\mathbf{x}_9 = (1.499952, -0.000013, 2.999936)^T \\
\mu_{10} &= 2.999936 \\
\mathbf{x}_{10} &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_{10}}{\mu_{10}} = (0.499995, -0.000004, 1.000000)^T
\end{aligned}$$

These ten iterates suggest that the sequence  $\{\mu_k\}$  converges to the eigenvalue  $\lambda_1 = 3$  and the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}^{(k)}\}$  converges to  $(0.5, 0, 1) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{v}_1$ .  $\square$

**Remark 3.66 (Disadvantages of power method).**

- (1) The Power method requires at the beginning that the matrix has only one dominant eigenvalue, and this information is generally unavailable.
- (2) Even when there is only one dominant eigenvalue, it is not clear how to choose the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  such that it has a non-zero component ( $c_1$  in the notation of the theorem) along the eigenvector  $\mathbf{v}_1$ .  $\square$

Note that in the above example, all the hypothesis of Theorem 3.62 are satisfied. Now let us ask the question

“What happens when any of the hypotheses of Theorem is violated?”

We discuss these situations through examples.

**Example 3.67 (Dominant eigenvalue is not unique (Failure of H1)).**

Consider the matrix

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix},$$

which has eigenvalues 1,  $-2$ , and 2. Clearly, the matrix  $B$  has two dominant eigenvalues, namely,  $-2$  and 2. We start with an initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (1, 1, 1)$  and the first five iterations generated using power method are given below:

**Iteration No: 1**

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{y}_1 &= A\mathbf{x}_0 = (8.000000, 3.000000, -2.000000)^T \\
\mu_1 &= 8.000000 \\
\mathbf{x}_1 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_1}{\mu_1} = (1.000000, 0.375000, -0.250000)^T
\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 2**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_2 &= A\mathbf{x}_1 = (1.125000, 0.500000, 0.500000)^T \\ \mu_2 &= 1.125000 \\ \mathbf{x}_2 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_2}{\mu_2} = (1.000000, 0.444444, 0.444444)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 3**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_3 &= A\mathbf{x}_2 = (4.111111, 1.333333, -0.888889)^T \\ \mu_3 &= 4.111111 \\ \mathbf{x}_3 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_3}{\mu_3} = (1.000000, 0.324324, -0.216216)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 4**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_4 &= A\mathbf{x}_3 = (1.108108, 0.432432, 0.432432)^T \\ \mu_4 &= 1.108108 \\ \mathbf{x}_4 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_4}{\mu_4} = (1.000000, 0.390244, 0.390244)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 5**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_5 &= A\mathbf{x}_4 = (3.731707, 1.170732, -0.780488)^T \\ \mu_5 &= 3.731707 \\ \mathbf{x}_5 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_5}{\mu_5} = (1.000000, 0.313725, -0.209150)^T\end{aligned}$$

It is observed that the sequence oscillates even till 1000 iterations as shown below:

**Iteration No: 998**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_{998} &= A\mathbf{x}_{997} = (1.103448, 0.413793, 0.413793)^T \\ \mu_{998} &= 1.103448 \\ \mathbf{x}_{998} &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_{998}}{\mu_{998}} = (1.000000, 0.375000, 0.375000)^T\end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 999**

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y}_{999} &= A\mathbf{x}_{998} = (3.625000, 1.125000, -0.750000)^T \\ \mu_{999} &= 3.625000 \\ \mathbf{x}_{999} &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_{999}}{\mu_{999}} = (1.000000, 0.310345, -0.206897)^T\end{aligned}$$



**Iteration No: 1000**

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{y}_{1000} &= A\mathbf{x}_{999} = (1.103448, 0.413793, 0.413793)^T \\
\mu_{1000} &= 1.103448 \\
\mathbf{x}_{1000} &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_{1000}}{\mu_{1000}} = (1.000000, 0.375000, 0.375000)^T
\end{aligned}$$

and so on. This is a clear indication that the power method is not converging in this case.  $\square$

Thus we conclude that the power method when applied to a matrix which has more than one dominant eigenvalue may not converge.

**Remark 3.68 (Dominant eigenvalue is not simple).**

It is not necessary to have the dominant eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 1 in order that the iterative sequences of power method converge. The important thing is to have a unique dominant eigenvalue and it is allowed to have an algebraic multiplicity  $r$  with  $r > 1$ . However it is necessary that the corresponding geometric multiplicity should also be  $r$  to satisfy the hypothesis **(H2)** (also see later on, where we discuss the situation where algebraic and geometric multiplicities do not match). In such a case, Power method computes only one eigenvector, as is usual.  $\square$

**Remark 3.69 (Failure of hypothesis (H2): Matrix is defective).**

A matrix is said to be defective if for any of its eigenvalues, the algebraic and geometric multiplicities are not the same. Such matrices are not diagonalizable, and hence cannot satisfy the hypothesis **(H2)**. Even the assumption that there is a basis of eigenvectors is not necessary. Interested curious reader is encouraged to think on the following lines. “If I don’t have a basis of eigenvectors, the next best thing I know is that there is always a basis consisting of eigenvectors and generalized eigenvectors. If I simply go through the proof of Theorem 3.62 with this kind of basis, will I face obstacles? ... ”  $\square$

Let us now illustrate the situation when the hypothesis **(H3)** of Theorem 3.62 is violated.

**Example 3.70 (Failure of hypothesis (H3): Initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  is such that  $c_1 = 0$ ).** Consider the matrix (same as in Example 3.65)

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ -4 & 6 & 2 \\ 16 & -15 & -5 \end{pmatrix},$$

The eigenvalues of this matrix are

$$\lambda_1 = 3, \lambda_2 = 1 \text{ and } \lambda_3 = 0.$$

The corresponding eigen vectors are

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = (1, 0, 2)^T, \mathbf{v}_2 = (0, 2, -5)^T \text{ and } \mathbf{v}_3 = (0, 1, -3)^T.$$

Thus, the hypothesis (H1) and (H2) of the Theorem 3.62 are satisfied.

Here, we choose a different initial guess  $\mathbf{x}_0 = (0, 0.5, 0.25)^T$ . Note that the hypothesis (H3) of the Theorem 3.62 that  $c_1 \neq 0$  is violated here. However, we can see that  $c_2 \neq 0$ . The first four iterations of the power method are as follows:

**Iteration No: 1**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_1 &= A\mathbf{x}_0 = (0.000000, 3.500000, -8.750000)^T \\ \mu_1 &= -8.750000 \\ \mathbf{x}_1 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_1}{\mu_1} = (-0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 2**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_2 &= A\mathbf{x}_1 = (0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \\ \mu_2 &= 1.000000 \\ \mathbf{x}_2 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_2}{\mu_2} = (0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 3**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_3 &= A\mathbf{x}_2 = (0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \\ \mu_3 &= 1.000000 \\ \mathbf{x}_3 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_3}{\mu_3} = (0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \end{aligned}$$

**Iteration No: 4**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_4 &= A\mathbf{x}_3 = (0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \\ \mu_4 &= 1.000000 \\ \mathbf{x}_4 &= \frac{\mathbf{y}_4}{\mu_4} = (0.000000, -0.400000, 1.000000)^T \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the power method converges to  $\lambda_2$ , which is the second dominant eigenvalue of the given matrix.

Note that in the chosen initial guess, the first coordinate is zero and therefore,  $c_1$  in (3.5.85) has to be zero. Thus, (3.5.80) reduces to

$$A^k \mathbf{v} = \lambda_2^k \left( c_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + c_3 \left( \frac{\lambda_3}{\lambda_2} \right)^k \mathbf{v}_3 + \cdots + c_n \left( \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_2} \right)^k \mathbf{v}_n \right).$$

This makes the iteration to converge to  $\lambda_2$ , which is the next dominant eigenvalue.  $\square$

**Remark 3.71.** It is important that we understand the hypothesis **(H3)** on the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  correctly. Note that **(H3)** says that the coefficient of  $\mathbf{v}_1$  (which was denoted by  $c_1$ ) should be non-zero when  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  is expressed as

$$\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = c_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n \mathbf{v}_n.$$

Note that the coefficients  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  are unique as  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

For such a choice of  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ , it may happen that the first coordinate may be zero. That is, if  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  is written in coordinate form as  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (x_1^{(0)}, x_2^{(0)}, \dots, x_n^{(0)})^T$ , it is possible that  $x_1^{(0)} = 0$  and  $c_1 \neq 0$ .

Thus, it is not necessary that the power method will converge to the second dominant eigenvalue if the first coordinate of the initial guess is zero. However, we may expect this to happen if  $c_1 = 0$ . The following example illustrates this fact.  $\square$

**Example 3.72.** Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 91.4 & -22.0 & -44.8000 \\ 175.2 & -41.0 & -86.4 \\ 105.2 & -26.0 & -51.4000 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The eigenvalues of this matrix are  $\lambda_1 = -5$ ,  $\lambda_2 = 3$  and  $\lambda_3 = 1$ . The corresponding eigenvectors are  $\mathbf{v}_1 = (3, 5, 4)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 = (2, 6, 1)^T$  and  $\mathbf{v}_3 = (1, -2, 3)^T$ .

Note that the matrix  $A$  satisfies the hypothesis **(H1)** since -5 is the unique dominant eigenvalue and it is also a simple eigenvalue. The matrix  $A$  satisfies the hypothesis **(H2)** as all eigenvalues are distinct and hence eigenvectors form a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Thus the fate of the power method iterates depends solely on the choice of the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$  and whether it satisfies the hypothesis **(H3)**

- Let us take the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (1, 0.5, 0.25)^T$ . Note that  $c_1 \neq 0$  for this initial guess. Thus the initial guess satisfies the hypothesis **(H3)**. Therefore by the theorem on Power method (Theorem 3.62), the iterative sequences generated by power method converges to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1 = -5$  and the corresponding eigenvector (with a scalar multiple)  $\frac{1}{5}\mathbf{v}_1$ .
- Let us take the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0, 0.5, 0.25)^T$ . Note that  $c_1 \neq 0$  for this initial guess. Thus the initial guess satisfies the hypothesis **(H3)**. Therefore by the theorem on Power method (Theorem 3.62), the iterative sequences generated by power method converges to the dominant eigenvalue  $\lambda_1 = -5$  and the corresponding eigenvector (with a scalar multiple)  $\frac{1}{5}\mathbf{v}_1$ . Compare this with Example 3.70. In the present case the first coordinate of the initial guess vector is zero, just as in Example 3.70. In Example 3.70 the power method iterate converged to the second dominant eigenvalue and the corresponding eigenvector, which does not happen in the present case. The reason is that in the Example 3.70,  $c_1 = 0$  for the initial guess chosen, but in the current example  $c_1 \neq 0$ .  $\square$

### 3.5.2 Gerschgorin's Theorem

An important tool in eigenvalue approximation is the ability to localize the eigenvalues, and the most important tool in eigenvalue localization is Gerschgorin's theorem. Gerschgorin's Circle theorem helps us in localization of eigenvalues of a matrix. This theorem explicitly constructs  $n$  disks in the complex plane with centers at the diagonal elements of the matrix; and all the eigenvalues of the matrix lie in the union of these disks.

**Theorem 3.73 (Gerschgorin's Circle Theorem).** *Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. For each  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , define  $\rho_k$  by*

$$\rho_k = \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq k}}^n |a_{kj}|,$$

and  $D_k$  denotes the closed disk in the complex plane with centre  $a_{kk}$  and radius  $\rho_k$ , i.e.,

$$D_k = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z - a_{kk}| \leq \rho_k\}.$$

- (1) *Each eigenvalue of  $A$  lies in one of the disks  $D_k$ . That is, no eigenvalue of  $A$  lies in  $\mathbb{C} \setminus \bigcup_{k=1}^n D_k$ .*
- (2) *Suppose that among the disks  $D_1, D_2, \dots, D_n$ , there is a collection of  $m$  disks whose union (denoted by  $R_1$ ) is disjoint from the union of the rest of the  $n-m$  disks (denoted by  $R_2$ ). Then exactly  $m$  eigenvalues lie in  $R_1$  and  $n-m$  eigenvalues lie in  $R_2$  (here each eigenvalue is counted as many times as its algebraic multiplicity).*

**Proof.** We will prove only (i) as it is easy, and the proving (ii) is beyond the scope of this course.

Let  $\lambda$  be an eigenvalue of  $A$ . Then there exists a  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$  such that

$$A\mathbf{v} = \lambda\mathbf{v} \tag{3.5.97}$$

Let  $1 \leq r \leq n$  be such that  $|v_r| = \max\{|v_1|, |v_2|, \dots, |v_n|\}$ . The  $r^{\text{th}}$  equation of the system of equations (3.5.97) is given by (actually, of  $A\mathbf{v} - \lambda\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ )

$$a_{r1}v_1 + \dots + a_{r,r-1}v_{r-1} + (a_{rr} - \lambda)v_r + a_{r,r+1}v_{r+1} + \dots + a_{rn}v_n = 0$$

From the last equation, we get

$$\lambda - a_{rr} = \frac{v_1}{v_r} a_{r1} + \dots + \frac{v_{r-1}}{v_r} a_{r,r-1} + \frac{v_{r+1}}{v_r} a_{r,r+1} + \dots + \frac{v_n}{v_r} a_{rn} \tag{3.5.98}$$

Taking modulus on both sides of the equation (3.5.98), and using the triangle inequality  $|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$  repeatedly we get

$$|\lambda - a_{rr}| \leq \frac{|v_1|}{|v_r|} |a_{r1}| + \cdots + \frac{|v_{r-1}|}{|v_r|} |a_{r,r-1}| + \frac{|v_{r+1}|}{|v_r|} |a_{r,r+1}| + \cdots + \frac{|v_n|}{|v_r|} |a_{rn}| \quad (3.5.99)$$

In view of the choice of  $r$ , the components of the vector  $\mathbf{v}$  satisfy  $\frac{|v_s|}{|v_r|} \leq 1$ . The last equation (3.5.99) becomes

$$|\lambda - a_{rr}| \leq |a_{r1}| + \cdots + |a_{r,r-1}| + |a_{r,r+1}| + \cdots + |a_{rn}| \quad (3.5.100)$$

Observe that the right hand side of the inequality (3.5.100) is  $\rho_r$ . This proves that  $\lambda \in D_r$ .  $\square$

**Example 3.74.** For the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 0 & 9 \end{pmatrix},$$

the **Gerschgorin's disks** are given by

$$D_1 = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z-4| \leq 2\}, \quad D_2 = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z-2| \leq 1\}, \quad D_3 = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z-9| \leq 2\}.$$

Draw a picture of these disks and observe that  $D_3$  neither intersects  $D_1$  nor  $D_2$ . By (ii) of Theorem 3.73,  $D_3$  has one eigenvalue and  $D_1 \cup D_2$  has two eigenvalues counting multiplicities. Note that the eigenvalues are approximately 4.6318, 1.8828  $\in D_1 \cup D_2$  and 8.4853  $\in D_3$ .  $\square$

**Remark 3.75.** Gerschgorin's circle theorem is helpful in finding bound for eigenvalues. For the matrix in Example 3.74, any number  $z$  in  $D_1$  satisfies  $|z| \leq 6$ . Similarly any number  $z$  in  $D_2$  satisfies  $|z| \leq 3$ , and any number  $z$  in  $D_3$  satisfies  $|z| \leq 11$ . Since any eigenvalue  $\lambda$  lies in one of three disks, we can conclude that  $|\lambda| \leq 11$ .  $\square$

**Remark 3.76.** The main disadvantage of the power method discussed in Section 3.5.1 is that if a given matrix has more than one dominant eigenvalues, then the method may not converge. So, for a given matrix, we do not know whether the power method will converge or not. Also, as the power method is reasonably slow (see Example 3.72 for an illustration) we may have to perform reasonably large number of iterations to come to know that the method is not actually converging.

Thus, a tool to find out whether the given matrix has a unique dominant eigenvalue or not is highly desirable. The Gerschgorin theorem 3.73 can sometime be used to see if power method can be used for a given matrix. For instance, in Example 3.74, we see that the power method can be used to obtain an approximation to the dominant eigenvalue.  $\square$

Since the matrices  $A$  and its transpose (denoted by  $A^T$ ) have same eigenvalues, we can apply Gerschgorin Circle Theorem to  $A^T$  and conclude the following corollary.

**Corollary 3.77.** Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. For each  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , define  $\tau_k$  by

$$\tau_k = \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq k}}^n |a_{jk}|,$$

and  $B_k$  denotes the closed disk in the complex plane with centre  $a_{kk}$  and radius  $\tau_k$ . That is,

$$B_k = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z - a_{kk}| \leq \tau_k\}.$$

- (1) Each eigenvalue of  $A$  lies in one of the disks  $B_k$ . That is, no eigenvalue of  $A$  lies in  $\mathbb{C} \setminus \cup_{k=1}^n B_k$ .
- (2) Suppose that among the disks  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_n$ , there is a collection of  $m$  disks whose union (denoted by  $C_1$ ) is disjoint from the union of the rest of the  $n - m$  disks (denoted by  $C_2$ ). Then exactly  $m$  eigenvalues lie in  $C_1$  and  $n - m$  eigenvalues lie in  $C_2$  (here each eigenvalue is counted as many times as its algebraic multiplicity).  $\square$

**Remark 3.78.** Advantage of the above corollary is the following: Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Let  $R$  denote the region defined by  $R = \cup_{k=1}^n D_k$  where  $D_k$  are as given by Theorem 3.73. Similarly, let  $C$  denote the region defined by  $C = \cup_{k=1}^n B_k$  where  $B_k$  are as given by Corollary 3.77. It may happen that  $C \subset R$ , in which case we will get better estimate for eigenvalues of  $A$ . It may not happen for every matrix  $A$ . However whenever such a thing happens, we get better bounds for eigenvalues of  $A$ . Such bounds which we obtain using both informations  $R$  and  $C$  may be called **optimum bounds**. Let us illustrate this with two examples.  $\square$

**Example 3.79.** For the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

the  $\rho_k, \tau_k$  (in the notations of Theorem 3.73 and Corollary 3.77) are given by

$$\rho_1 = 1, \rho_2 = 2, \rho_3 = 3, \quad \text{and} \quad \tau_1 = 0, \tau_2 = 2, \tau_3 = 3$$

Now compute

$$\begin{aligned} R &= \cup_{k=1}^n D_k = \{z : |z - 3| \leq 1\} \cup \{z : |z + 2| \leq 2\} \cup \{z : |z + 3| \leq 3\} \\ C &= \cup_{k=1}^n B_k = \{z : |z - 3| \leq 0\} \cup \{z : |z + 2| \leq 2\} \cup \{z : |z + 3| \leq 3\} \end{aligned}$$

and clearly  $C \subset R$ . Hence bounds obtained using  $C$  are optimum bounds. Draw both regions  $C$  and  $R$ .  $\square$

### 3.6 Exercises

#### Gaussian Elimination Methods

- (1) Solve the following systems of linear equations using Naive Gaussian elimination method, and modified Gaussian elimination method with partial pivoting.

(i)

$$\begin{aligned} 6x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 &= -2, \\ 2x_1 + 0.6667x_2 + 0.3333x_3 &= 1, \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

(ii)

$$\begin{aligned} 0.729x_1 + 0.81x_2 + 0.9x_3 &= 0.6867, \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0.8338, \\ 1.331x_1 + 1.21x_2 + 1.1x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

(iii)

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 &= 2, \\ 3x_1 - 3x_2 + x_3 &= -1, \\ x_1 + x_2 &= 3. \end{aligned}$$

- (2) Solve the system

$$0.001x_1 + x_2 = 1, \quad x_1 + x_2 = 2$$

- (i) using Gaussian elimination with partial pivoting with infinite precision arithmetic,
  - (ii) using naive Gaussian elimination with 2-digit rounding, and
  - (iii) using modified Gaussian elimination method with partial pivoting, using 2-digit rounding.
- (3) Let  $\epsilon$  be such that  $0 < \epsilon \ll 1$ . Solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 6, \\ 3x_1 + (3 + \epsilon)x_2 + 4x_3 &= 20, \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 &= 13 \end{aligned}$$

using naive Gaussian elimination method, and using modified Gaussian elimination method with partial pivoting. Obtain the residual error in each case on a computer for which the  $\epsilon$  is less than its machine epsilon. The residual error vector corresponding to an approximate solution  $x^*$  is defined as  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}^*$ , where

$A$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are the coefficient matrix and the right side vector, respectively, of the given linear system.

- (4) A matrix  $A = (a_{ij})$  is said to be *row-equilibrated* if the following condition is satisfied

$$\max_{1 \leq j \leq n} |a_{ij}| = 1 \quad \forall i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Consider the following system of linear equations

$$30.00x_1 + 591400x_2 = 591700$$

$$5.291x_1 - 6.130x_2 = 46.78$$

- (i) Find the exact solution of the given system using Gaussian elimination method with partial pivoting (*i.e.*, with infinite precision arithmetic).
- (ii) Solve the given system using naive Gaussian elimination method using 4-digit rounding.
- (iii) Obtain a system of linear equations  $\tilde{A}\mathbf{x} = \tilde{\mathbf{b}}$  that is equivalent to the given system, where the matrix  $\tilde{A}$  is row-equilibrated. Solve the system  $\tilde{A}\mathbf{x} = \tilde{\mathbf{b}}$  using naive Gaussian elimination method using 4-digit rounding.
- (iv) Compute the relative errors involved in the two approximations obtained above.

- (5) Consider the system of linear equations given by

$$a_{11}x_1 + \dots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1,$$

$$\dots$$

$$\dots$$

$$a_{n1}x_1 + \dots + a_{nn}x_n = b_n,$$

where  $a_{ij} = 0$  whenever  $i - j \geq 2$ . Write the general form of this system. Use naive Gaussian elimination method to solve it, taking advantage of the elements that are known to be zero. Count the number of operations involved in this computation.

- (6) Use Thomas method to solve the tri-diagonal system of equations

$$2x_1 + 3x_2 = 1,$$

$$x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 = 4,$$

$$x_2 + 2x_3 + 3x_4 = 5,$$

$$x_3 + 2x_4 = 2.$$



## LU Decomposition

- (7) Prove or disprove the following statements:
- (i) An invertible matrix has at most one Doolittle factorization.
  - (ii) If a singular matrix has a Doolittle factorization, then the matrix has at least two Doolittle factorizations.
- (8) Prove that if an invertible matrix  $A$  has an  $LU$ -factorization, then all principal minors of  $A$  are non-zero.
- (9) Give an example of a non-invertible  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $A$  such that the leading principal minors of order 1 and 2 are non-zero, and  $A$  has Doolittle factorization.
- (10) Use the Doolittle's factorization to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 4x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 4, \\ x_1 + 4x_2 - 2x_3 &= 4, \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 - 4x_3 &= 6. \end{aligned}$$

- (11) Show that the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

is invertible but has no LU factorization. Do a suitable interchange of rows to get an invertible matrix, which has an LU factorization.

- (12) Consider

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 6 & -4 \\ 6 & 17 & -17 \\ -4 & -17 & -20 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Determine directly the factorization  $A = LDL^T$ , where  $D$  is diagonal and  $L$  is a lower triangular matrix with 1's on its diagonal.

- (13) Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix which is positive definite. Let  $S$  be a non-empty subset of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Show that the submatrix  $A_S = (a_{ij})_{i,j \in S}$  is positive definite.
- (14) Factor the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 2 \\ 6 & 10 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

so that  $A = LL^T$ , where  $L$  is lower triangular.

- (15) Prove the uniqueness of the factorization  $A = LL^T$ , where  $L$  is a lower triangular matrix all of whose diagonal entries are positive. (**Hint:** Assume that there are lower triangular matrices  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  with positive diagonals. Prove that  $L_1L_2^{-1} = I$ .)

- (16) Use Cholesky factorization to solve the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 &= 4, \\ -2x_1 + 5x_2 - 3x_3 &= -7, \\ 2x_1 - 3x_2 + 6x_3 &= 10.\end{aligned}$$

## Matrix Norms

- (17) The following inequalities show that the notion of convergent sequences of vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is independent of the vector norm. Show that the following inequalities hold for each  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$

- (i)  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty \leq \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \leq \sqrt{n}\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty$ ,
- (ii)  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty \leq \|\mathbf{x}\|_1 \leq n\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty$ ,
- (iii)  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \leq \|\mathbf{x}\|_1 \leq \sqrt{n}\|\mathbf{x}\|_2$ .

- (18) Show that the norm defined on the set of all  $n \times n$  matrices by

$$\|A\| := \max_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n \\ 1 \leq j \leq n}} |a_{ij}|$$

is not subordinate to any vector norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

- (19) Let  $A$  be an invertible matrix. Show that its condition number  $\kappa(A)$  satisfies  $\kappa(A) \geq 1$ .

- (20) Let  $A$  and  $B$  be invertible matrices with condition numbers  $\kappa(A)$  and  $\kappa(B)$  respectively. Show that  $\kappa(AB) \leq \kappa(A)\kappa(B)$ .

- (21) Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix with real entries. Let  $\kappa_2(A)$  and  $\kappa_\infty(A)$  denote the condition numbers of a matrix  $A$  that are computed using the matrix norms  $\|A\|_2$  and  $\|A\|_\infty$ , respectively. Answer the following questions.

- (i) Determine all the diagonal matrices such that  $\kappa_\infty(A) = 1$ .
- (ii) Let  $Q$  be a matrix such that  $Q^T Q = I$  (such matrices are called orthogonal matrices). Show that  $\kappa_2(Q) = 1$ .
- (iii) If  $\kappa_2(A) = 1$ , show that all the eigenvalues of  $A^T A$  are equal. Further, deduce that  $A$  is a scalar multiple of an orthogonal matrix.

- (22) Let  $A(\alpha)$  be a matrix depending on a parameter  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  given by

$$A(\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} 0.1\alpha & 0.1\alpha \\ 1.0 & 2.5 \end{pmatrix}$$

For each  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ , compute the condition number of  $A(\alpha)$ . Determine an  $\alpha_0$  such that the condition number of  $A(\alpha_0)$  is the minimum of the set  $\{\kappa(A(\alpha)) : \alpha \in \mathbb{R}\}$ . In the computation of condition numbers, use the matrix norm that is subordinate to the maximum vector norm on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

- (23) In solving the system of equations  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  with matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2.01 \end{pmatrix},$$

predict how slight changes in  $\mathbf{b}$  will affect the solution  $\mathbf{x}$ . Test your prediction in the concrete case when  $\mathbf{b} = (4, 4)^T$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}} = (3, 5)^T$ . Use the maximum norm for vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

- (24) Consider the following two systems of linear equations

$$x_1 + x_2 = 1, \quad x_1 + 2x_2 = 2.$$

and

$$10^{-4}x_1 + 10^{-4}x_2 = 10^{-4}, \quad x_1 + 2x_2 = 2.$$

Let us denote the first and second systems by  $A_1\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}_1$  and  $A_2\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}_2$  respectively. Use maximum-norm for vectors and the matrix norm subordinate to maximum-norm for matrices in your computations.

- (i) Solve each of the above systems using Naive Gaussian elimination method.
- (ii) Compute the condition numbers of  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ .
- (iii) For each of the systems, find an upper bound for the relative error in the solution if the right hand sides are approximated by  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_1$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_2$  respectively.
- (iv) Solve the systems

$$A_1\mathbf{x} = \tilde{\mathbf{b}}_1 \text{ and } A_2\mathbf{x} = \tilde{\mathbf{b}}_2$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_1 = (1.02, 1.98)^T$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_2 = (1.02 \times 10^{-4}, 1.98)^T$  using naive Gaussian elimination method. Compute the relative error in each case. Compare the computed relative errors with the bounds obtained above.

- (25) In the following problems, the matrix norm  $\|\cdot\|$  denotes a matrix norm subordinate to a fixed vector norm.
- (i) Let  $A$  be an invertible matrix and  $B$  be any singular matrix. Prove the following inequality.

$$\frac{1}{\|A - B\|} \leq \|A^{-1}\|.$$

- (ii) Let  $A$  be an invertible matrix, and  $B$  be a matrix such that

$$\frac{1}{\|A - B\|} > \|A^{-1}\|.$$

Show that  $B$  is invertible.

- (iii) Let  $C$  be a matrix such that  $\|I - C\| < 1$ . Show that  $C$  is invertible.  
 (iv) Let  $D$  be a matrix such that  $\|D\| < 1$ . Show that the matrix  $I - D$  is invertible.

## Diagonally Dominant Matrix

- (26) Let  $A$  be a diagonally dominant matrix. Then show that Naive Gaussian elimination method to solve the system of linear equations  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  never fails to give an approximate solution of the given linear system.  
 (27) Let  $A$  be a diagonally dominant matrix such that  $a_{ij} = 0$  for every  $i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  such that  $i > j + 1$ . Does naive Gaussian elimination method preserve the diagonal dominance? Justify your answer.

## Iterative Methods

- (28) Let  $A$  be a diagonally dominant matrix. Show that all the diagonal elements of  $A$  are non-zero (*i.e.*,  $a_{ii} \neq 0$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ). As a consequence, the iterating sequences of Jacobi and Gauss-Seidel methods are well-defined if the coefficient matrix  $A$  in the linear system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  is a diagonally dominant matrix.  
 (29) Find the  $n \times n$  matrix  $B$  and the  $n$ -dimensional vector  $\mathbf{c}$  such that the Gauss-Seidal method can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k+1)} = B\mathbf{x}^{(k)} + \mathbf{c}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

- (30) For each of the following systems, write down the formula for iterating sequences of Jacobi and Gauss-Seidel methods. Compute three iterates by taking  $\mathbf{x}^0 = (0, 0, 0)^T$ . Discuss if you can guarantee that these sequences converge to the exact solution. In case you are not sure about convergence, suggest another iterating sequence that converges to the exact solution if possible; and justify that the new sequence converges to the exact solution.  
 (i)

$$\begin{aligned} 5x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 0.12, \\ 1.75x_1 + 7x_2 + 0.5x_3 &= 0.1, \\ x_1 + 0.2x_2 + 4.5x_3 &= 0.5. \end{aligned}$$

(ii)

$$x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 = 1,$$

$$x_1 + x_2 - x_3 = 1,$$

$$2x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3 = 1.$$

(iii)

$$x_1 + x_2 + 10x_3 = -1,$$

$$2x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 = -6,$$

$$3x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 = 4.$$

(31) Consider the following system of linear equations

$$0.8647x_1 + 0.5766x_2 = 0.2885,$$

$$0.4322x_1 + 0.2882x_2 = 0.1442.$$

(i) Find the exact solution of the linear system.

(ii) Using 4-digit chopping, do one iteration of residual corrector method to obtain  $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ . Use the initial guess to be  $(0, 0)^T$ .

(iii) Compute the residual vector for the solution obtained in (ii) above.

## Eigenvalue Problems

(32) The matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

has eigenvalues  $\lambda_1 = 2$ ,  $\lambda_2 = 1$  and  $\lambda_3 = 1$  and the corresponding eigenvectors may be taken as  $\mathbf{v}_1 = (1, 2, 3)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 = (0, 1, 2)^T$  and  $\mathbf{v}_3 = (0, 2, 1)^T$ . Perform 3 iterations to find the eigenvalue and the corresponding eigen vector to which the power method converges when we start the iteration with the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0, 0.5, 0.75)^T$ . Without performing the iteration, find the eigenvalue and the corresponding eigenvector to which the power method converges when we start the iteration with the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0.001, 0.5, 0.75)^T$ . Justify your answer.

(33) The matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 5.4 & 0 & 0 \\ -113.0233 & -0.5388 & -0.6461 \\ -46.0567 & -6.4358 & -0.9612 \end{pmatrix}$$

has eigenvalues  $\lambda_1 = 5.4$ ,  $\lambda_2 = 1.3$  and  $\lambda_3 = -2.8$  with corresponding eigenvectors  $\mathbf{v}_1 = (0.2, -4.1, 2.7)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 = (0, 1.3, -3.7)^T$  and  $\mathbf{v}_3 = (0, 2.6, 9.1)^T$ . To which eigenvalue and the corresponding eigenvector does the power method converge if we start with the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0, 1, 1)^T$ ? Justify your answer.

- (34) Use Gerschgorin's circle theorem to determine the intervals in which the eigenvalues of the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0.5 & 0 & 0.2 \\ 0 & 3.15 & -1 \\ 0.57 & 0 & -7.43 \end{pmatrix}.$$

lie, given that all eigenvalues of  $A$  are real. Show that power method can be applied for this matrix to find the dominant eigenvalue without computing eigenvalues explicitly. Compute the first three iterates of Power method sequences.

- (35) For this question, we take the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} -2.7083 & -2.6824 & 0.4543 \\ 0.1913 & 0.7629 & 0.1007 \\ -0.3235 & -0.4052 & 5.0453 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$  denote eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3$  respectively of the matrix  $A$  which are given by  $\lambda_1 \approx 5.0187$ ,  $\lambda_2 \approx -2.5313$ ,  $\lambda_3 \approx 0.6125$  and  $\mathbf{v}_1 \approx (0.25, 0.13, 5.02)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 \approx (2.53, -0.15, 0.1)^T$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_3 \approx (-0.49, 0.61, 0.02)^T$ . Answer the following questions:

- (i) Obtain the Gerschgorin disks associated to the matrix  $A$  and pictorially represent them in the complex plane.
- (ii) Can Gerschgorin theorem be used to show that the matrix  $A$  has a unique dominant eigenvalue? Justify your answer.
- (iii) Define the iterative sequences  $\{\mu_k\}$  and  $\mathbf{x}^{(k)}$  using power method that converge to  $\lambda_1$  and  $\alpha\mathbf{v}_1$  for some constant  $\alpha$  when the initial guess is  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (1, 1, 1)^T$ . Perform one iteration.
- (iv) If we take the initial guess  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (0, 1, 1)^T$ , then show that the iterative sequence obtained by power method converges to  $\lambda_j$  and  $K\mathbf{v}_j$  for some  $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$  and for some constant  $K$ . What is the value of  $j$  and possible values of  $K$ ?  
(Hint:  $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} \approx 0.3060\mathbf{v}_1 + 0.1864\mathbf{v}_2 + 1.6748\mathbf{v}_3$ .)
- (v) Give all possible initial guesses for which the sequence  $\{\mu_k\}$  obtained using power method converges to  $\lambda_2$ . Justify your answer.
- (vi) Give all possible initial guesses for which the sequence  $\{\mu_k\}$  obtained using power method converges to  $\lambda_3$ . Justify your answer. **(End-Sem, Spring 2012)**

- (36) Use the Gerschgorin Circle theorem to determine bounds for the eigenvalues for the following matrices. Also find optimum bounds wherever possible. Also draw the pictures of all the regions given by Gerschgorin circles.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 4 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4.75 & 2.25 & -0.25 \\ 2.25 & 4.75 & 1.25 \\ -0.25 & 1.25 & 4.75 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

- (37) Prove that the following two statements concerning  $n \times n$  matrices are equivalent.
- (i) Every diagonally dominant matrix is invertible.
  - (ii) Each of the eigenvalues of a matrix  $A$ , belongs to at least one Gerschgorin disk corresponding to  $A$ .
- (38) Prove that the eigenvalues of the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -5 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

satisfy the inequality  $1 \leq |\lambda| \leq 9$ .

- (39) Show that the imaginary parts of the eigenvalues of

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1/3 & 2/3 \\ 1 & -4 & 0 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

all lie in the interval  $[-1, 1]$ .

## CHAPTER 4

---

### Nonlinear Equations

One of the most frequently occurring problems in practical applications is to find the roots of equations of the form

$$f(x) = 0, \quad (4.0.1)$$

where  $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a given nonlinear function. It is well-known that not all nonlinear equations can be solved explicitly to obtain the exact value of the roots and hence, we need to look for methods to compute approximate value of the roots. By approximate root to (4.0.1), we mean a point  $x^* \in \mathbb{R}$  for which the value  $f(x)$  is very near to zero, ie.,  $f(x^*) \approx 0$ .

In this chapter, we introduce various iterative methods to obtain an approximation to a real root of equations of the form (4.0.1) with  $f$  being a continuous nonlinear function. The key idea in approximating the real roots of (4.0.1) consists of two steps:

- (1) **Starting Step:** Take one or more points (arbitrarily or following a procedure)  $x_i \in [a, b]$  ( $i = 0, 1, \dots, m, m \in \mathbb{N}$ ) around a root of the equation (4.0.1). Consider  $x_m$  as an approximation to the root of (4.0.1).
- (2) **Improving Step:** If  $x_m$  is not ‘close’ to the required root, then devise a procedure to obtain another point  $x_{m+1}$  that is ‘more close’ to the root than  $x_m$ .

Repeat this step until we obtain a point  $x_n$  ( $n \geq m$ ) which is ‘sufficiently close’ to the required root.

This process of improving the approximation to the root is called the **iterative process** (or **iterative procedure**), and such methods are called **iterative methods**. In an iterative method, we obtain a sequence of numbers  $\{x_n\}$  which is expected to converge to the root of (4.0.1) as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . We investigate conditions on the function  $f$ , its domain, and co-domain under which the sequence of iterates converge to a solution of the equation (4.0.1).

We classify the iterative methods discussed in this chapter into two types, namely,

- (1) **Closed Domain Methods:** As the starting step, these methods need the knowledge of an interval in which at least one root of the given nonlinear equation ex-



ists. Further iterations include the restriction of this interval to smaller intervals in which root lies. These methods are also called **bracketing methods**.

- (2) **Open Domain Methods:** The  $x_i$ 's mentioned in the starting step above are chosen arbitrarily and the consecutive iterations are based on a formula.

In the case of closed domain methods, the difficult part is to locate an interval containing a root. But, once this is done, the iterative sequence will surely converge as we will see in Section 4.1. In this section, we discuss two closed domain methods, namely, the bisection method and the regula-falsi method. In the case of open domain methods, it is easy at the starting step as we can choose the  $x_i$ 's arbitrarily. But, it is not necessary that the sequence converges. We discuss secant method, Newton-Raphson method and fixed point method in Section 4.3, which are some of the open domain methods.

## 4.1 Closed Domain Methods

The idea behind the closed domain methods is to start with an interval (denoted by  $[a_0, b_0]$ ) in which there exists at least one root of the given nonlinear equations and then reduce the length of this interval iteratively with the condition that there is at least one root of the equation at each iteration.

Note that the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  can be obtained using the intermediate value theorem (as we always assume that the nonlinear function  $f$  is continuous) by checking the condition that

$$f(a_0)f(b_0) < 0.$$

That is,  $f(a_0)$  and  $f(b_0)$  are of opposite sign. The closed domain methods differ from each other only by the way they go on reducing the length of this interval at each iteration.

In the following subsections we discuss two closed domain methods, namely, (i) the bisection method and (ii) the regula-falsi method.

### 4.1.1 Bisection Method

The most simple way of reducing the length of the interval is to sub-divide the interval into two equal parts and then take the sub-interval that contains a root of the equation and discard the other part of the interval. This method is called the **bisection method**. Let us explain the procedure of generating the first iteration of this method.

**Step 1:** Define  $x_1$  to be the mid-point of the interval  $[a_0, b_0]$ . That is,

$$x_1 = \frac{a_0 + b_0}{2}.$$

**Step 2:** Now, exactly one of the following two statements hold.

- (1)  $x_1$  solves the nonlinear equation. That is,  $f(x_1) = 0$ .
- (2) Either  $f(a_0)f(x_1) < 0$  or  $f(b_0)f(x_1) < 0$ .

If case (1) above holds, then  $x_1$  is a required root of the given equation  $f(x) = 0$  and therefore we stop the iterative procedure. If  $f(x_1) \neq 0$ , then case (2) holds as  $f(a_0)$  and  $f(b_0)$  are already of opposite signs. In this case, we define a subinterval  $[a_1, b_1]$  of  $[a_0, b_0]$  as follows.

$$[a_1, b_1] = \begin{cases} [a_0, x_1], & \text{if } f(a_0)f(x_1) < 0, \\ [x_1, b_0], & \text{if } f(b_0)f(x_1) < 0. \end{cases}$$

The outcome of the first iteration of the bisection method is the interval  $[a_1, b_1]$  and the first member of the corresponding iterative sequence is the real number  $x_1$ . Observe that

- the length of the interval  $[a_1, b_1]$  is exactly half of the length of  $[a_0, b_0]$  and
- $[a_1, b_1]$  has at least one root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

Similarly, we can obtain  $x_2$  and  $[a_2, b_2]$  as the result of the second iteration and so on.

We now present the algorithm for the bisection method.

**Hypothesis:** There exists an interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  such that the function  $f : [a_0, b_0] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous, and the numbers  $f(a_0)$  and  $f(b_0)$  have opposite signs.

**Algorithm:**

**Step 1:** For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , define the iterative sequence of the bisection method as

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{a_n + b_n}{2},$$

which is the midpoint of the interval  $[a_n, b_n]$ .

**Step 2:** One of the following two cases hold.

- (1)  $x_{n+1}$  solves the nonlinear equation. That is,  $f(x_{n+1}) = 0$ .
- (2) Either  $f(a_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0$  or  $f(b_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0$ .

Define the subinterval  $[a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}]$  of  $[a_n, b_n]$  as follows.

$$[a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}] = \begin{cases} [a_n, x_{n+1}], & \text{if } f(a_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0, \\ [x_{n+1}, b_n], & \text{if } f(b_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0. \end{cases}$$

**Step 3:** Stop the iteration if one of the following happens:

- the case (1) in step 2 holds. Then declare the value of  $x_{n+1}$  as the required root.
- $(b_{n+1} - a_{n+1})$  is sufficiently small (less than a pre-assigned positive quantity). Then declare the value of  $x_{n+2}$  as the required root up to the desired accuracy.

If any of the above stopping criteria does not hold, then go to step 1. Continue this process till one of the above two stopping criteria is fulfilled.  $\square$

**Remark 4.1.** In practice, one may also use any of the stopping criteria listed in section 4.2, either single or multiple criteria.  $\square$

Assuming that, for each  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , the number  $x_n$  is not a solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ , we get a sequence of real numbers  $\{x_n\}$ . The question is whether this sequence converges to a solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ . We now discuss the error estimate and convergence of the iterative sequence generated by the bisection method.

**Theorem 4.2 (Convergence and Error Estimate of Bisection Method).**

**Hypothesis:** Let  $f : [a_0, b_0] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function such that the numbers  $f(a_0)$  and  $f(b_0)$  have opposite signs.

**Conclusion:**

- There exists an  $r \in (a_0, b_0)$  such that  $f(r) = 0$  and the iterative sequence  $\{x_n\}$  of the bisection method converges to  $r$ .
- For each  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we have the following error estimate

$$|x_{n+1} - r| \leq \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+1} (b_0 - a_0). \quad (4.1.2)$$

**Proof:** It directly follows from the construction of the intervals  $[a_n, b_n]$  that

$$b_n - a_n = \frac{1}{2}(b_{n-1} - a_{n-1}) = \dots = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n (b_0 - a_0).$$

As a consequence, we get

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (b_n - a_n) = 0.$$

By algebra of limits of sequences, we get

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n.$$

Since for each  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , the number  $x_{n+1}$  is the mid-point of the interval  $[a_n, b_n]$ , we also have

$$a_n < x_{n+1} < b_n.$$

Now by sandwich theorem for sequences, we conclude that the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  of mid-points also converges to the same limit as the sequences of end-points. Thus we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = r \text{ (say)}. \quad (4.1.3)$$

Since for each  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we have  $f(a_n)f(b_n) < 0$ , applying limits on both sides of the inequality and using the continuity of  $f$ , we get

$$f(r)f(r) \leq 0, \quad (4.1.4)$$

from which we conclude that  $f(r) = 0$ . That is, the sequence of mid-points  $\{x_n\}$  defined by the bisection method converges to a root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

Since the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  are non-decreasing and non-increasing, respectively, for each  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we have  $r \in [a_n, b_n]$ . Also,  $x_{n+1}$  is the mid-point of the interval  $[a_n, b_n]$ . Therefore, we have

$$|x_{n+1} - r| \leq \frac{1}{2}(b_n - a_n) = \dots = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+1} (b_0 - a_0),$$

which is the required estimate.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.3.** *Let  $\epsilon > 0$  be given. Let  $f$  satisfy the hypothesis of bisection method with the interval  $[a_0, b_0]$ . Let  $x_n$  be as in the bisection method, and  $r$  be the root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  to which bisection method converges. Then  $|x_n - r| \leq \epsilon$  whenever  $n$  satisfies*

$$n \geq \frac{\log(b_0 - a_0) - \log \epsilon}{\log 2} \quad (4.1.5)$$

**Proof :** By the error estimate of bisection method given by (4.1.2), we are sure that

$$|x_n - r| \leq \epsilon,$$

whenever  $n$  is such that

$$\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n (b_0 - a_0) \leq \epsilon.$$

By taking logarithm on both sides of the last inequality, we get the desired estimate on  $n$ .  $\square$

**Remark 4.4.** The Corollary 4.3 tells us that if we want an approximation  $x_n$  to the root  $r$  of the given equation such that the absolute error is less than a pre-assigned positive quantity, then we have to perform  $n$  iterations, where  $n$  is the least integer that satisfies the inequality (4.1.5). It is interesting to observe that to obtain this  $n$ , we don't need to know the root  $r$ .  $\square$

**Example 4.5.** Let us find an approximate solution to the nonlinear equation

$$\sin x + x^2 - 1 = 0$$

using bisection method so that the resultant absolute error is at most  $\epsilon = 0.125$ .

To apply Bisection method, we must choose an interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  such that the function

$$f(x) = \sin x + x^2 - 1$$

satisfies the hypothesis of bisection method. Note that  $f$  satisfies hypothesis of bisection on the interval  $[0, 1]$ . In order to achieve the required accuracy, we should first decide how many iterations are needed. The inequality (4.1.5), says that required accuracy is achieved provided  $n$  satisfies

$$n \geq \frac{\log(1) - \log(0.125)}{\log 2} = 3$$

Thus we have to compute  $x_3$ . We will do it now.

**Iteration 1:** We have  $a_0 = 0$ ,  $b_0 = 1$ . Thus  $x_1 = 0.5$ . Since,

$$f(x_1) = -0.27 < 0, \quad f(0) < 0, \quad \text{and} \quad f(1) > 0,$$

we take  $[a_1, b_1] = [x_1, b_0] = [0.5, 1]$ .

**Iteration 2:** The mid-point of  $[0.5, 1]$  is  $x_2 = 0.75$ . Since

$$f(x_2) = 0.24 > 0, \quad f(0.5) < 0, \quad \text{and} \quad f(1) > 0,$$

we take  $[a_2, b_2] = [a_1, x_2] = [0.5, 0.75]$ .

**Iteration 3:** The mid-point of  $[0.5, 0.75]$  is  $x_3 = 0.625$ . Since

$$f(x_3) = -0.024 < 0, \quad f(0.5) < 0 \quad \text{and} \quad f(0.75) > 0,$$

we take  $[a_3, b_3] = [x_3, b_2] = [0.625, 0.75]$ .

As suggested by the formula (4.1.5), we stop the iteration here and take the approximate root of the given equation as the mid-point of the interval  $[a_3, b_3]$ , which is  $x_4 \approx 0.6875$ . Note that the true value is  $r \approx 0.636733$ . The absolute error is 0.05 which is much less than the required accuracy of 0.125.  $\square$

**Remark 4.6 (Comments on Bisection method).**

- (1) Note that the mid-point of an interval  $[a, b]$  is precisely the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of the line joining the points  $(a, \text{sgn}(f(a)))$  and  $(b, \text{sgn}(f(b)))$  with the  $x$ -axis.

- (2) Let  $f$ , and the interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  satisfy the hypothesis of bisection method. Even if the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  has more than one solution in the interval  $[a, b]$ , the bisection method chooses the root that it tries to approximate. In other words, once we fix the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0]$ , the bisection method takes over and we cannot control it to find some specific root than what it chooses to find.
- (3) Given a function  $f$ , choosing an interval  $[a, b]$  such that  $f(a)f(b) < 0$  is crucial to bisection method. There is no general procedure to find such an interval. This is one of the main drawbacks of bisection method.
- (4) Bisection method cannot be used to find zero of functions for which graph touches  $x$ -axis but does not cross  $x$ -axis.
- (5) There is a misconception about bisection method's order of convergence (see Definition 1.42), which is claimed to be 1. However there is no proof of  $|x_{n+1} - r| \leq c|x_n - r|$ . If the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges linearly to  $r$ , then we get

$$|x_{n+1} - r| \leq c^{n+1}|x_0 - r|.$$

In the case of bisection method, we have this inequality with  $c = 1/2$ , which is only a necessary condition for the convergence to be linear but not a sufficient condition.  $\square$

### 4.1.2 Regula-falsi Method

The regula-falsi method is similar to the bisection method. Although the bisection method (discussed in the previous subsection) always converges to the solution, the convergence is very slow, especially when the length of the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  is very large and the equation has the root very close to the one of the end points. This is because, at every iteration, we are subdividing the interval  $[a_n, b_n]$  into two equal parts and taking the mid-point as  $x_{n+1}$  (the  $(n+1)^{\text{th}}$  member of the iterative sequence). Therefore, it takes several iterations to reduce the length of the interval to a very small number, and as a consequence the distance between the root and  $x_{n+1}$ .

The **regula-falsi method** differs from the bisection method only in the choice of  $x_{n+1}$  in the interval  $[a_n, b_n]$  for each  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ . Instead of taking the midpoint of the interval, we now take the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of the line joining the points  $(a_n, f(a_n))$  and  $(b_n, f(b_n))$  with the  $x$ -axis. Let us now explain the procedure of generating the first iteration of this method.

**Step 1:** Assume the hypothesis of the bisection method and let  $[a_0, b_0]$  be the initial interval. The line joining the points  $(a_0, f(a_0))$  and  $(b_0, f(b_0))$  is given by

$$y = f(a_0) + \frac{f(b_0) - f(a_0)}{b_0 - a_0}(x - a_0),$$

The first member  $x_1$  of the regula-falsi iterative sequence is the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of the above line with the  $x$ -axis. Therefore,  $x_1$  satisfies the equation

$$f(a_0) + \frac{f(b_0) - f(a_0)}{b_0 - a_0}(x_1 - a_0) = 0$$

and is given by

$$x_1 = a_0 - f(a_0) \frac{b_0 - a_0}{f(b_0) - f(a_0)},$$

which can also be written as

$$x_1 = \frac{a_0 f(b_0) - b_0 f(a_0)}{f(b_0) - f(a_0)}.$$

**Step 2:** Now, exactly one of the following two statements hold.

- (1)  $x_1$  solves the nonlinear equation. That is,  $f(x_1) = 0$ .
- (2) Either  $f(a_0)f(x_1) < 0$  or  $f(b_0)f(x_1) < 0$ .

If case (1) above holds, then  $x_1$  is a required root of the given equation  $f(x) = 0$  and therefore we stop the iterative procedure. If  $f(x_1) \neq 0$ , then case (2) holds as  $f(a_0)$  and  $f(b_0)$  are already of opposite signs. We now define a subinterval  $[a_1, b_1]$  of  $[a_0, b_0]$  as follows.

$$[a_1, b_1] = \begin{cases} [a_0, x_1], & \text{if } f(a_0)f(x_1) < 0, \\ [x_1, b_0], & \text{if } f(b_0)f(x_1) < 0. \end{cases}$$

The outcome of the first iteration of the regula-falsi method is the interval  $[a_1, b_1]$  and the first member of the corresponding iterative sequence is the real number  $x_1$ . Observe that

- the length of the interval  $[a_1, b_1]$  may be (although not always) much less than half of the length of  $[a_0, b_0]$  and
- $[a_1, b_1]$  has at least one root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

We now summarize the regula-falsi method.

**Hypothesis:** Same as bisection method.

**Algorithm:**

**Step 1:** For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , define the iterative sequence of the regula-falsi method as

$$x_{n+1} = a_n - f(a_n) \frac{b_n - a_n}{f(b_n) - f(a_n)} = \frac{a_n f(b_n) - b_n f(a_n)}{f(b_n) - f(a_n)}, \quad (4.1.6)$$

which is the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of the line joining the points  $(a_n, f(a_n))$  and  $(b_n, f(b_n))$  (obtained at the  $n^{\text{th}}$  iteration) with the  $x$ -axis.

**Step 2:** One of the following two cases hold.

- (1)  $x_{n+1}$  solves the nonlinear equation. That is,  $f(x_{n+1}) = 0$ .

(2) Either  $f(a_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0$  or  $f(b_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0$ .

Define the subinterval  $[a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}]$  of  $[a_n, b_n]$  as follows.

$$[a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}] = \begin{cases} [a_n, x_{n+1}], & \text{if } f(a_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0, \\ [x_{n+1}, b_n], & \text{if } f(b_n)f(x_{n+1}) < 0. \end{cases}$$

**Step 3:** Stop the iteration if the case (1) in step 2 holds and declare the value of  $x_{n+1}$  as the required root. Otherwise go to step 1.

Continue this process till a desired accuracy is achieved.  $\square$

**Remark 4.7 (Stopping criteria).**

Unlike in the case of bisection method, there is no clear way of stopping the iteration of regula-falsi method as the length of the interval  $[a_n, b_n]$  obtained at the  $(n+1)^{\text{th}}$  iteration may not converge to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . This situation occurs especially when the function  $f$  is concave or convex in the interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  as illustrated in Example 4.8.  $\square$

Assuming that, for each  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , the number  $x_n$  is not a solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ , we get a sequence of real numbers  $\{x_n\}$ . The question is whether this sequence converges to a root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ . Before addressing this question, let us consolidate the information that we have so far.

(1) The sequence of left end points of the intervals  $[a_n, b_n]$  is a non-decreasing sequence that is bounded above by  $b$ . That is,

$$a_0 \leq a_1 \leq \dots \leq a_n \leq \dots \leq b.$$

Hence the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  has a limit, *i.e.*,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  exists.

(2) The sequence of right end points of the intervals  $[a_n, b_n]$  is a non-increasing sequence that is bounded below by  $a$ . That is,

$$b_0 \geq b_1 \geq \dots \geq b_n \geq \dots \geq a.$$

Hence the sequence  $\{b_n\}$  has a limit, *i.e.*,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n$  exists.

(3) Since  $a_n < b_n$  for all  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we conclude that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n.$$

If the lengths of the intervals obtained in regula-falsi method tend to zero, then we have



$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n,$$

in which case, we also have by sandwich theorem

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_{n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n,$$

as  $a_n < x_{n+1} < b_n$  for all  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ . In this case, the common limit will be a root of the nonlinear equation, as is the case with bisection method.  $\square$

Unfortunately, it may happen that the lengths of the subintervals chosen by regula-falsi method do not go to zero. In other words, if  $a_n \rightarrow \alpha$  and  $b_n \rightarrow \beta$ , then it may happen that  $\alpha < \beta$ . Let us illustrate this case by the following example.

**Example 4.8.** Consider the nonlinear equation

$$e^x - 2 = 0.$$

Note that the function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = e^x - 2$  satisfies the hypothesis of the regula-falsi method on the interval  $[0, 1]$ . Let us start the iteration with the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0] = [0, 1]$ .

**Iteration 1:** Using the formula (4.1.6), we get

$$x_1 = \frac{1}{e - 1}.$$

Since  $f(x_1) \approx -0.21043$ , the subinterval chosen by regula-falsi method is the interval  $[a_1, b_1] = [x_1, 1]$ .

**Iteration 2:** We have  $x_2 \approx 0.67669$ . Since  $f(x_2) \approx -0.032645$ , the subinterval chosen by regula falsi method is the interval  $[a_2, b_2] = [x_2, 1]$ .

By continuing these computations, we see that the subinterval at every iteration chosen by regula-falsi method is the right half of the interval defined in the previous iteration. In other words, for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , we have  $[a_n, b_n] = [x_n, 1]$ . This is clearly seen geometrically as the function  $f$  is convex. A similar situation occurs when the given function  $f$  is concave (at least in the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0]$ ). We checked this to be true for  $n = 1, 2$  and a proof for a general  $n$  is left as an exercise.

Note in this example that  $\beta = 1$  and  $\alpha \leq r \neq 1$ , where  $r$  is the root of the given equation  $f(x) = 0$  to which the regula-falsi method is expected to converge.  $\square$

The last example ruled out any hopes of proving that  $\alpha = \beta$ . However, it is true that the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges to a root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ , and as can be expected, the proof is by contradiction argument. Let us now state the theorem on regula falsi method and prove it.

**Theorem 4.9 (Convergence of Regula-falsi method).**

**Hypothesis:** Let  $f : [a_0, b_0] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function such that the numbers  $f(a_0)$  and  $f(b_0)$  have opposite signs.

**Conclusion:** If  $\{x_n\}$  is the iterative sequence defined by regula-falsi method. Then the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges to an  $r \in (a_0, b_0)$  such that  $f(r) = 0$ .

**Proof:** Let us start by analyzing conditions under which “the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  does not converge to a root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ ”. This exactly happens when one of the following two situations occur.

- (1) The sequence  $\{x_n\}$  is not a convergent sequence.
- (2) The sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges but its limit is not a root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

We are going to show that none of the above situations can occur, which will then prove the required convergence result.

**Step 1:** Since the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  is a sequence from the interval  $[a_0, b_0]$ , it is bounded. By Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem, there exists a subsequence  $\{x_{n_k}\}$  of  $\{x_n\}$  and a number  $p \in [a, b]$  such that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x_{n_k} = p.$$

We will show that  $f(p) = 0$ .

**Step 2:** Suppose that  $f(p) \neq 0$ . Without loss of generality, assume that  $f(p) < 0$ . Since  $f$  is a continuous function, there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that

$$f(x) < 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in [p - \delta, p + \delta].$$

Since the subsequence  $\{x_{n_k}\}$  converges to  $p$ , there exists a  $K$  such that for every  $k \geq K$ , we have

$$p - \delta \leq x_{n_k} \leq p + \delta.$$

Note that for each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $x_{n_k} \in \{a_{n_k}, b_{n_k}\}$ . Consider the sets  $S_a$  and  $S_b$  defined by

$$\begin{aligned} S_a &= \{k \in \mathbb{N} : k \geq K, x_{n_k} = a_{n_k}\}, \\ S_b &= \{k \in \mathbb{N} : k \geq K, x_{n_k} = b_{n_k}\}. \end{aligned}$$

If both the sets  $S_a$  and  $S_b$  are non-empty, then we get a contradiction (to what?) immediately (why?). Thus, we may assume that one of the two sets  $S_a$  and  $S_b$  is empty. Without loss of generality assume that  $S_a = \emptyset$  and  $S_b \neq \emptyset$ . Consequently,

$$S_b = \{k \in \mathbb{N} : k \geq K\}.$$

**Claim:**

(1) The subsequence  $\{b_{n_k}\}_{k \geq K}$  lies to the right of the point  $p$ . That is,

$$p < b_{n_k} \text{ for all } k \geq K.$$

(2) The tail of the sequence  $\{b_n\}_{n \geq n_K}$  lies in the interval  $[p, p + \delta]$ .

$$p + \delta \geq b_{n_K} > b_{n_K+1} > b_{n_K+2} > \cdots > p \quad (4.1.7)$$

As a consequence,  $a_n = a_{n_K}$  for all  $n \geq n_K$ .

(3) We have

$$x_n = b_n \text{ for all } n \geq n_K$$

**Proof of Claim: (1).** If there exists a  $K' > K$  such that  $b_{n_{K'}} < p$ , then  $p$  cannot be limit of  $x_{n_k}$  as these points have to be one of the end points of subintervals selected by regula falsi method. Thus (1) is proved.

**Proof of Claim: (2).** Since  $\{b_n\}$  is a non-increasing sequence, and the subsequence  $\{b_{n_k}\}_{k \geq K}$  lies to the right of the point  $p$ , it follows that the sequence  $\{b_n\}$  lies to the right of  $p$  and consequently, we get (4.1.7). Since  $S_a = \emptyset$ , we have  $x_{n_k} = b_{n_k}$  for every  $k \geq K$ . Furthermore,  $x_n = b_n$  for every  $n \geq n_K$ . Thus we also have  $a_n = a_{n_K}$  for all  $n \geq n_K$ .

Incorporating all the information from the last claim into the formula for regula falsi iterative sequence (4.1.6), we get the following formula for  $x_{n+1}$  for every  $n \geq n_K$

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{a_{n_K}f(x_n) - x_nf(a_{n_K})}{f(x_n) - f(a_{n_K})}. \quad (4.1.8)$$

Passing to the limit in the last equation as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  yields

$$p = \frac{a_{n_K}f(p) - pf(a_{n_K})}{f(p) - f(a_{n_K})}.$$

Simplifying the last equation, we get

$$pf(p) = a_{n_K}f(p)$$

Since  $p \neq a_{n_K}$ , we must have  $f(p) = 0$  which is a contradiction to our assumption that  $f(p) \neq 0$ . Thus we conclude that  $f(p) = 0$ .

Thanks to (3) of the previous claim, we actually proved that the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges to  $p$ , and  $f(p) = 0$ . This finishes the proof of the theorem.  $\square$

**Example 4.10.** Let us find an approximate solution to the nonlinear equation

$$\sin x + x^2 - 1 = 0$$

using regula-falsi method. Exact solution is approximately 0.637.

We choose the initial interval as  $[a_0, b_0] = [0, 1]$  as done in Example 4.5.

**Iteration 1:** We have  $a_0 = 0$ ,  $b_0 = 1$ . Thus  $x_1 = 0.54304$ . Since  $f(x_1) = -0.18837 < 0$ ,  $f(0) < 0$ , and  $f(1) > 0$ , we take  $[a_1, b_1] = [x_1, b_0] = [0.54304, 1]$ .

**Iteration 2:** Using the regula-falsi formula (4.1.6), we get  $x_2 = 0.62662$ . Since  $f(x_2) = -0.020937 < 0$ ,  $f(0.54304) < 0$ , and  $f(1) > 0$ , we take  $[a_2, b_2] = [x_2, 1] = [0.62662, 1]$ .

**Iteration 3:** Using the regula-falsi formula (4.1.6), we get  $x_3 = 0.63568$ . Since  $f(x_3) = -0.0021861 < 0$ ,  $f(0.62662) < 0$ , and  $f(1) > 0$ , we take  $[a_3, b_3] = [x_3, 1] = [0.63568, 1]$ .

**Iteration 4:** Using the regula-falsi formula (4.1.6), we get  $x_4 = 0.63662$ . and so on.

In this example also, we observe that the lengths of the intervals  $[a_n, b_n]$  do not seem to be tending to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . However, we see that the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  is approaching the root of the given equation.  $\square$

## 4.2 Stopping Criteria

The outcome of any iterative method for a given nonlinear equation is a sequence of real numbers that is expected to converge to a root of the equation. When we implement such a method on a computer, we cannot go on computing the iterations indefinitely and need to stop the computation at some point. It is desirable to stop computing the iterations when the  $x_n$ 's are reasonably close to an exact root  $r$  for a sufficiently large  $n$ . In other words, we want to stop the computation at the  $n^{\text{th}}$  iteration when the computed value is such that

$$|x_n - r| < \epsilon$$

for some pre-assigned positive number  $\epsilon$ .

In general, we don't know the root  $r$  of the given nonlinear equation to which the iterative sequence is converging. Therefore, we have no idea of when to stop the iteration as we have seen in the case of regula-falsi method. In fact, this situation will be there for any open domain methods discussed in the next section. An alternate way is to look for some criteria that does not use the knowledge of the root  $r$ , but gives a rough idea of how close we are to this root. Such a criteria is called the **stopping criteria**. We now list some of the commonly used stopping criteria for iterative methods for nonlinear equations.

**Stopping Criterion 1:** Fix a  $K \in \mathbb{N}$ , and ask the iteration to stop after finding  $x_K$ . This criterion is borne out of fatigue, as it clearly has no mathematical reason why the  $K$  fixed at the beginning of the iteration is more important than any other natural number! If we stop the computation using this criterion, we will declare  $x_K$  to be the approximate solution to the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

**Stopping Criterion 2:** Fix a real number  $\epsilon > 0$  and a natural number  $N$ . Ask the iteration to stop after finding  $x_k$  such that

$$|x_k - x_{k-N}| < \epsilon.$$

One may interpret this stopping criterion by saying that there is ‘not much’ improvement in the value of  $x_k$  compared to a previous value  $x_{k-N}$ . If we stop the computation using this criterion, we will declare  $x_k$  to be the approximate solution to the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

It is more convenient to take  $N = 1$  in which case, we get the stopping criteria

$$|x_k - x_{k-1}| < \epsilon.$$

**Stopping Criterion 3:** Fix a real number  $\epsilon > 0$  and a natural number  $N$ . Ask the iteration to stop after finding  $x_k$  such that

$$\left| \frac{x_k - x_{k-N}}{x_k} \right| < \epsilon.$$

If we stop the computation using this criterion, we will declare  $x_k$  to be the approximate solution to the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

As in the above case, it is convenient to take  $N = 1$ .

**Stopping Criterion 4:** Fix a real number  $\epsilon > 0$  and ask the iteration to stop after finding  $x_k$  such that

$$|f(x_k)| < \epsilon.$$

If we stop the computation using this criterion, we will declare  $x_k$  to be the approximate solution to the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ . Sometimes the number  $|f(x_k)|$  is called the **residual error** corresponding to the approximate solution  $x_k$  of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .  $\square$

In practice, one may use any of the stopping criteria listed above, either single or multiple criteria.

**Remark 4.11.** We can also use any of the above stopping criteria in bisection method.

### 4.3 Open Domain Methods

In the closed domain methods described in the previous section, we have seen that the iterative sequences always converge to a root of the nonlinear equation. However,

initially to start the iteration, we need to give an interval where at least one root of the equation is known to exist. In many practical situations it may be very difficult to obtain this interval manually. Also, it will be very expensive to find this interval using a computer program as we have to adopt a trial and error algorithm for this. Therefore, it is highly desirable to device an iterative method that does not need this information and gives freedom to choose any arbitrary starting point as done in the iterative method for linear systems in Section 3.4. This is the objective of an open domain method.

The open domain methods do not pre-suppose that a root is enclosed in an interval of type  $[a, b]$ . These methods always start with a set of initial guesses  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_m$  distributed anywhere on the real line (but sufficiently close to a root of the equation) and tell us how to compute the values  $x_{m+1}, x_{m+2}, \dots$  in such a way that the resulting iterative sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges to a root of the equation.

In this section we study three open domain iterative methods for approximating a root of a given nonlinear equation.

#### 4.3.1 Secant Method

The straightforward modification of the regula-falsi method is the well-known **secant method**. The only difference in the secant method (when compared to the regula-falsi method) is that here we do not demand the initial guesses  $a_0$  and  $b_0$  to be on the either side of a root. Let us now present the algorithm of the secant method.

**Hypothesis:** Given any initial values  $x_0$  and  $x_1$  (not necessarily on the either side of a root) such that  $f(x_0) \neq f(x_1)$ .

**Algorithm:**

**Step 1:** For  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , the iterative sequence for secant method is given by

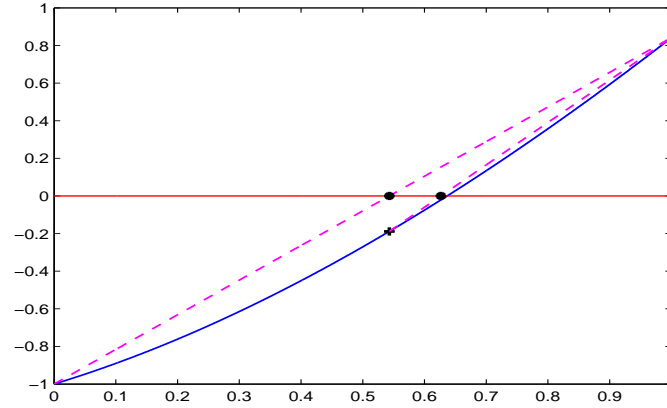
$$x_{n+1} = \frac{f(x_n)x_{n-1} - f(x_{n-1})x_n}{f(x_n) - f(x_{n-1})}. \quad (4.3.9)$$

This expression can also be written as

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - f(x_n) \frac{x_n - x_{n-1}}{f(x_n) - f(x_{n-1})} \quad (4.3.10)$$

**Step 2:** Choose any one of the stopping criteria (or a combination of them) discussed in Section 4.2. If this criterion is satisfied, stop the iteration. Otherwise, repeat the step 1 until the criterion is satisfied.  $\square$

Recall that  $x_{n+1}$  for each  $n = 1, 2, \dots$  given by (4.3.9) is the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of the secant line joining the points  $(x_{n-1}, f(x_{n-1}))$  and  $(x_n, f(x_n))$  with the  $x$ -axis and hence the name **secant method**.



**Fig. 4.1.** Iterative points of secant method.

**Remark 4.12.** It is evident that the secant method fails to determine  $x_{n+1}$  if we have  $f(x_{n-1}) = f(x_n)$ . Observe that such a situation never occurs in regula-falsi method.  $\square$

**Example 4.13.** Consider the equation

$$\sin x + x^2 - 1 = 0.$$

Let  $x_0 = 0$ ,  $x_1 = 1$ . Then the iterations from the secant method are given by

$n$	$x_n$	$\epsilon$
2	0.543044	0.093689
3	0.626623	0.010110
4	0.637072	0.000339
5	0.636732	0.000001

Figure 4.1 shows the iterative points  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  in black bullet. Recall that the exact value of the root (to which the iteration seems to converge) unto 6 significant digits is  $r \approx 0.636733$ . Obviously, the secant method is much faster than bisection method in this example.  $\square$

We now state the convergence theorem on secant method.

**Theorem 4.14 (Convergence of Secant Method).**

**Hypothesis:**

- (1) Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^2(\mathbb{R})$  function.
- (2) Let  $r$  be a simple root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ , that is  $f'(r) \neq 0$ .

**Conclusion:** Then there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that for every  $x_0, x_1 \in [r - \delta, r + \delta]$ ,

- (1) the secant method iterative sequence  $\{x_n\}$  is well-defined.
- (2) the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  belongs to the interval  $[r - \delta, r + \delta]$ .
- (3)  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = r$ .
- (4) Further, we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|x_{n+1} - r|}{|x_n - r|^\alpha} = \left| \frac{f''(r)}{2f'(r)} \right|^{\alpha/(\alpha+1)}, \quad (4.3.11)$$

where  $\alpha = (\sqrt{5} + 1)/2 \approx 1.62$ .

The proof for this is omitted for this course.

**Remark 4.15.** The expression (4.3.11) implies that the order of convergence (see Definition 1.42) of the iterative sequence of secant method is 1.62.  $\square$

### 4.3.2 Newton-Raphson Method

In Theorem 4.14, we have seen that the secant method has more than linear order of convergence. This method can further be modified to achieve quadratic convergence. To do this, we first observe that when the iterative sequence of the secant method converges, then as  $n$  increases, we see that  $x_{n-1}$  approaches  $x_n$ . Thus, for a sufficiently large value of  $n$ , we have

$$f'(x_n) \approx \frac{f(x_n) - f(x_{n-1})}{x_n - x_{n-1}},$$

provided  $f$  is a  $C^1$  function. Thus, if  $f(x)$  is differentiable, then on replacing in (4.3.10), the slope of the secant by the slope of the tangent at  $x_n$ , we get the iteration formula

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)} \quad (4.3.12)$$

and is called the **Newton-Raphson's Method**.

**Remark 4.16 (Geometrical Motivation).** If a function  $f$  is differentiable at a point  $x_0$ , then the tangent ( $y = g(x)$ ) to the graph of  $f$  at the point  $(x_0, f(x_0))$  is given by

$$g(x) = f'(x_0)(x - x_0) + f(x_0).$$

We may assume that for  $x \approx x_0$ ,  $f(x) \approx g(x)$ . This can also be interpreted as

“If a function  $f$  is differentiable at a point, then the graph of  $f$  looks like a straight line, for  $x \approx x_0$  on zooming”.



Now, if we choose the initial guess  $x_0$  very close to the root  $r$  of  $f(x) = 0$ . That is., if  $r \approx x_0$ , we have  $g(r) \approx f(r) = 0$ . This gives (approximately)

$$0 \approx f'(x_0)(r - x_0) + f(x_0).$$

Up on replacing  $r$  by  $x_1$  and using '=' symbol instead of ' $\approx$ ' symbol, we get the first iteration of the Newton-Raphson's iterative formula (4.3.12).  $\square$

Recall in secant method, we need two initial guesses  $x_0$  and  $x_1$  to start the iteration. In Newton-Raphson method, we need one initial guess  $x_0$  to start the iteration. The consecutive iteration  $x_1$  is the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of the  $x$ -axis and the tangent line at  $x_0$ , and similarly for the other iterations. This geometrical interpretation of the Newton-Raphson method is clearly observed in Figure 4.2.

We now derive the Newton-Raphson method under the assumption that  $f$  is a  $C^2$  function.

Let  $x_0$  be given. The Taylor's polynomial of degree  $n = 1$  with remainder is given by

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + f'(x_0)(x - x_0) + \frac{(x - x_0)^2}{2!} f''(\xi),$$

where  $\xi$  lies between  $x_0$  and  $x$ . When  $x_0$  is very close to  $x$ , the last term in the above equation is smaller when compared to the other two terms on the right hand side. By neglecting this term we have

$$f(x) \approx f(x_0) + f'(x_0)(x - x_0). \quad (4.3.13)$$

Notice that the graph of the function  $g(x) = f(x_0) + f'(x_0)(x - x_0)$  is precisely the tangent line to the graph of  $f$  at the point  $(x_0, f(x_0))$ . We now define  $x_1$  to be the  $x$ -coordinate of the point of intersection of this tangent line with the  $x$ -coordinate. That is, the point  $x_1$  is such that  $g(x_1) = 0$ , which gives

$$x_1 = x_0 - \frac{f(x_0)}{f'(x_0)}. \quad (4.3.14)$$

This gives the first member of the iterative sequence of the Newton-Raphson's method.

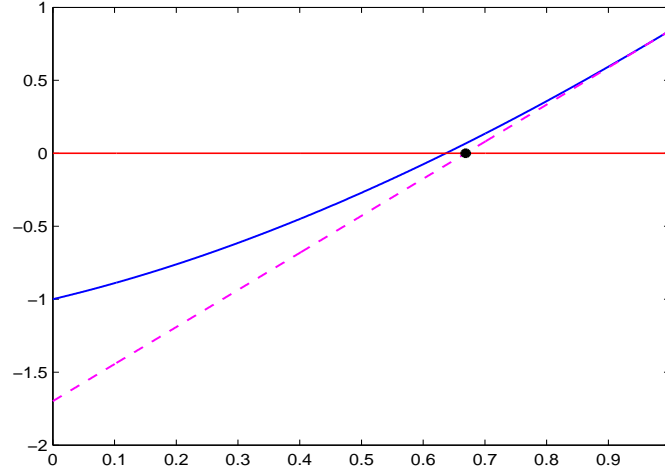
We now summarize the Newton-Raphson's method.

### Hypothesis:

- (1) Let the function  $f$  be  $C^1$  and  $r$  be the root of the equation  $f(x) = 0$  with  $f'(r) \neq 0$ .
- (2) The initial guess  $x_0$  is chosen sufficiently close to the root  $r$ .

### Algorithm:

**Step 1:** For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , the iterative sequence of the Newton-Raphson's method is given by (4.3.12)



**Fig. 4.2.** Iteration Procedure of Newton-Raphson's method for  $f(x) = \sin(x) + x^2 - 1$ .

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}.$$

**Step 2:** Choose any one of the stopping criteria (or a combination of them) discussed in Section 4.2. If this criterion is satisfied, stop the iteration. Otherwise, repeat the step 1 until the criterion is satisfied.  $\square$

**Remark 4.17.** It is evident that if the initial guess  $x_0$  is such that  $f'(x_n) = 0$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , then the Newton-Raphson method fails. Geometrically, this means that the tangent line to the graph of  $f$  at the point  $(x_n, f(x_n))$  is parallel to the  $x$ -axis. Therefore, this line never intersects  $x$ -axis and hence  $x_{n+1}$  never exists. See Remark 4.12 for the failure of secant method and compare it with the present case.  $\square$

**Example 4.18.** Consider the equation

$$\sin x + x^2 - 1 = 0.$$

Let  $x_0 = 1$ . Then the iterations from the Newton-Raphson method gives

$n$	$x_n$	$\epsilon$
1	0.668752	0.032019
2	0.637068	0.000335
3	0.636733	0.000000

Figure 4.2 shows the iterative points  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  in black bullet. Recall that the exact solution is  $x^* \approx 0.636733$ . Obviously, the Newton-Raphson method is much faster than both bisection and secant methods in this example.  $\square$

Let us now discuss the convergence of the Newton-Raphson method.

**Theorem 4.19 (Error Estimates and Convergence of Newton-Raphson method).****Hypothesis:**

- (1) Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^2(\mathbb{R})$  function.
- (2) Let  $r$  be a simple root of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ , that is  $f'(r) \neq 0$ .

**Conclusion:** Then there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that for every  $x_0 \in [r - \delta, r + \delta]$ ,

- (1) each term of the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence  $\{x_n\}$  is well-defined.
- (2) the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  belongs to the interval  $[r - \delta, r + \delta]$ .
- (3)  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = r$ .

**Proof:** The Newton-Raphson sequence is defined by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}.$$

The error  $e_{n+1} := r - x_{n+1}$  can be written as

$$e_{n+1} = \frac{(r - x_n)f'(x_n) + f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}$$

Using Taylor's theorem, we have

$$0 = f(r) = f(x_n) + (r - x_n)f'(x_n) + \frac{f''(\xi_n)}{2}(r - x_n)^2, \quad (4.3.15)$$

where  $\xi_n$  lies between  $r$  and  $x_n$ . Using the information from the last equation, we get the following expression for  $e_{n+1}$ :

$$e_{n+1} = -\frac{f''(\xi_n)}{2f'(x_n)}(r - x_n)^2 = -\frac{f''(\xi_n)}{2f'(x_n)}e_n^2. \quad (4.3.16)$$

Since  $f'(r) \neq 0$ , there exists a  $\delta_1 > 0$  such that  $f'(x) \neq 0$  for every  $x \in [r - \delta_1, r + \delta_1]$ . In particular, there exists  $M_{\delta_1} > 0$  such that

$$\min_{x \in [r - \delta_1, r + \delta_1]} |f'(x)| = M_{\delta_1}.$$

Also, since  $f''$  is a continuous function, there exists a  $L_{\delta_1} > 0$  such that

$$\max_{x \in [r - \delta_1, r + \delta_1]} |f''(x)| = L_{\delta_1}.$$

Thus we get

$$|e_{n+1}| \leq \frac{L_{\delta_1}}{2M_{\delta_1}} |e_n|^2. \quad (4.3.17)$$

Note that  $C_{\delta_1} := \frac{L_{\delta_1}}{2M_{\delta_1}}$  is a non-decreasing function of  $\delta_1$ , which implies that  $C_{\delta_1}$  remains bounded as we decrease the value of  $\delta_1$ . Thus, there exists a  $\delta < 1$  such that  $\delta < \delta_1$ , and  $\delta C_\delta < 1$ . We will now show that this  $\delta$  has the required property. The inequality (4.3.17), for this  $\delta$  reads

$$|e_{n+1}| \leq C_\delta |e_n|^2. \quad (4.3.18)$$

**Proof of (1) and (2):** Let  $x_0 \in [r - \delta, r + \delta]$ . In other words,  $|r - x_0| \leq \delta$ . Then  $x_1$  is well-defined as  $f'(x_0) \neq 0$ , since  $x_0$  belongs to the interval  $[r - \delta, r + \delta]$  on which  $f'$  is never equal to zero. We will prove that  $|r - x_1| \leq \delta$ .

$$|r - x_1| = |e_1| \leq C_\delta |e_0|^2 \leq C_\delta \delta |e_0| \leq |e_0| \leq \delta.$$

By induction, it follows that  $x_n$  is well-defined, and  $|r - x_n| \leq \delta$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

**Proof of (3):** From the inequalities,

$$|e_{n+1}| \leq C_\delta |e_n|^2 \leq \delta C_\delta |e_n| \leq (\delta C_\delta)^2 |e_{n-1}| \leq \dots \leq (\delta C_\delta)^{n+1} |e_0|,$$

the convergence of the sequence follows as  $\delta C_\delta < 1$ .  $\square$

Theorem on Newton-Raphson method says that if we start near-by a root of the nonlinear equation, then Newton-Raphson iterative sequence is well-defined and converges. For increasing convex functions, we need not be very careful in choosing the initial guess. For such functions, the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence always converges, whatever may be the initial guess. This is the content of the next theorem.

#### Theorem 4.20 (Convergence Result for Convex Functions).

**Hypothesis:** Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a twice continuously differentiable function such that

- (1)  $f$  is convex, i.e.,  $f''(x) > 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .
- (2)  $f$  is strictly increasing, i.e.,  $f'(x) > 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .
- (3) there exists an  $r \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $f(r) = 0$ .

**Conclusion:** Then

- (1)  $r$  is the unique solution of  $f(x) = 0$ .
- (2) For every choice of  $x_0$ , the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence converges to  $r$ .

**Proof:**

**Proof of (1):** Since  $f$  is strictly increasing, the function cannot take the same value more than once. Thus  $f(x) = 0$  has exactly one solution.

**Proof of (2):** From (4.3.16), it follows that  $e_{n+1} \leq 0$ . This implies that  $r \leq x_{n+1}$ . Since  $f$  is a strictly increasing function, we get  $f(r) \leq f(x_{n+1})$ . Thus  $f(x_{n+1}) \geq 0$

for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . From (4.3.12), we get  $x_{n+1} \leq x_n$ . That is, the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  is a non-increasing sequence, and is bounded below by  $r$ , and hence converges. Let us denote the limit by  $x^*$ .

On the other hand, the sequence  $\{e_n\}$  is a non-decreasing sequence, bounded above by 0. Let  $e^*$  denote the limit of the sequence  $\{e_n\}$ .

Passing to the limit as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  in the equation

$$e_{n+1} = e_n + \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)},$$

we get

$$e^* = e^* + \frac{f(x^*)}{f'(x^*)}.$$

From the last equality, we get  $f(x^*) = 0$ . □

**Remark 4.21.** It follows from (4.3.18) that the order of convergence of the Newton-Raphson method is 2 (see Definition 1.42(3)), that is the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence converges quadratically. □

The following example illustrates the quadratic convergence of the Newton-Raphson method.

**Example 4.22.** Start with  $x_0 = -2.4$  and use Newton-Raphson iteration to find the root  $r = -2.0$  of the polynomial

$$f(x) = x^3 - 3x + 2.$$

The iteration formula is

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{2x_n^3 - 2}{3x_n^2 - 3}.$$

It is easy to verify that  $|r - x_{n+1}|/|r - x_n|^2 \approx 2/3$ , which shows the quadratic convergence of Newton-Raphson's method as proved in the above theorem. □

### 4.3.3 Fixed-Point Iteration Method

In fixed point iteration method, search for a solution of nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  is replaced by search for a fixed point of a function  $g$ , and with the property that if  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  is a fixed point of  $g$  (i.e.,  $g(\alpha) = \alpha$ ), then  $f(\alpha) = 0$ .

In general, there may be more than one choice of  $g$  with this property as illustrated by the following example.

**Example 4.23.** Note that  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  is a solution of the equation  $x^2 - x - 2 = 0$  if and only if  $\alpha$  is a solution of each of the following equations.

- (1)  $x = x^2 - 2$
- (2)  $x = \sqrt{x + 2}$
- (3)  $x = 1 + \frac{2}{x}$ .

The **fixed-point iteration method** for finding a solution of  $g(x) = x$  consists of a sequence of iterates  $\{x_n\}$ , starting from an initial guess  $x_0$ , defined by

$$x_n = g(x_{n-1}) \quad (4.3.19)$$

As we saw in Example 4.23, for a given nonlinear equation, the iteration function is not unique. The crucial point in this method is to choose a good iteration function  $g(x)$ . A good iteration function should satisfy the following properties:

- (1) For the given starting point  $x_0$ , the successive approximations  $x_n$  given by (4.3.19) can be calculated.
- (2) The sequence  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  converges to some point  $\xi$ .
- (3) The limit  $\xi$  is a fixed point of  $g(x)$ , ie.,  $\xi = g(\xi)$ .

Not every iteration function has all these properties. The following example shows that for certain iteration functions, even the sequence of iterates need not be defined.

**Example 4.24.** Consider the equation

$$x^2 - x = 0.$$

This equation can be re-written as  $x = \pm\sqrt{x}$ . Let us take the iterative function

$$g(x) = -\sqrt{x}.$$

Since  $g(x)$  is defined only for  $x > 0$ , we have to choose  $x_0 > 0$ . For this value of  $x_0$ , we have  $g(x_0) < 0$  and therefore,  $x_1$  cannot be calculated.  $\square$

Therefore, the choice of  $g(x)$  has to be made carefully so that the sequence of iterates can be calculated.

How to choose such an iteration function  $g(x)$ ?

Note that  $x_1 = g(x_0)$ , and  $x_2 = g(x_1)$ . Thus  $x_1$  is defined whenever  $x_0$  belongs to the domain of  $g$ . Thus we must take the initial guess  $x_0$  from the domain of  $g$ . For defining  $x_2$ , we need that  $x_1$  is in the domain of  $g$  once again. In fact the sequence is given by

$$x_0, g(x_0), g \circ g(x_0), g \circ g \circ g(x_0), \dots$$

Thus to have a well-defined iterative sequence, we require that

Range of the function  $g$  is contained in the domain of  $g$ .

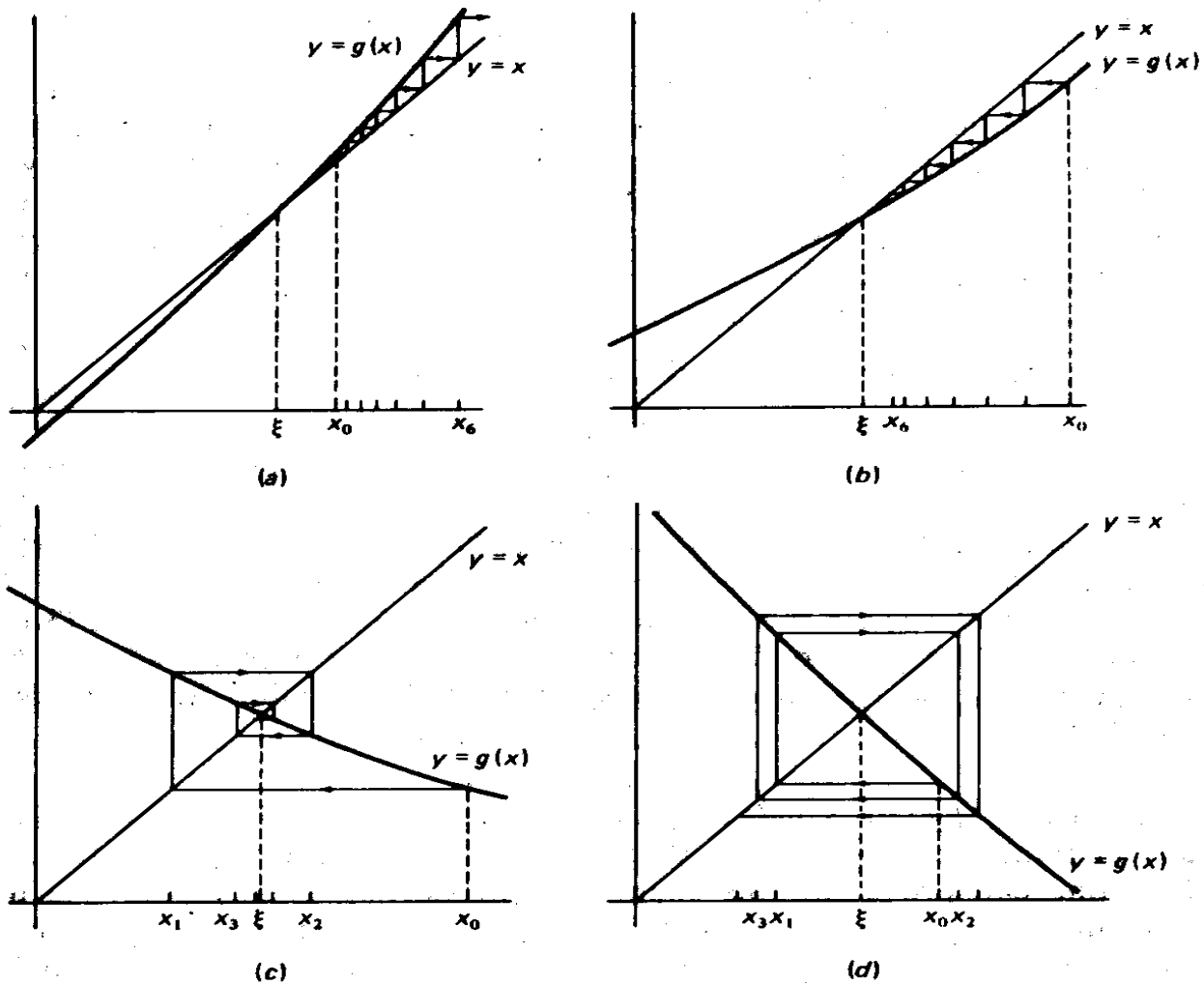


Fig. 4.3. Fixed-point Iteration Procedure.

A function with this property is called a **self map**. We make our first assumption on the iterative function as

**Assumption 1:**  $a \leq g(x) \leq b$  for all  $a \leq x \leq b$ .

It follows that if  $a \leq x_0 \leq b$ , then for all  $n$ ,  $x_n \in [a, b]$  and therefore  $x_{n+1} = g(x_n)$  is defined and belongs to  $[a, b]$ .

Let us now discuss about the point 3. This is a natural expectation since the expression  $x = g(x)$ , which is the solution of the required equation is precisely the definition of a fixed point. To achieve this, we need  $g(x)$  to be a continuous function. For if  $x_n \rightarrow x^*$  then

$$x^* = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} g(x_{n-1}) = g(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_{n-1}) = g(x^*)$$

Therefore, we need

**Assumption 2:** The iterative function  $g$  is continuous.

It is easy to prove that a continuous self map on a bounded interval always has a fixed point. However, the question is whether the sequence (4.3.19) generated by the iterative function  $g$  converges, which is the requirement stated in point 2. This point is well understood geometrically. The Figures 4.3(a) and 4.3(c) illustrate the convergence of the fixed-point iterations whereas the Figures 4.3(b) and 4.3(d) illustrate the diverging iterations. In this geometrical observation, we see that when  $g'(x) < 1$ , we have convergence and otherwise, we have divergence. Therefore, we make the assumption

**Assumption 3:** The iteration function  $g(x)$  is differentiable on  $I = [a, b]$ . Further, there exists a constant  $0 < K < 1$  such that

$$|g'(x)| \leq K, \quad x \in I. \quad (4.3.20)$$

Such a function is called the **contraction map**.

Let us now present the algorithm of the fixed point iteration method.

**Hypothesis:** Assumptions 1, 2, and 3 stated above.

**Algorithm:** Choose an appropriate iteration function  $g : [a, b] \rightarrow [a, b]$ , where the interval  $[a, b]$  is chosen in such a way that  $g$  is a self map.

**Step 1:** Choose an initial guess  $x_0 \in [a, b]$ .

**Step 2:** Define the iteration methods as

$$x_{n+1} = g(x_n), \quad n = 0, 1, \dots$$

**Step 3:** For a pre-assigned positive quantity  $\epsilon$ , check for one of the (fixed) stopping criteria discussed in Section 4.2. If the criterion is satisfied, stop the iteration. Otherwise, repeat the step 1 until the criterion is satisfied.  $\square$

**Theorem 4.25 (Convergence Result for Fixed-Point Iteration Method).**

**Hypothesis:** Let the iterative function  $g$  be chosen so that

- (1)  $g$  is defined on the interval  $[a, b]$  and  $a \leq g(x) \leq b$ . That is,  $g$  is a self map on  $[a, b]$
- (2)  $g$  is continuously differentiable on  $[a, b]$
- (3)  $g$  is a contraction map. That is,

$$\lambda = \max_{a \leq x \leq b} |g'(x)| < 1. \quad (4.3.21)$$

**Conclusion:** Then

- (1)  $x = g(x)$  has a unique solution  $r$  in  $[a, b]$ .



(2) For any choice of  $x_0 \in [a, b]$ , with  $x_{n+1} = g(x_n)$ ,  $n = 0, 1, \dots$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = r.$$

(3) We further have

$$|x_n - r| \leq \lambda^n |x_0 - r| \leq \frac{\lambda^n}{1 - \lambda} |x_1 - x_0| \quad (4.3.22)$$

and

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{r - x_{n+1}}{r - x_n} = g'(r). \quad (4.3.23)$$

**Proof.** Proof for (1) is easy.

From mean-value theorem and (4.3.20), we have

$$|r - x_{n+1}| = |g(r) - g(x_n)| \leq \lambda |r - x_n|. \quad (4.3.24)$$

By induction, we have

$$|r - x_{n+1}| \leq \lambda^n |x_0 - r|, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots$$

Since, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\lambda^n \rightarrow 0$ , we have  $x_n \rightarrow r$ . Further, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |x_0 - r| &= |x_0 - x_1 + x_1 - r| \\ &\leq |x_0 - x_1| + |x_1 - r| \\ &\leq \lambda |x_0 - r| + |x_0 - x_1|. \end{aligned}$$

Then solving for  $|x_0 - r|$ , we get (4.3.22).

Now we will prove the rate of convergence (4.3.23). From Mean-value theorem

$$r - x_{n+1} = g(r) - g(x_n) = g'(\xi_n)(r - x_n), \quad n = 0, 1, \dots$$

with  $\xi_n$  an unknown point between  $r$  and  $x_n$ . Since  $x_n \rightarrow r$ , we must have  $\xi_n \rightarrow r$  and therefore,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{r - x_{n+1}}{r - x_n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} g'(\xi_n) = g'(r).$$

This completes the proof.  $\square$

**Remark 4.26.** From the inequality (4.3.24), we see that the fixed point iteration method has linear convergence. In other words, the order of convergence of this method is 1.  $\square$

**Example 4.27.** The nonlinear equation

$$x^3 + 4x^2 - 10 = 0$$

has a unique solution in  $[1, 2]$ . Note that solution to each of the following fixed-point problems is a solution to the given nonlinear equation.

$$(1) x = g_1(x) = x - x^3 - 4x^2 + 10$$

$$(2) x = g_2(x) = \sqrt{\frac{10}{x} - 4x}$$

$$(3) x = g_3(x) = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{10 - x^3}$$

$$(4) x = g_4(x) = \sqrt{\frac{10}{4 + x}}$$

$$(5) x = g_5(x) = x - \frac{x^3 + 4x^2 - 10}{3x^2 + 8x}.$$

We are going to show that among the five equivalent fixed-point formulations of the given nonlinear equation, only some of them turn out to be good iterative functions. Let us implement fixed-point iteration method with each of the five iterating functions, and compare the results which are tabulated below.

$n$	$x = g_1(x)$	$x = g_2(x)$	$x = g_3(x)$	$x = g_4(x)$	$x = g_5(x)$
0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
1	-0.875	0.8165	1.286953768	1.348399725	1.373333333
2	6.732	2.9969	1.402540804	1.367376372	1.365262015
3	-469.7	$\sqrt{-8.65}$	1.345458374	1.364957015	1.365230014
4	$1.03 \times 10^8$		1.375170253	1.365264748	1.365230013
5			1.360094193	1.3652	
6			1.367846968	1.365230576	
7			1.363887004	1.365229942	
8			1.365916734	1.365230022	
9			1.364878217	1.365230012	
10			1.365410062	1.365230014	
15			1.365223680	1.365230013	
20			1.365230236		
25			1.365230006		
30			1.365230013		

From the above table, we conclude that the iterative functions  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are very bad, while that given by  $g_5$  is the best. However iterative functions  $g_3$  and  $g_4$  are also good but requires more number of iterations compared to  $g_5$ .

(1) Note that the iterative function  $g_1$  is given by

$$g_1(x) = x - x^3 - 4x^2 + 10.$$

Note that  $g_1(1) = 6$  and  $g_1(2) = -12$ . Thus range of  $g_1$  is not contained in  $[1, 2]$ . That is  $g_1$  is not a self map on the interval  $[1, 2]$ . In fact,

$$g'_1(x) = 1 - 3x^2 - 8x.$$

Let us compute the minimum and maximum values of  $g'_1$  on the interval  $[1, 2]$ . Note that  $g''_1(x) = -6x - 8$ . Thus derivative of  $g'_1$  vanishes at only one point, namely  $x = -\frac{4}{3}$  which is not in the interval  $[1, 2]$ . Thus  $g'_1$  has no maxima/minima in the interval  $(1, 2)$ . Hence maximum and minimum of  $g'_1$  are at the points 1, 2. Note that  $g'_1(1) = -10$ ,  $g'_1(2) = -27$ . Thus  $|g'(x)| \geq 10$  on the interval  $[1, 2]$ . Thus the map  $g_1$  is not only not contractive on  $[1, 2]$  but is an expansive map on  $[1, 2]$ . This is the reason why the successive iterates using  $g_1$  have increasing moduli.

(2) Note that the iterative function  $g_2$  is given by

$$g_2(x) = \sqrt{\frac{10}{x} - 4x}.$$

It is easy to check that  $g_2$  is not a self map of  $[1, 2]$  to itself. In our computation above, we see that the entire iterative sequence is not defined as one of the iterates becomes negative, when the initial guess is taken as 1.5. The exact solution is approximately equal to  $x^* = 1.365$ . There is no interval containing  $x^*$  on which  $|g'_2(x)| < 1$ . In fact,  $g'_2(x^*) \approx 3.4$  and as a consequence  $|g'_2(x)| > 3$  on an interval containing  $x^*$ . Thus we don't expect a convergent iterative sequence even if the sequence is well-defined!

(3) Note that the iterative function  $g_3$  is given by

$$g_3(x) = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{10 - x^3}.$$

Note that  $g_3$  is a decreasing function on  $[1, 2]$  as

$$g'_3(x) = -\frac{3x^2}{4\sqrt{10 - x^3}} < 0$$

on  $[1, 2]$ . Thus maximum of  $g_3$  is attained at  $x = 1$ , which is 1.5; and the minimum is attained at  $x = 2$  which is approximately equal to 0.707. Thus  $g_3$  is a self map of  $[1, 2]$ . But  $|g'_3(2)| \approx 2.12$ . Thus the condition

$$|g'_3(x)| \leq \lambda < 1$$

is violated on the interval  $[1, 2]$ . However by restricting to a smaller interval  $[1, 1.5]$ , we get that  $g_3$  is a self map of  $[1, 1.5]$  as  $g_3$  is still decreasing function on  $[1, 1.5]$  and  $g_3(1) = 1.5$ ,  $g_3(1.5) \approx 1.28$ , and also

$$|g'_3(x)| \leq |g'_3(1.5)| \approx 0.66.$$

Thus  $g_3$  satisfies the hypothesis of theorem on fixed-point iteration, and as expected the sequence of iterates converge.

(4) Note that the iterative function  $g_4$  is given by

$$g_4(x) = \sqrt{\frac{10}{4+x}}.$$

We have

$$|g_4'(x)| = \left| \frac{-5}{\sqrt{10}(4+x)^{3/2}} \right| \leq \frac{5}{\sqrt{10}(5)^{3/2}} < 0.15 \text{ for all } x \in [1, 2].$$

The bound obtained on the derivative of  $g_4$  is considerably smaller when compared to that of  $g_3$ , which explains why the convergence is faster for the iterates obtained using  $g_4$ , when compared with those obtained by using  $g_3$ .

(5) Note that the iterative function  $g_5$  is given by

$$g_5(x) = x - \frac{x^3 + 4x^2 - 10}{3x^2 + 8x}.$$

This converges much more faster compared to  $g_3$  and  $g_4$ . Note that the fixed-point iterative sequence generated by  $g_5$  is nothing but the iterative sequence of Newton-Raphson method for the solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

**Example 4.28.** Consider the equation

$$\sin x + x^2 - 1 = 0.$$

Take the initial interval as  $[0, 1]$ . There are three possible choices for the iteration function, namely,

$$(1) g_1(x) = \sin^{-1}(1 - x^2),$$

$$(2) g_2(x) = -\sqrt{1 - \sin x},$$

$$(3) g_3(x) = \sqrt{1 - \sin x}.$$

Here we have

$$g_1'(x) = \frac{-2}{\sqrt{2-x^2}}.$$

We can see that  $|g_1'(x)| > 1$ . Taking  $x_0 = 0.8$  and denoting the absolute error as  $\epsilon$ , we have

$n$	$g_1(x)$	$\epsilon$
0	0.368268	0.268465
1	1.043914	0.407181
2	-0.089877	0.726610
3	1.443606	0.806873

The sequence of iterations is diverging as expected.

If we take  $g_2(x)$ , clearly the assumption 1 is violated and therefore is not suitable for the iteration process.

Let us take  $g_3(x)$ . Here, we have

$$g'_3(x) = \frac{-\cos x}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}}.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} |g'_3(x)| &= \frac{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}}{2\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{1 + \sin x}}{2} \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} < 1. \end{aligned}$$

Taking  $x_0 = 0.8$  and denoting the absolute error as  $\epsilon$ , we have

$n$	$g_3(x)$	$\epsilon$
0	0.531643	0.105090
1	0.702175	0.065442
2	0.595080	0.041653
3	0.662891	0.026158

The sequence is converging. □

## 4.4 Comparison and Pitfalls of Iterative Methods

### Closed domain methods: Bisection and Regula falsi methods

- (1) In both these methods, where we are trying to find a solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$ , we are required to find an interval  $[a, b]$  such that  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$  have opposite signs. This calls for a complete study of the function  $f$ . In case the function has no solutions on the real line, this search for an interval will be futile. There is no way to realize this immediately, thus necessitating a full fledged understanding of the function  $f$ .
- (2) Once it is known that we can start these methods, then surely the iterative sequences converge to a solution of the nonlinear equation.
- (3) In bisection method, we can keep track of the error by means of an upper bound. But such a thing is not available for regula falsi method. In general convergence

of bisection method iterates is slower compared to that of regula falsi method iterates.

- (4) If the initial interval  $[a, b]$  is such that the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has a unique solution in it, then both the methods converge to the solution. If there are more than one solutions in  $[a, b]$ , then usually both methods find different solutions. The only way of finding the desired root is to find an interval in which there is exactly one solution to the nonlinear equation.

### Open domain methods: Secant, Newton-Raphson, and Fixed point methods

- (1) The main advantage of the open domain methods when compared to closed domain methods is that we don't need to locate a root in an interval. Rather, we can start the iteration with an arbitrarily chosen initial guess(es).
- (2) The disadvantage of the open domain methods is that the iterative sequence may not be well-defined for all initial guesses. Even if the sequence is well-defined, it may not converge. Even if it converges, it may not converge to a specific root of interest.
- (3) In situations where both open and closed domain methods converge, open domain methods are generally faster compared to closed domain methods. Especially, Newton-Raphson's method is faster than other methods as the order of convergence of this method is 2. In fact, this is the fastest method known today.
- (4) In these methods, it may happen that we are trying to find a particular solution of the nonlinear equation, but the iterative sequence may converge to a different solution. Thus we have to be careful in choosing the initial guess. If the initial guess is far away from the expected root, then there is a danger that the iteration converges to another root of the equation.

In the case of Newton-Raphson's method, this usually happens when the slope  $f'(x_0)$  is small and the tangent line to the curve  $y = f(x)$  is nearly parallel to the  $x$ -axis. Similarly, in the case of secant method, this usually happens when the slope of the secant joining  $(x_0, f(x_0))$  and  $(x_1, f(x_1))$  is nearly parallel to the  $x$ -axis.

For example, if

$$f(x) = \cos x$$

and we seek the root  $x^* = \pi/2$  and start with  $x_0 = 3$ , calculation reveals that

$$x_1 = -4.01525, \quad x_2 = -4.85266, \dots,$$

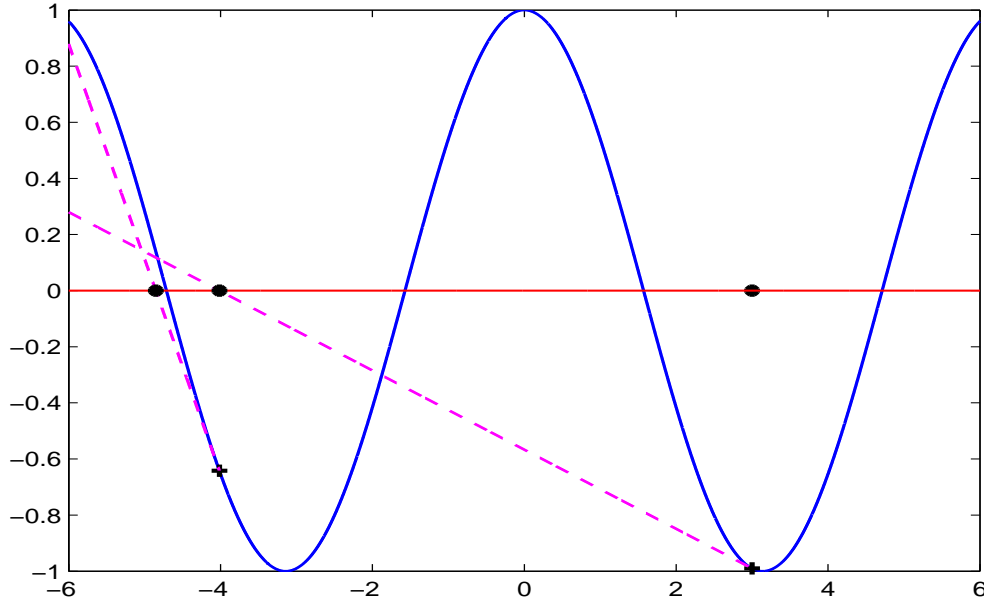


Fig. 4.4. Iteration Procedure of Newton-Raphson's method for  $f(x) = \cos(x)$ .

and the iteration converges to  $x = -4.71238898 \approx -3\pi/2$ . The iterative sequence for  $n = 1, 2$  is depicted in Figure 4.4.

- (5) Suppose that  $f(x)$  is positive and monotone decreasing on an unbounded interval  $[a, \infty)$  and  $x_0 > a$ . Then the sequence might diverge. For example, if  $f(x) = xe^{-x}$  and  $x_0 = 2$ , then

$$x_1 = 4.0, \quad x_2 = 5.333333..., \quad \dots, \quad p_{15} = 19.72354..., \dots$$

and the sequence diverges to  $+\infty$ . This particular function has another surprising problem. The value of  $f(x)$  goes to zero rapidly as  $x$  gets large, for example  $f(x_{15}) = 0.0000000536$ , and it is possible that  $p_{15}$  could be mistaken for a root as per the residual error. Thus, using residual error for iterative methods nonlinear equations is often not preferred.

- (6) The method can stuck in a cycle. For instance, let us compute the iterative sequence generated by the Newton-Raphson's method for the function  $f(x) = x^3 - x - 3$  with the initial guess  $x_0 = 0$ . The iterative sequence is

$$x_1 = -3.00, \quad x_2 = -1.961538, \quad x_3 = -1.147176, \quad x_4 = -0.006579,$$

$$x_5 = -3.000389, \quad x_6 = -1.961818, \quad x_7 = -1.147430, \dots$$

and we are stuck in a cycle where  $x_{n+4} \approx x_k$  for  $k = 0, 1, \dots$ . But if we start with a value  $x_0$  sufficiently close with the root  $r \approx 1.6717$ , then the convergence is obtained. The proof of this is left as an exercise.

- (7) If  $f(x)$  has no real root, then there is no indication by these methods and the iterative sequence may simply oscillate. For example compute the Newton-Raphson iteration for

$$f(x) = x^2 - 4x + 5.$$

## 4.5 Exercises

### Bisection Method and Regula-falsi Method

In the following problems on bisection method, the notation  $x_n$  is used to denote the mid-point of the interval  $[a_{n-1}, b_{n-1}]$ , and is termed as the bisection method's  $n^{\text{th}}$  iterate (or simply, the  $n^{\text{th}}$  iterate, as the context of bisection method is clear)

- (1) Let bisection method be used to solve the nonlinear equation

$$2x^6 - 5x^4 + 2 = 0$$

starting with the initial interval  $[0, 1]$ . In order to approximate a solution of the nonlinear equation with an absolute error less than or equal to  $10^{-3}$ , what is the minimum number of iterations required? Also find the corresponding approximate solution.

- (2) Let bisection method be used to solve the nonlinear equation ( $x$  is in radians)

$$x \sin x - 1 = 0$$

starting with the initial interval  $[0, 2]$ . In order to approximate a solution of the nonlinear equation with an absolute error less than or equal to  $10^{-3}$ , what is the minimum number of iterations required? Also find the corresponding approximate solution.

- (3) Let bisection method be used to solve a nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  starting with the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  where  $a_0 > 0$ . Let  $x_n$  be as in the bisection method, and  $r$  be the solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  to which bisection method converges. Let  $\epsilon > 0$ . Show that the relative error of  $x_n$  w.r.t.  $r$  is at most  $\epsilon$  whenever  $n$  satisfies

$$n \geq \frac{\log(b_0 - a_0) - \log \epsilon - \log a_0}{\log 2}.$$

What happens if  $a_0 < 0 < b_0$ ?



- (4) Consider the nonlinear equation

$$10^x + x - 4 = 0$$

- (i) Find an interval  $[a_0, b_0]$  such that the function  $f(x) = 10^x + x - 4$  satisfies the hypothesis of bisection method.
  - (ii) Let  $r$  be the solution of the nonlinear equation to which bisection method iterative sequence converges. Find an  $n$  such that  $x_n$  (notation as in the bisection method) approximates  $r$  to two significant digits. Also find  $x_n$ .
- (5) If bisection method is used with the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0] = [2, 3]$ , how many iterations are required to assure that an approximate solution of the nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  is obtained with an absolute error that is at most  $10^{-5}$ ?
- (6) Assume that in solving a nonlinear equation  $f(x) = 0$  with the initial interval  $[a_0, b_0]$ , the iterative sequence  $\{x_n\}$  given by bisection method is never an exact solution of  $f(x) = 0$ . Let us define a sequence of numbers  $\{d_n\}$  by

$$d_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } [a_n, b_n] \text{ is the left half of the interval } [a_{n-1}, b_{n-1}], \\ 1 & \text{if } [a_n, b_n] \text{ is the right half of the interval } [a_{n-1}, b_{n-1}]. \end{cases}$$

Using the sequence  $\{d_n\}$  defined above, express the solution of  $f(x) = 0$  to which the bisection method converges. (**Hint:** Try the case  $[a_0, b_0] = [0, 1]$  first and think of binary representation of a number. Then try for the case  $[a_0, b_0] = [0, 2]$ , then for the case  $[a_0, b_0] = [1, 3]$ , and then the general case!)

- (7) In the notation of bisection method, determine (with justification) if the following are possible.
- (i)  $a_0 < a_1 < a_2 < \cdots < a_n < \cdots$
  - (ii)  $b_0 > b_1 > b_2 > \cdots > b_n > \cdots$
  - (iii)  $a_0 = a_1 < a_2 = a_3 < \cdots < a_{2m} = a_{2m+1} < \cdots$  (**Hint:** First guess what should be the solution found by bisection method in such a case, and then find the simplest function having it as a root! Do not forget the connection between bisection method and binary representation of a number, described in the last problem)
- (8) Draw the graph of a function that satisfies the hypothesis of bisection method on the interval  $[0, 1]$  such that the errors  $e_1, e_2, e_3$  satisfy  $e_1 > e_2$ , and  $e_2 < e_3$ . Give formula for one such function.
- (9) Draw the graph of a function for which bisection method iterates satisfy  $x_1 = 2$ ,  $x_2 = 0$ , and  $x_3 = 1$  (in the usual notation of bisection method). Indicate in the graph why  $x_1 = 2$ ,  $x_2 = 0$ , and  $x_3 = 1$  hold. Also mention precisely the corresponding intervals  $[a_0, b_0], [a_1, b_1], [a_2, b_2]$ .

- (10) Draw the graph of a function (there is no need to give a formula for the function) for which  $a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3$  (in the usual notation of bisection method) satisfy  $a_0 < a_1 = a_2 < a_3$ . (Mark these points clearly on the graph.)

### Secant Method and Newton-Raphson Method

- (11) Discuss some instances where the secant method fails. Note that failure of secant method results from one of the following two situations: (i) the iterative sequence is not well-defined, and (ii) the iterative sequence does not converge at all.
- (12) Let  $\alpha$  be a positive real number. Find formula for an iterative sequence based on Newton-Raphson method for finding  $\sqrt{\alpha}$  and  $\alpha^{1/3}$ . Apply the methods to  $\alpha = 18$  to obtain the results which are correct to two significant digits when compared to their exact values.
- (13) Consider the nonlinear equation

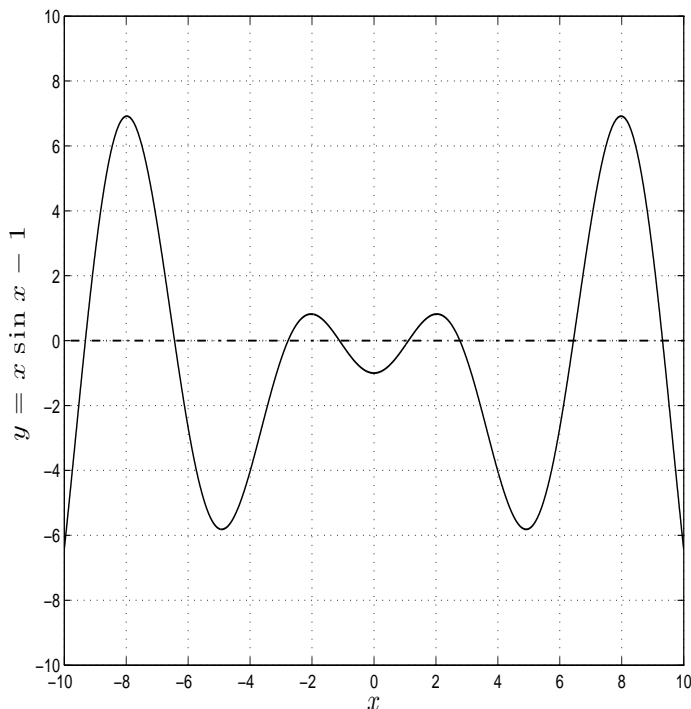
$$\frac{1}{3}x^3 - x^2 + x + 1 = 0.$$

Show that there exists an initial guess  $x_0 \in (0, 4)$  for which  $x_2$  of the Newton-Raphson method iterative sequence is not defined.

- (14) Let  $a$  be a real number such that  $0 < a \leq 1$ . Let  $\{x_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  be the iterative sequence of the Newton-Raphson method to solve the nonlinear equation  $e^{-ax} = x$ . If  $x^*$  denotes the exact root of this equation and  $x_0 > 0$ , then show that

$$|x^* - x_{n+1}| \leq \frac{1}{2}(x^* - x_n)^2.$$

- (15) Newton-Raphson method is to be applied for approximating a root of the nonlinear equation  $x^4 - x - 10 = 0$ .
- (i) How many solutions of the nonlinear equation are there in  $[1, \infty)$ ? Are they simple?
  - (ii) Find an interval  $[1, b]$  that contains the smallest positive solution of the nonlinear equation.
  - (iii) Compute five iterates of Newton-Raphson method, for each of the initial guesses  $x_0 = 1$ ,  $x_0 = 2$ ,  $x_0 = 100$ . What are your observations?
  - (iv) A solution of the nonlinear equation is approximately equal to 1.85558. Find a  $\delta$  as in the proof of theorem on Newton-Raphson method, so that iterative sequence of Newton-Raphson method always converges for every initial guess  $x_0 \in [1.85558 - \delta, 1.85558 + \delta]$ .
  - (v) Can we appeal to the theorem for convex functions in the context of Newton-Raphson method? Justify.

Fig. 4.5. Graph of  $x \sin x - 1$ 

(16) Newton-Raphson method is to be applied for approximating a root of the equation  $\sin x = 0$ .

- (i) Find formula for the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence.
- (ii) Let  $\alpha \in (-\pi/2, \pi/2)$  and  $\alpha \neq 0$  be such that if  $x_0 = \alpha$ , then the iteration becomes a cycle *i.e.*,

$$\alpha = x_0 = x_2 = \cdots = x_{2k} = x_{2k+2} = \cdots, \quad x_1 = x_3 = \cdots = x_{2k+1} = x_{2k+3} = \cdots$$

Find a non-linear equation  $g(y) = 0$  whose solution is  $\alpha$ .

- (iii) Starting with the initial guess  $x_0 = \alpha$ , compute  $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5$  using Newton-Raphson method for the equation  $\sin x = 0$ .
- (iv) Starting with the initial guess  $y_0 = 1$ , compute  $y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4, y_5$  using Newton-Raphson method for the equation  $g(y) = 0$  to find an approximate value of  $\alpha$ .
- (v) Starting with initial guess  $x_0 = y_5$ , where  $y_5$  is obtained in (iv) above, compute  $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5$  using Newton-Raphson method for the equation  $\sin x = 0$ .

(17) Consider the nonlinear equation  $x \sin x - 1 = 0$ .

- (i) Find an initial guess  $x_0$  such that  $x_0 > 1$ , with the help of the graph depicted in Figure 4.5, such that the Newton-Raphson method is likely to con-

- verge to the solution  $x^*$  of the given nonlinear equation lying in the interval  $(-10, -9)$ . Compute  $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4$  of the corresponding Newton-Raphson iterative sequence. Explain why the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence so obtained would converge to the desired  $x^*$ . This example shows that even though the initial guess is close to a solution, the corresponding Newton-Raphson iterative sequence might converge to a solution that is far off!
- (ii) Find another initial guess  $x_0$  such that  $x_0 > 1$ , with the help of the graph, such that the Newton-Raphson method is likely to converge to the smallest positive solution of the given nonlinear equation. Compute  $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4$  of the corresponding Newton-Raphson iterative sequence. Explain why the Newton-Raphson iterative sequence so obtained would converge to the desired solution.
- (18) Draw the graph of a function for which the Newton-Raphson iterates satisfy  $x_0 = x_2 = x_4 = \dots = 0$ , and  $x_1 = x_3 = x_5 = \dots = 2$ . Indicate in the graph why this happens.
- (19) Draw the graph of a function for which regula-falsi method iterates satisfy  $x_0 = 0$ ,  $x_1 = 3$ , and  $x_2 = 1$ ,  $x_3 = 2$  (in the usual notation of regula-falsi method). Indicate in the graph why  $x_2 = 1$ ,  $x_3 = 2$  hold.

### Fixed-Point Iteration Method

- (20) The nonlinear equation  $f(x) = x^2 - 2x - 8 = 0$  has two solutions  $x = -2$  and  $x = 4$ . Consider the three fixed-point formulations
- $x = \frac{8}{x-2}$ ,
  - $x = \sqrt{2x+8}$ ,
  - $x = \frac{x^2-8}{2}$ .
- Carry out fixed-point iteration method with two initial guesses  $x_0 = -1$ ,  $x_0 = 3$ , and for all the three iteration functions. Discuss the convergence or divergence of all the iterative sequences. Can you justify theoretically?
- (21) To solve the nonlinear equation  $x - \tan x = 0$  by fixed-point iteration method, the following fixed-point formulations may be considered.
- $x = \tan x$
  - $x = \tan^{-1} x$
- Discuss about convergence of the fixed-point iterative sequences generated by the two formulations.

- (22) To solve the nonlinear equation  $e^{-x} - \cos x = 0$  by fixed-point iteration method, the following fixed-point formulations may be considered.

(i)  $x = -\ln(\cos x)$

(ii)  $x = \cos^{-1}(e^{-x})$

Discuss about convergence of the fixed-point iterative sequences generated by the two formulations.

- (23) Show that  $g(x) = \pi + \frac{1}{2}\sin(x/2)$  has a unique fixed point in  $[0, 2\pi]$ . Use fixed-point iteration method with  $g$  as the iteration function and  $x_0 = 0$  to find an approximate solution for the equation  $\frac{1}{2}\sin(x/2) - x + \pi = 0$  with the stopping criterion that the residual error is less than  $10^{-4}$ .

- (24) Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$  be the roots of  $x^2 + ax + b = 0$ , and such that  $|\alpha| > |\beta|$ . Let  $g$  and  $h$  be two iterating functions satisfying the hypothesis of the theorem on fixed-point method. Consider the iterative sequences  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  corresponding to two the iterating functions  $g$  and  $h$  given by

$$x_{n+1} = -\frac{ax_n + b}{x_n}, \text{ and } y_{n+1} = -\frac{b}{y_n + a}$$

respectively. Show that the iterative sequences  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  converge to  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  respectively.

- (25) Let  $\{x_n\} \subset [a, b]$  be a sequence generated by a fixed point iteration method with a continuously differentiable iteration function  $g(x)$ . If this sequence converges to  $x^*$ , then show that

$$|x_{n+1} - x^*| \leq \frac{\lambda}{1 - \lambda} |x_{n+1} - x_n|,$$

where  $\lambda := \max_{x \in [a, b]} |g'(x)|$ . (This estimate helps us to decide when to stop iterating if we are using a stopping criterion based on the distance between successive iterates.)

- (26) Explain why the sequence of iterates  $x_{n+1} = 1 - 0.9x_n^2$ , with initial guess  $x_0 = 0$ , does not converge to any solution of the quadratic equation  $0.9x^2 + x - 1 = 0$ ? [Hint: Observe what happens after 25 iterations]

- (27) Let  $x^*$  be the smallest positive root of the equation  $20x^3 - 20x^2 - 25x + 4 = 0$ . The following question is concerning the fixed-point formulation of the nonlinear equation given by  $x = g(x)$ , where  $g(x) = x^3 - x^2 - \frac{x}{4} + \frac{1}{5}$ .

- (i) Show that  $x^* \in [0, 1]$ .

- (ii) Does the function  $g$  satisfy the hypothesis of theorem on fixed-point method? If yes, we know that  $x^*$  is the only fixed point of  $g$  lying in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . In the notation of fixed-point iteration method, find an  $n$  such that  $|x^* - x_n| < 10^{-3}$ , when the initial guess  $x_0$  is equal to 0.
- (28) Let  $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that  $f'$  is continuous,  $f(a)f(b) < 0$ , and there exists an  $\alpha > 0$  such that  $f'(x) \geq \alpha > 0$ .
- (i) Show that  $f(x) = 0$  has exactly one solution in the interval  $[a, b]$ .
- (ii) Show that with a suitable choice of the parameter  $\lambda$ , the solution of the non-linear equation  $f(x) = 0$  can be obtained by applying the fixed-point iteration method applied to the function  $F(x) = x + \lambda f(x)$ .
- (29) Let  $p > 1$  be a real number. Show that the following expression has a meaning and find its value.

$$x = \sqrt{p + \sqrt{p + \sqrt{p + \cdots}}}$$

Note that the last equation is interpreted as  $x = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n$ , where  $x_1 = \sqrt{p}$ ,  $x_2 = \sqrt{p + \sqrt{p}}, \dots$ . (**Hint:** Note that  $x_{n+1} = \sqrt{p + x_n}$ , and show that the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  converges using the theorem on fixed-point method.)

- (30) Draw the graph of a function having the following properties: (i) The function has exactly TWO fixed points. (ii) Give two choices of the initial guess  $x_0$  and  $y_0$  such that the corresponding sequences  $\{x_n\}$  and  $\{y_n\}$  have the properties that  $\{x_n\}$  converges to one of the fixed points and the sequence  $\{y_n\}$  goes away and diverges. Point out the first three terms of both the sequences on the graph.



## CHAPTER 5

---

### Interpolation

Let a physical experiment be conducted and the outcome is recorded only at some finite number of times. If we want to know the outcome at some intermediate time where the data is not available, then we may have to repeat the whole experiment once again to get this data. In the mathematical language, suppose that the finite set of values

$$\{f(x_i) : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$$

of a function  $f$  at a given set of points

$$\{x_i : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$$

is known and we want to find the value of  $f(x)$ , where  $x \in (x_j, x_k)$ , for some  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$  and  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . One way of obtaining the value of  $f(x)$  is to compute this value directly from the expression of the function  $f$ . Often, we may not know the expression of the function explicitly and only the **data**

$$\{(x_i, y_i) : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$$

is known, where  $y_i = f(x_i)$ . In terms of the physical experiments, repeating an experiment will quite often be very expensive. Therefore, one would like to get at least an approximate value of  $f(x)$  (in terms of experiment, an approximate value of the outcome at the desired time). This is achieved by first constructing a function whose value at  $x_i$  coincides exactly with the value  $f(x_i)$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  and then finding the value of this constructed function at the desired points. Such a process is called **interpolation** and the constructed function is called the **interpolating function** for the given data.

In certain circumstances, the function  $f$  may be known explicitly, but still too difficult to perform certain operations like differentiation and integration. Thus, it is useful to restrict the class of interpolating functions to polynomials, where the differentiation and integration can be done more easily.

In Section 5.1, we introduce the basic problem of polynomial interpolation and prove the existence and uniqueness of polynomial interpolating the given data. There are at least two ways to obtain the unique polynomial interpolating a given data,



one is the **Lagrange** and another one is the **Newton**. In Section 5.1.2, we introduce Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial. Section 5.1.3 introduces the notion of divided differences and Newton form of interpolating polynomial. The error analysis of the polynomial interpolation is studied in Section 5.3. In certain cases, the interpolating polynomial can differ significantly from the exact function. This is illustrated by Carl Runge and is called the **Runge Phenomenon**. In Section 5.3.4 we present the example due to Runge and state a few results on convergence of the interpolating polynomials. The concept of **piecewise polynomial interpolation** and **Spline interpolation** are discussed in Section 5.5.

## 5.1 Polynomial Interpolation

Polynomial interpolation is a concept of fitting a polynomial to a given data. Thus, to construct an interpolating polynomial, we first need a set of points at which the data values are known.

**Definition 5.1.** Any collection of distinct real numbers  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  (not necessarily in increasing order) is called **nodes**.

**Definition 5.2 (Interpolating Polynomial).** Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be the given nodes and  $y_0, y_1, \dots, y_n$  be real numbers. A polynomial  $p_n(x)$  of degree less than or equal to  $n$  is said to be a **polynomial interpolating the given data** or an **interpolating polynomial for the given data** if

$$p_n(x_i) = y_i, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, n. \quad (5.1.1)$$

The condition (5.1.1) is called the **interpolation condition**.  $\square$

**Remark 5.3.** Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be given nodes, and  $y_0, y_1, \dots, y_n$  be real numbers. Let  $p_n(x)$  be a polynomial interpolating the given data. Then the graph of  $p_n(x)$  passes through the set of  $(n + 1)$  distinct points in the  $xy$ -plane given by the table

$x$	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$\dots$	$x_n$
$y$	$y_0$	$y_1$	$y_2$	$y_3$	$\dots$	$y_n$

We call the set  $\{(x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$  as **data** and quite often we represent this set in the above form of a table.  $\square$

### 5.1.1 Existence and Uniqueness of Interpolating Polynomial

The following result asserts that an interpolating polynomial exists and is unique.

**Theorem 5.4 (Existence and Uniqueness of Interpolating polynomial).**

Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be given nodes, and  $y_0, y_1, \dots, y_n$  be real numbers.

(1) Then there exists a polynomial  $p_n(x)$  of degree less than or equal to  $n$  such that

$$p_n(x_i) = y_i, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

That is,  $p_n(x)$  is an interpolating polynomial for the data  $\{(x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$ .

(2) Such a polynomial as above is unique.

**Proof:**

**Proof of uniqueness:** Assume that  $p_n(x)$  and  $q_n(x)$  are interpolating polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $n$  that satisfies the interpolation condition (5.1.1). Let

$$r_n(x) = p_n(x) - q_n(x).$$

Then,  $r_n(x)$  is also a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $n$ , and by the interpolation condition, we have

$$r_n(x_i) = 0,$$

for every  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . Thus,  $r_n(x)$  is a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $n$  with  $n + 1$  distinct roots. By the fundamental theorem of algebra, we conclude that  $r_n(x)$  is the zero polynomial. That is, the interpolating polynomial is unique.

**Proof of existence:** Existence of interpolating polynomial is proved using mathematical induction. If  $n = 0$ , then the constant polynomial

$$p_0(x) = y_0$$

is the required polynomial and its degree is less than or equal to 0. Assume that the result is true for  $n = k$ . We will now prove that the result is true for  $n = k + 1$ .

Let the data be given by

$x$	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$\cdots$	$x_k$	$x_{k+1}$
$y$	$y_0$	$y_1$	$y_2$	$y_3$	$\cdots$	$y_k$	$y_{k+1}$

By the assumption, there exists a polynomial  $p_k(x)$  of degree less than or equal to  $k$  such that the first  $k$  interpolating conditions

$$p_k(x_i) = y_i, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, k$$

hold. Define a polynomial  $p_{k+1}(x)$  of degree less than or equal to  $k + 1$  by

$$p_{k+1}(x) = p_k(x) + c(x - x_0)(x - x_1) \cdots (x - x_k), \quad (5.1.2)$$

where the constant  $c$  is such that the  $(k + 1)^{\text{th}}$  interpolation condition  $p_{k+1}(x_{k+1}) = y_{k+1}$  holds. This is achieved by choosing

$$c = \frac{y_{k+1} - p_k(x_{k+1})}{(x_{k+1} - x_0)(x_{k+1} - x_1) \cdots (x_{k+1} - x_k)}.$$

Note that  $p_{k+1}(x_i) = y_i$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, k$  and therefore  $p_{k+1}(x)$  is an interpolating polynomial for the given data. This proves the result for  $n = k + 1$ . By the principle of mathematical induction, the result is true for any natural number  $n$ .  $\square$

**Remark 5.5.** A special case is when the data values  $y_i$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  are the values of a function  $f$  at given nodes  $x_i$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . In such a case, a polynomial interpolating the given data

$x$	$x_0$	$x_1$	$x_2$	$x_3$	$\dots$	$x_n$
$y$	$f(x_0)$	$f(x_1)$	$f(x_2)$	$f(x_3)$	$\dots$	$f(x_n)$

is said to be the **polynomial interpolating the given function** or the **interpolating polynomial for the given function** and has a special significance in applications of Numerical analysis for computing approximate solutions of differential equations and numerically computing complicated integrals.  $\square$

**Example 5.6.** Let the following data represent the values of  $f$ :

$x$	0	0.5	1
$f(x)$	1.0000	0.5242	-0.9037

The questions are the following:

- (1) What is the exact expression for the function  $f$ ?
- (2) What is the value of  $f(0.75)$ ?

We cannot get the exact expression for the function  $f$  just from the given data, because there are infinitely many functions having same value at the given set of points. Due to this, we cannot expect an exact value for  $f(0.75)$ , in fact, it can be any real number. On the other hand, if we look for  $f$  in the class of polynomials of degree less than or equal to 2, then Theorem 5.4 tells us that there is exactly one such polynomial and hence we can obtain a unique value for  $f(0.75)$ .

The interpolating polynomial happens to be

$$p_2(x) = -1.9042x^2 + 0.0005x + 1$$

and we have

$$p_2(0.75) = -0.0707380.$$

The function used to generate the above table of data is

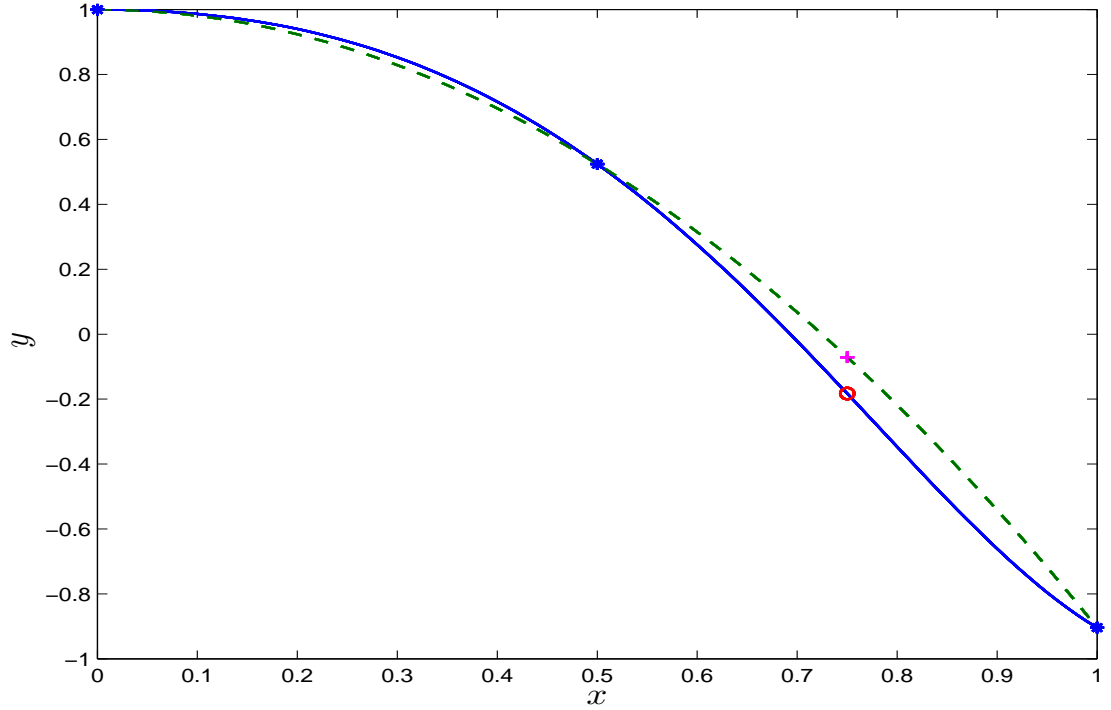
$$f(x) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}e^x\right).$$

With this expression of  $f$ , we have (using 7-digit rounding)

$$f(0.75) \approx -0.1827495.$$

The relative error is given by

$$E_r(p_2(0.75)) = \frac{f(0.75) - p_2(0.75)}{f(0.75)} \approx 0.6129237.$$



**Fig. 5.1.** The function  $f(x) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}e^x\right)$  (blue solid line) and  $p_2(x)$  (green dash line). Blue dots represent the given data, magenta '+' symbol indicates the value of  $p_2(0.75)$  and the red 'O' symbol represents the value of  $f(0.75)$ .

That is, at the point  $x = 0.75$  the polynomial approximation to the given function  $f$  has more than 61% error. The graph of the function  $f$  (blue solid line) and  $p_2$  (green dash line) are depicted in Figure 5.1. The blue dots denote the given data, magenta '+' symbol indicates the value of  $p_2(0.75)$  and the red 'O' symbol represents the value of  $f(0.75)$ . It is also observed from the graph that if we approximate the function  $f$  for  $x \in [0, 0.5]$ , then we obtain a better accuracy than approximating  $f$  in the interval  $(0.5, 1)$ .  $\square$

### 5.1.2 Lagrange's Form of Interpolating Polynomial

#### Definition 5.7 (Lagrange's Polynomial).

Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be given nodes. For each  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , the polynomial  $l_k(x)$  defined by

$$l_k(x) = \prod_{\substack{i=0 \\ i \neq k}}^n \frac{(x - x_i)}{(x_k - x_i)} \quad (5.1.3)$$

is called the  $k^{\text{th}}$  **Lagrange Polynomial** or the  $k^{\text{th}}$  **Lagrange Cardinal Function**.

**Remark 5.8.** Note that the  $k^{\text{th}}$  Lagrange polynomial depends on all the  $n + 1$  nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 5.9 (Lagrange's form of Interpolating Polynomial).**

**Hypothesis:**

- (1) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be given nodes.
- (2) Let the values of a function  $f$  be given at these nodes.
- (3) For each  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , let  $l_k(x)$  be the  $k^{\text{th}}$  Lagrange polynomial.
- (4) Let  $p_n(x)$  (of degree  $\leq n$ ) be the polynomial interpolating the function  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ .

**Conclusion:** Then,  $p_n(x)$  can be written as

$$p_n(x) = \sum_{i=0}^n f(x_i)l_i(x). \quad (5.1.4)$$

This form of the interpolating polynomial is called the **Lagrange's form of Interpolating Polynomial**.

**Proof:** Firstly, we will prove that  $q(x) := \sum_{i=0}^n f(x_i)l_i(x)$  is an interpolating polynomial for the function  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ . Since

$$l_i(x_j) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j \\ 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \end{cases},$$

we get  $q(x_j) = f(x_j)$  for each  $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . Thus,  $q(x)$  is an interpolating polynomial. Since interpolating polynomial is unique by Theorem 5.4, the polynomial  $q(x)$  must be the same as  $p_n(x)$ . This completes the proof of the theorem.  $\square$

**Example 5.10.** Consider the case  $n = 1$  in which we have two distinct points  $x_0$  and  $x_1$ . Then

$$l_0(x) = \frac{x - x_1}{x_0 - x_1}, \quad l_1(x) = \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} p_1(x) &= f(x_0)l_0(x) + f(x_1)l_1(x) \\ &= f(x_0)\frac{x - x_1}{x_0 - x_1} + f(x_1)\frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} \\ &= \frac{f(x_0)(x - x_1) - f(x_1)(x - x_0)}{x_0 - x_1} \\ &= f(x_0) + \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0}(x - x_0). \end{aligned} \quad (5.1.5)$$

This is the **linear interpolating polynomial** of the function  $f$ . Similarly, if we are given three nodes with corresponding values, then we can generate the **quadratic interpolating polynomial** and so on..  $\square$

**Example 5.11.** Let the values of the function  $f(x) = e^x$  be given at  $x_0 = 0.82$  and  $x_1 = 0.83$  by

$$e^{0.82} \approx 2.270500, \quad e^{0.83} \approx 2.293319.$$

In this example, we would like to obtain an approximate value of  $e^{0.826}$  using the polynomial  $p_1(x)$  that interpolates  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1$ . The polynomial  $p_1(x)$  is given by

$$p_1(x) = 2.270500 + \frac{2.293319 - 2.270500}{0.83 - 0.82}(x - 0.82) = 2.2819x + 0.399342.$$

The approximate value of  $e^{0.826}$  is taken to be  $p_1(0.826)$ , which is given by

$$p_1(0.826) \approx 2.2841914.$$

The true value of  $e^{0.826}$  is

$$e^{0.826} \approx 2.2841638.$$

Note that the approximation to  $e^{0.826}$  obtained using the interpolating polynomial  $p_1(x)$ , namely 2.2841914, approximates the exact value to at least five significant digits.

If we are given an additional node  $x_2 = 0.84$  and the value of  $f$  at  $x_2$  as  $f(x_2) \approx 2.316367$ , then we would like to use the quadratic interpolation polynomial  $p_2$  to obtain an approximate value of  $e^{0.826}$ . In fact,

$$p_2(0.826) \approx 2.2841639.$$

Note that the approximation to  $e^{0.826}$  obtained using the interpolating polynomial  $p_2(x)$ , namely 2.2841639, approximates the exact value to at least eight significant digits.  $\square$

**Remark 5.12.** The above example gives us a feeling that if we increase the number of nodes, and thereby increasing the degree of the interpolating polynomial, the polynomial approximates the original function more accurately. But this is not true in general, and we will discuss this further in Section 5.3.4.  $\square$

**Remark 5.13.** Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be nodes, and  $f$  be a function. Recall that computing an interpolating polynomial in Lagrange's form requires us to compute for each  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , the  $k^{\text{th}}$  Lagrange's polynomial  $l_k(x)$  which depends on the given nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ . Suppose that we have found the corresponding interpolating polynomial  $p_n(x)$  of  $f$  in the Lagrange's form for the given data. Now if we add

one more node  $x_{n+1}$ , the computation of the interpolating polynomial  $p_{n+1}(x)$  in the Lagrange's form requires us to compute a new set of Lagrange's polynomials corresponding to the set of  $(n+1)$  nodes, and no advantage can be taken of the fact that  $p_n$  is already available. This will obviously increase the computational costs.

An alternative form of the interpolating polynomial, namely **Newton's form of interpolating polynomial**, avoids this problem, and will be discussed in the next section.  $\square$

### 5.1.3 Newton's Form of Interpolating Polynomial

We saw in the last section that it is easy to write the Lagrange form of the interpolating polynomial once the Lagrange polynomials associated to a given set of nodes have been written. However we observed in Remark 5.13 that the knowledge of  $p_n$  (in Lagrange form) cannot be utilized to construct  $p_{n+1}$  in the Lagrange form. In this section we describe **Newton's form of interpolating polynomial**, which uses the knowledge of  $p_n$  in constructing  $p_{n+1}$ .

**Theorem 5.14 (Newton's form of Interpolating Polynomial).**

**Hypothesis:**

- (1) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be given nodes.
- (2) Let the values of a function  $f$  be given at these nodes.
- (3) Let  $p_n(x)$  (of degree  $\leq n$ ) be the polynomial interpolating the function  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ .

**Conclusion:** Then,  $p_n(x)$  can be written as

$$p_n(x) = A_0 + A_1(x-x_0) + A_2(x-x_0)(x-x_1) + A_3 \prod_{i=0}^2 (x-x_i) + \dots + A_n \prod_{i=0}^{n-1} (x-x_i) \quad (5.1.6)$$

where  $A_0, A_1, \dots, A_n$  are constants.

This form of the interpolating polynomial is called the **Newton's form of Interpolating Polynomial**.

**Proof:** Recall that in the proof of Theorem 5.4, we proved the existence of an interpolating polynomial using mathematical induction. In fact, we have given an algorithm for constructing interpolating polynomial. The interpolating polynomial given by (5.1.2) was precisely the Newton's form of interpolating polynomial.  $\square$

**Remark 5.15.** Let us recall the equation (5.1.2) from the proof of Theorem 5.4 now.

(1) It says that for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have

$$p_n(x) = p_{n-1}(x) + A_n \prod_{i=0}^{n-1} (x - x_i) \quad (5.1.7)$$

for some constant  $A_n$ . This shows the recursive nature of computing Newton's form of interpolating polynomial.

(2) Indeed  $A_n$  is given by

$$A_n = \frac{f(x_n) - p_{n-1}(x_n)}{(x_n - x_0)(x_n - x_1) \cdots (x_n - x_{n-1})}. \quad (5.1.8)$$

From the last equality, note that  $A_0$  depends only on  $f(x_0)$ .  $A_1$  depends on the values of  $f$  at  $x_0$  and  $x_1$  only. In general,  $A_n$  depends on the values of  $f$  at  $x_0, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  only.

(3) To compute Newton's form of interpolating polynomial  $p_n(x)$ , it is enough to compute  $A_k$  for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . However note that the formula (5.1.8) is not well-suited to compute  $A_k$  because we need to evaluate all the successive interpolating polynomials  $p_k(x)$  for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$  and then evaluate them at the node  $x_k$  which is computationally costly. It then appears that we are in a similar situation to that of Lagrange's form of interpolating polynomial as far as computational costs are concerned. But this is not the case, as we shall see shortly that we can compute  $A_n$  directly using the given data (that is, the given values of the function at the nodes), and this will be done in Section 5.2.  $\square$

## 5.2 Newton's Divided Difference Formulas

**Definition 5.16 (Divided Differences).** Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be distinct nodes. Let  $p_n(x)$  be the polynomial interpolating a function  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ . The coefficient of  $x^n$  in the polynomial  $p_n(x)$  is denoted by  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$ , and is called an  $n^{\text{th}}$  **divided difference** of  $f$ .

**Remark 5.17.**

- (1) Since the interpolating polynomial for the function  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  is unique, there is one and only one coefficient of  $x^n$ ; even though interpolation polynomial may have many forms like Lagrange's form and Newton's form. Thus the quantity  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$  is well-defined.
- (2) More generally, the divided difference  $f[x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+k}]$  is the coefficient of  $x^k$  in the polynomial interpolating  $f$  at the nodes  $x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+k}$ .
- (3) The Newton's form of interpolating polynomial may be written, using divided differences, as



$$p_n(x) = f[x_0] + \sum_{k=1}^n f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_k] \prod_{i=0}^{k-1} (x - x_i) \quad (5.2.9)$$

□

**Example 5.18.** As a continuation of Example 5.10, let us construct the linear interpolating polynomial of a function  $f$  in the Newton's form. In this case, the interpolating polynomial is given by

$$p_1(x) = f[x_0] + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0),$$

where

$$f[x_0] = f(x_0), \quad f[x_0, x_1] = \frac{f(x_0) - f(x_1)}{x_0 - x_1} \quad (5.2.10)$$

are **zeroth** and **first order divided differences**, respectively. Observe that this polynomial is exactly the same as the interpolating polynomial obtained using Lagrange's form in Example 5.10. □

The following result is concerning the symmetry properties of divided differences.

**Theorem 5.19 (Symmetry).** *The divided difference is a symmetric function of its arguments. That is, if  $z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n$  is a permutation of  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ , then*

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = f[z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n] \quad (5.2.11)$$

**Proof:** Since  $z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n$  is a permutation of  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ , which means that the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  have only been re-labelled as  $z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n$ , and hence the polynomial interpolating the function  $f$  at both these sets of nodes is the same. By definition  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$  is the coefficient of  $x^n$  in the polynomial interpolating the function  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ , and  $f[z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n]$  is the coefficient of  $x^n$  in the polynomial interpolating the function  $f$  at the nodes  $z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n$ . Since both the interpolating polynomials are equal, so are the coefficients of  $x^n$  in them. Thus, we get

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = f[z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n].$$

This completes the proof. □

The following result helps us in computing recursively the divided differences of higher order.

**Theorem 5.20 (Higher-order divided differences).** *Divided differences satisfy the equation*

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = \frac{f[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n] - f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}]}{x_n - x_0} \quad (5.2.12)$$

**Proof:** Let us start the proof by setting up the following notations.

- Let  $p_n(x)$  be the polynomial interpolating  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ .
- Let  $p_{n-1}(x)$  be the polynomial interpolating  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}$ .
- Let  $q(x)$  be the polynomial interpolating  $f$  at the nodes  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ .

**Claim:** We will prove the following relation between  $p_{n-1}$ ,  $p_n$ , and  $q$ :

$$p_n(x) = p_{n-1}(x) + \frac{x - x_0}{x_n - x_0} (q(x) - p_{n-1}(x)) \quad (5.2.13)$$

Since both sides of the equality in (5.2.13) are polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $n$ , and  $p_n(x)$  is the polynomial interpolating  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ , the equality in (5.2.13) holds for all  $x$  if and only if it holds for  $x \in \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  and both sides of the equality reduce to  $f(x)$  for  $x \in \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ . Let us now verify the equation (5.2.13) for  $x \in \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ .

(1) When  $x = x_0$ ,

$$p_{n-1}(x_0) + \frac{x_0 - x_0}{x_n - x_0} (q(x_0) - p_{n-1}(x_0)) = p_{n-1}(x_0) = f(x_0) = p_n(x_0).$$

(2) When  $x = x_k$  for  $1 \leq k \leq n-1$ ,  $q(x_k) = p_{n-1}(x_k)$  and thus we have

$$p_{n-1}(x_k) + \frac{x_k - x_0}{x_n - x_0} (q(x_k) - p_{n-1}(x_k)) = p_{n-1}(x_k) = f(x_k) = p_n(x_k).$$

(3) When  $x = x_n$ , we have

$$p_{n-1}(x_n) + \frac{x_n - x_0}{x_n - x_0} (q(x_n) - p_{n-1}(x_n)) = p_{n-1}(x_n) + (f(x_n) - p_{n-1}(x_n)) = f(x_n) = p_n(x_n).$$

This finishes the proof of the Claim.

The coefficient of  $x^n$  in the polynomial  $p_n(x)$  is  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$ . The coefficient of  $x^n$  using the right hand side of the equation (5.2.13) is given by

$$\left( \text{coefficient of } x^n \text{ in } p_{n-1}(x) \right) + \frac{1}{x_n - x_0} \left( \text{coefficient of } x^n \text{ in } (x - x_0)(q(x) - p_{n-1}(x)) \right).$$

On noting that the coefficient of  $x^{n-1}$  in the polynomial  $p_{n-1}$  is  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}]$ , the coefficient of  $x^{n-1}$  in the polynomial  $q$  is  $f[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n]$ , and the coefficient of  $x^n$  in the polynomial  $p_{n-1}$  is zero, we get that the coefficient of  $x^n$  using the right hand side of the equation (5.2.13) becomes

$$\frac{f[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n] - f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}]}{x_n - x_0}.$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $x^n$  in the left and right hand sides of the equation (5.2.13) yields

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = \frac{f[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n] - f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}]}{x_n - x_0}.$$

□

**Remark 5.21.** Let  $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$ . Applying Theorem 5.20 to a set of nodes  $x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+j}$ , we conclude

$$f[x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+j}] = \frac{f[x_{i+1}, x_{i+2}, \dots, x_{i+j}] - f[x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+j-1}]}{x_{i+j} - x_i} \quad (5.2.14)$$

Note that the divided differences  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$  are defined only for distinct nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ . □

### 5.2.1 Divided Differences Table

Given a collection of  $(n + 1)$  nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  and the values of the function  $f$  at these nodes, we can construct the Newton's form of interpolating polynomial  $p_n(x)$  using divided differences. As observed earlier, the Newton's form of interpolation polynomial has the formula

$$p_n(x) = f[x_0] + \sum_{k=1}^n f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_k] \prod_{i=0}^{k-1} (x - x_i) \quad (5.2.15)$$

One can explicitly write the formula (5.2.15) for  $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \dots$ . For instance, when  $n = 5$ , the formula (5.2.15) reads

$$p_5(x) = \left. \begin{aligned} & f[x_0] \\ & + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0) \\ & + f[x_0, x_1, x_2](x - x_0)(x - x_1) \\ & + f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3](x - x_0)(x - x_1)(x - x_2) \\ & + f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4](x - x_0)(x - x_1)(x - x_2)(x - x_3) \\ & + f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5](x - x_0)(x - x_1)(x - x_2)(x - x_3)(x - x_4) \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (5.2.16)$$

For easy computation of the divided differences in view of the formula (5.2.12), it is convenient to write the divided differences in a table form. For  $n = 5$ , the divided difference table is given by

$x_0$	<b><math>f(x_0)</math></b>					
$x_1$	$f(x_1)$	<b><math>f[x_0, x_1]</math></b>				
$x_2$	$f(x_2)$	$f[x_1, x_2]$	<b><math>f[x_0, x_1, x_2]</math></b>			
$x_3$	$f(x_3)$	$f[x_2, x_3]$	$f[x_1, x_2, x_3]$	<b><math>f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3]</math></b>		
$x_4$	$f(x_4)$	$f[x_3, x_4]$	$f[x_2, x_3, x_4]$	$f[x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4]$	<b><math>f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4]</math></b>	
$x_5$	$f(x_5)$	$f[x_4, x_5]$	$f[x_3, x_4, x_5]$	$f[x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5]$	$f[x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5]$	<b><math>f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5]</math></b>

Comparing the above divided differences table and the interpolating polynomial  $p_5$  given by (5.2.16), we see that the leading members of each column (denoted in bold font) are the required divided differences used in  $p_5(x)$ .

### 5.2.2 Divided Difference Formula for Repeated Nodes

It follows from the symmetric property (Theorem 5.19) that the  $n^{\text{th}}$  order divided difference formula (5.2.12) is not well-defined if at least two nodes coincide. But such situations do occur quite common in numerical analysis, for instance in the error analysis of quadrature formulas. So, we need to interpret the define of the divided difference in such a way that it is still well defined if two or more nodes coincide. For this, the following theorem is useful.

#### Theorem 5.22 (Hermite-Genocchi Formula).

**Hypothesis:**

- (1) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n \in [a, b]$  be distinct nodes.
- (2) Let  $f$  be  $n$ -times continuously differentiable function on the interval  $[a, b]$ .

**Conclusion:** Then

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = \int \cdots \int_{\tau_n} f^{(n)}(t_0 x_0 + \cdots + t_n x_n) dt_1 \cdots dt_n, \quad (5.2.17)$$

where

$$\tau_n = \left\{ (t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) / t_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, \dots, n; \sum_{i=1}^n t_i \leq 1 \right\}, \quad t_0 = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^n t_i \quad (5.2.18)$$

**Proof:** We prove the theorem by induction.

**Step 1 :** First, we prove (5.2.17) for  $n = 1$ . From (5.2.18), we see that  $\tau_1 = [0, 1]$ . Using the expression for  $t_0$  in (5.2.18), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^1 f'(t_0x_0 + t_1x_1) dt_1 &= \int_0^1 f'(x_0 + t_1(x_1 - x_0)) dt_1 = \frac{1}{x_1 - x_0} f(x_0 + t_1(x_1 - x_0)) \Big|_{t_1=0}^{t_1=1} \\
&= \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0} = f[x_0, x_1].
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have proved the result (5.2.17) for  $n = 1$ .

**Step 2 :** Now assume that the formula (5.2.17) holds for  $n = k \geq 1$  and prove the formula for  $n = k + 1$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{\tau_{k+1}} \cdots \int f^{(k+1)}(t_0x_0 + t_1x_1 + \cdots + t_{k+1}x_{k+1}) dt_1 \cdots dt_{k+1} \\
&= \int_{\tau_k} \cdots \int \left( \int_0^{1-(t_1+\cdots+t_k)} f^{(k+1)}(x_0 + t_1(x_1 - x_0) + \cdots + t_{k+1}(x_{k+1} - x_0)) dt_{k+1} \right) dt_1 \cdots dt_k \\
&= \int_{\tau_k} \cdots \int \frac{1}{x_{k+1} - x_0} [f^{(k)}(x_0 + t_1(x_1 - x_0) + \cdots + t_{k+1}(x_{k+1} - x_0))]_{t_{k+1}=0}^{t_{k+1}=1-(t_1+\cdots+t_k)} dt_1 \cdots dt_k \\
&= \frac{1}{x_{k+1} - x_0} \left[ \int_{\tau_k} \cdots \int f^{(k)}(x_{k+1} + t_1(x_1 - x_{k+1}) + \cdots + t_k(x_k - x_{k+1})) dt_1 \cdots dt_k \right. \\
&\quad \left. - \int_{\tau_k} \cdots \int f^{(k)}(x_0 + t_1(x_1 - x_0) + \cdots + t_k(x_k - x_0)) dt_1 \cdots dt_k \right] \\
&= \frac{f[x_1, \cdots, x_k, x_{k+1}] - f[x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_k]}{x_{k+1} - x_0} \\
&= f[x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_{k+1}].
\end{aligned}$$

By the principle of mathematical induction, the result is true for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .  $\square$

**Remark 5.23.** Since  $f$  is  $n$ -times continuously differentiable, the right hand side of (5.2.17) is meaningful for any set of points  $x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_n$ , which are not necessarily distinct. This gives a meaning, which can be used to define the  $n^{\text{th}}$  order divided difference when  $x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_n$  are not distinct (*i.e.*, one or more points are repeated).  $\square$

Following results are direct consequences of the above theorem.

**Corollary 5.24.**

**Hypothesis:**

(1) Let  $x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_n \in [a, b]$  be a set of points, not necessarily distinct.

(2) Let  $f$  be  $n$  times continuously differentiable function on the interval  $[a, b]$ .

**Conclusion:**

(1) The function  $(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$  is continuous on  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ .

(2) For any  $x \in [a, b]$ , the limit

$$\lim_{(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n) \rightarrow (x, x, \dots, x)} f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$$

exists and this limit is the  $n^{\text{th}}$ -order divided difference  $f[x, x, \dots, x]$  ( $x$  repeated  $(n+1)$ -times). Further, we have

$$f[x, x, \dots, x] = \frac{f^{(n)}(x)}{n!}. \quad (5.2.19)$$

**Proof.**

(1) The proof is out side the scope of this course and hence omitted.

(2) The proof follows from the fact that

$$\int \cdots \int_{\tau_n} 1 \, dt_1 \cdots dt_n = \frac{1}{n!}$$

and the Hermite-Genocchi formula (5.2.17).  $\square$

The following theorem gives an expression for the divided difference of an  $(n+2)$ -times differentiable function when two nodes are repeated.

**Theorem 5.25.**

**Hypothesis:**

(1) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be given (distinct) nodes in an interval  $[a, b]$ .

(2) Let  $x \in [a, b]$ ,  $x \notin \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ .

**Conclusion:** The  $(n+2)^{\text{nd}}$ -order divided difference  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x, x]$  of an  $(n+2)$ -times continuously differentiable function  $f$  is given by

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x, x] = \frac{d}{dx} f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x]. \quad (5.2.20)$$

**Proof:** It follows from (5.2.17) that the function  $F(x) = f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x]$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$  is well-defined and continuous. Therefore, using the symmetry property of the divided differences, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x, x] &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x, x+h] \\
&= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f[x, x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x+h].
\end{aligned}$$

As all the points used on the right hand side are distinct, we can use the formula (5.2.12) to get

$$\begin{aligned}
f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x, x] &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x+h] - f[x, x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x+h] - f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x]}{h} \\
&= \frac{d}{dx} f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x].
\end{aligned}$$

This completes the proof.  $\square$

### 5.3 Error in Polynomial Interpolation

Let  $f$  be a function defined on an interval  $I = [a, b]$ . Let  $p_n(x)$  be a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $n$  that interpolates the function  $f$  at  $n+1$  nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  in  $I$ . How well does  $p_n(x)$  approximate  $f$  on the interval  $I$ ? This question leads to the analysis of **interpolation error**.

As we discussed at the beginning of Chapter 2, the error given by

$$\text{ME}_n(x) = f(x) - p_n(x). \quad (5.3.21)$$

is the **mathematical error** involved in the interpolating polynomial. But, when we perform the calculations using finite precision floating-point arithmetic, then the polynomial obtained, denoted by  $\tilde{p}_n(x)$ , need not be the same as the interpolating polynomial  $p_n(x)$ . The error

$$\text{AE}_n(x) = p_n(x) - \tilde{p}_n(x). \quad (5.3.22)$$

is the **arithmetic error** involved in the interpolating polynomial.

The **total error**, denoted by  $\text{TE}_n(x)$ , involved in the polynomial interpolation is therefore given by

$$\text{TE}_n(x) = f(x) - \tilde{p}_n(x) = (f(x) - p_n(x)) + (p_n(x) - \tilde{p}_n(x)) = \text{ME}_n(x) + \text{AE}_n(x).$$

In Subsection 5.3.1, we derive the mathematical error involved in polynomial interpolation. We analyze the effect of arithmetic error in Subsection 5.3.2.

### 5.3.1 Mathematical Error

The following theorem provides a formula for the interpolation error when we assume that the necessary data are given exactly without any floating-point approximation.

**Theorem 5.26 (Mathematical Error in Interpolation).** *Let  $p_n(x)$  be the polynomial interpolating a function  $f \in C^{n+1}[a, b]$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  lying in  $I = [a, b]$ . Then for each  $x \in I$ , there exists a  $\xi_x \in (a, b)$  such that*

$$\text{ME}_n(x) = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x)}{(n+1)!} \prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i) \quad (5.3.23)$$

**Proof:** If  $x$  is one of the nodes, then (5.3.23) holds trivially for any choice of  $\xi_x \in (a, b)$ . Therefore, it is enough to prove the theorem when  $x$  is not a node. The idea is to obtain a function having at least  $n+2$  distinct zeros; and then apply Rolle's theorem  $n+1$  times to get the desired conclusion.

For a given  $x \in I$  with  $x \neq x_i$  ( $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ ), define a new function  $\psi$  on the interval  $I$  by

$$\psi(t) = f(t) - p_n(t) - \lambda \prod_{i=0}^n (t - x_i), \quad t \in I, \quad (5.3.24)$$

where  $\lambda$  is chosen so that  $\psi(x) = 0$ . This gives

$$\lambda = \frac{f(x) - p_n(x)}{\prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i)}.$$

Note that  $\psi(x_i) = 0$  for each  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . Thus,  $\psi$  has at least  $n+2$  distinct zeros. By Rolle's theorem, the function  $\psi'$  has at least  $n+1$  distinct zeros in  $(a, b)$ . A repeated application of Rolle's theorem  $n+1$  times to the function  $\psi$  gives that  $\psi^{(n+1)}$  has at least one zero in  $(a, b)$ ; call it  $\xi_x$ . Differentiating (5.3.24)  $(n+1)$ -times and noting that

$$p_n^{(n+1)}(t) = 0, \quad \left( \prod_{i=0}^n (t - x_i) \right)^{(n+1)} = (n+1)!, \quad \psi^{(n+1)}(\xi_x) = 0,$$

we see that  $\xi_x$  satisfies

$$0 = \psi^{(n+1)}(\xi_x) = f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x) - \frac{f(x) - p_n(x)}{\prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i)} (n+1)!.$$

Thus,



$$f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x) - \frac{\text{ME}_n(x)}{\prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i)} (n+1)! = 0.$$

The last equation yields (5.3.23).  $\square$

The following theorem plays an important role in the error analysis of numerical integration. The idea behind the proof of this theorem is similar to the idea used in the above theorem and is left as an exercise.

**Theorem 5.27.** *If  $f \in C^{n+1}[a, b]$  and if  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  are distinct nodes in  $[a, b]$ , then for any  $x \neq x_i, i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , there exists a point  $\xi_x \in (a, b)$  such that*

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x] = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x)}{(n+1)!}. \quad (5.3.25)$$

**Remark 5.28.** It is interesting to note that when all the nodes coincide, then (5.3.25) reduces to (14).  $\square$

**Definition 5.29 (Infinity Norm).**

*If  $f$  is continuous on a closed interval  $I = [a, b]$ , then the **infinity norm** of  $f$ , denoted by  $\|f\|_{\infty, I}$ , is defined as*

$$\|f\|_{\infty, I} = \max_{x \in I} |f(x)|. \quad (5.3.26)$$

**Example 5.30.** Let us obtain an upper bound of the mathematical error for the linear interpolating polynomial with respect to the infinity norm. As in Example 5.10, the linear interpolating polynomial for  $f$  at  $x_0$  and  $x_1$  ( $x_0 < x_1$ ) is given by

$$p_1(x) = f(x_0) + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0),$$

where  $f[x_0, x_1]$  is given by (5.2.10). For each  $x \in I := [x_0, x_1]$ , using the formula (5.3.23), the error  $\text{ME}_1(x)$  is given by

$$\text{ME}_1(x) = \frac{(x - x_0)(x - x_1)}{2} f''(\xi_x),$$

where  $\xi_x \in (x_0, x_1)$  depends on  $x$ . Therefore,

$$|\text{ME}_1(x)| \leq |(x - x_0)(x - x_1)| \frac{\|f''\|_{\infty, I}}{2}.$$

Note that the maximum value of  $|(x - x_0)(x - x_1)|$  as  $x$  varies in the interval  $[x_0, x_1]$ , occurs at  $x = (x_0 + x_1)/2$ . Therefore, we have

$$|(x - x_0)(x - x_1)| \leq \frac{(x_1 - x_0)^2}{4}.$$

Using this inequality, we get an upper bound

$$|\text{ME}_1(x)| \leq (x_1 - x_0)^2 \frac{\|f''\|_{\infty, I}}{8}, \text{ for all } x \in [x_0, x_1].$$

Note that the above inequality is true for all  $x \in [x_0, x_1]$ . In particular, this inequality is true for an  $x$  at which the function  $|\text{ME}_1|$  attains its maximum. Thus, we have

$$\|\text{ME}_1\|_{\infty, I} \leq (x_1 - x_0)^2 \frac{\|f''\|_{\infty, I}}{8}.$$

The right hand side quantity, which is a real number, is an upper bound for the mathematical error in linear interpolation with respect to the infinity norm.  $\square$

**Example 5.31.** Let the function

$$f(x) = \sin x$$

be approximated by an interpolating polynomial  $p_9(x)$  of degree less than or equal to 9 for  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_9$  in the interval  $I := [0, 1]$ . Let us obtain an upper bound for  $\|\text{ME}_9\|_{\infty, I}$ , where (from (5.3.23))

$$\text{ME}_9(x) = \frac{f^{(10)}(\xi_x)}{10!} \prod_{i=0}^9 (x - x_i).$$

Since  $|f^{(10)}(\xi_x)| \leq 1$  and  $\prod_{i=0}^9 |x - x_i| \leq 1$ , we have

$$|\sin x - p_9(x)| = |\text{ME}_9(x)| \leq \frac{1}{10!} < 2.8 \times 10^{-7}, \text{ for all } x \in [0, 1].$$

Since this holds for all  $x \in [0, 1]$ , we have

$$\|\text{ME}_9\|_{\infty, I} < 2.8 \times 10^{-7}.$$

The right hand side number is the upper bound for the mathematical error  $\text{ME}_9$  with respect to the infinity norm on the interval  $I$   $\square$

### 5.3.2 Arithmetic Error

Quite often, the polynomial interpolation that we compute is based on the function data subjected to floating-point approximation. In this subsection, we analyze the arithmetic error arising due to the floating-point approximation  $\text{fl}(f(x_i))$  of  $f(x_i)$  for each node point  $x_i, i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  in the interval  $I = [a, b]$ .

The Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial that uses the values  $\text{fl}(f(x_i))$  instead of  $f(x_i), i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  is given by

$$\tilde{p}_n(x) = \sum_{i=0}^n \mathfrak{f}(f(x_i)) l_i(x).$$

We now analyze the arithmetic error. Denoting

$$\epsilon_i := f(x_i) - \mathfrak{f}(f(x_i)); \quad \|\epsilon\|_\infty = \max\{|\epsilon_i| : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\},$$

we have

$$|\text{AE}_n(x)| = |p_n(x) - \tilde{p}_n(x)| = \left| \sum_{i=0}^n \left( f(x_i) - \mathfrak{f}(f(x_i)) \right) l_i(x) \right| \leq \|\epsilon\|_\infty \sum_{i=0}^n \|l_i\|_{\infty, I},$$

for all  $x \in I$ . Therefore,

$$\|\text{AE}_n\|_{\infty, I} = \|p_n - \tilde{p}_n\|_{\infty, I} \leq \|\epsilon\|_\infty \sum_{i=0}^n \|l_i\|_{\infty, I}. \quad (5.3.27)$$

The upper bound in (5.3.27) might grow quite large as  $n$  increases, especially when the nodes are equally spaced as we will study now.

Assume that the nodes are equally spaced in the interval  $[a, b]$ , with  $x_0 = a$  and  $x_n = b$ , and  $x_{i+1} - x_i = h$  for all  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$ . Note that  $h = (b-a)/n$ . We write

$$x_i = a + ih, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

Any  $x \in I$  can be written as

$$x = a + \eta h,$$

where  $0 \leq \eta \leq n$ . Here  $\eta$  is not necessarily an integer. Therefore, for any  $x \in I$ , we have

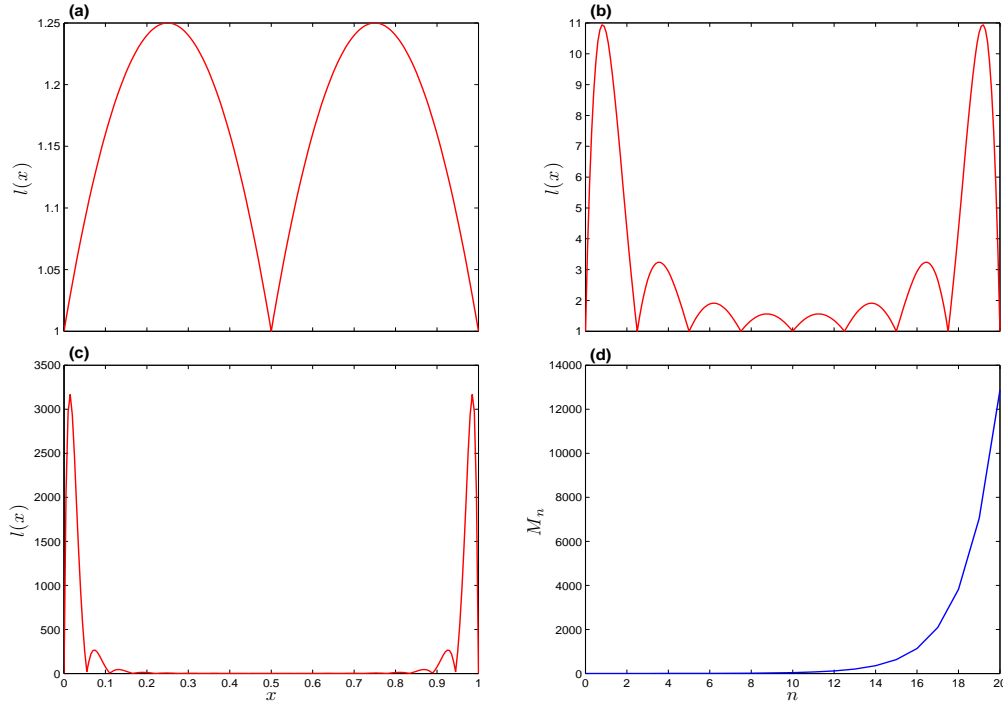
$$l_k(x) = \prod_{\substack{i=0 \\ i \neq k}}^n \frac{(x - x_i)}{(x_k - x_i)} = \prod_{\substack{i=0 \\ i \neq k}}^n \frac{(\eta - i)}{(k - i)}, \quad k = 0, \dots, n.$$

Clearly, the Lagrange polynomials are not dependent on the choice of  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $h$ . They depend entirely on  $n$  and  $\eta$  (which depends on  $x$ ). The Figure 5.2 (a), (b) and (c) shows the function

$$l(x) = \sum_{i=0}^n |l_i(x)| \quad (5.3.28)$$

for  $n = 2, 8$  and  $18$ . It is observed that as  $n$  increases, the maximum of the function  $l$  increases. In fact, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the maximum of  $l$  tends to infinity and it is observed in Figure 5.2 (d) which depicts  $n$  in the  $x$ -axis and the function

$$M_n = \sum_{i=0}^n \|l_i\|_{\infty, I} \quad (5.3.29)$$



**Fig. 5.2.** (a) to (c) depicts the graph of function  $l$  given by (5.3.28) for  $x \in [0, 1]$  when  $n = 2, 8,$  and  $18$ . (d) depicts the function  $n$  in the  $x$ -axis and  $M_n$  given by (5.3.29) in the  $y$ -axis.

in the  $y$ -axis, which shows that the upper bound of the arithmetic error  $AE_n$  given in (5.3.27) tends to infinity as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . This gives the possibility that the arithmetic may tend to increase as  $n$  increases. Thus, as we increase the degree of the interpolating polynomial, the approximation may go worse due to the presence of floating-point approximation. In fact, this behavior of the arithmetic error in polynomial interpolation can also be analyzed theoretically, but this is outside the scope of the present course.

### 5.3.3 Total Error

Let us now estimate the total error, which is given by

$$TE_n(x) = f(x) - \tilde{p}_n(x) = (f(x) - p_n(x)) + (p_n(x) - \tilde{p}_n(x)). \quad (5.3.30)$$

Taking infinity norm on both sides of the equation (5.3.30) and using triangle inequality, we get

$$\|TE_n(x)\|_{\infty, I} = \|f - \tilde{p}\|_{\infty, I} \leq \|f - p_n\|_{\infty, I} + \|p_n - \tilde{p}\|_{\infty, I} \leq \|f - p_n\|_{\infty, I} + \|\epsilon\|_{\infty} M_n.$$

It is clear from the Figure 5.2 (d) that  $M_n$  increases exponentially with respect to  $n$ . This implies that even if  $\|\epsilon\|_{\infty}$  is very small, a large enough  $n$  can bring in a significantly large error in the interpolating polynomial.

Thus, for a given function and a set of equally spaced nodes, even if the mathematical error is bounded, the presence of floating-point approximation in the given data can lead to significantly large arithmetic error for larger values of  $n$ .

### 5.3.4 Runge Phenomenon

In the previous section, we have seen that even a small arithmetic error may lead to a drastic magnification of total error as we go on increasing the degree of the polynomial. This gives us a feeling that if the calculation is done with infinite precision (that is, without any finite digit floating point arithmetic) and the function  $f$  is smooth, then we always have a better approximation for a larger value of  $n$ . In other words, we expect

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f - p_n\|_{\infty, I} = 0.$$

But this is not true in the case of equally spaced nodes. This was first shown by Carl Runge, where he discovered that there are certain functions for which, as we go on increasing the degree of interpolating polynomial, the total error increases drastically and the corresponding interpolating polynomial oscillates near the boundary of the interval in which the interpolation is done. Such a phenomenon is called the **Runge Phenomenon**. This phenomenon is well understood by the following example given by Runge.

**Example 5.32 (Runge's Function).** Consider the **Runge's function** defined on the interval  $[-1, 1]$  given by

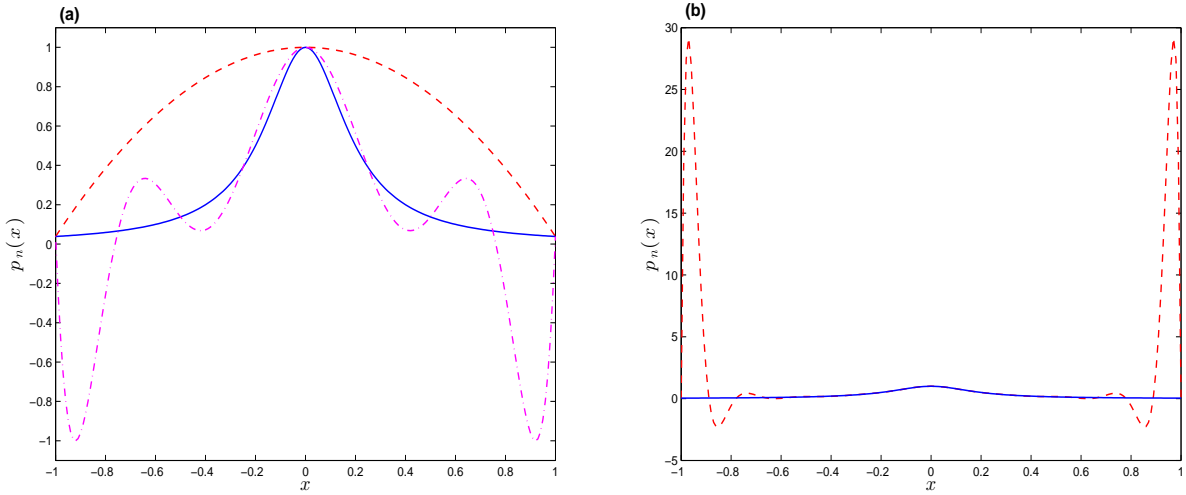
$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1 + 25x^2}. \quad (5.3.31)$$

The interpolating polynomials with  $n = 2$ ,  $n = 8$  and  $n = 18$  are depicted in Figure 5.3. This figure clearly shows that as we increase the degree of the polynomial, the interpolating polynomial differs significantly from the actual function especially, near the end points of the interval.  $\square$

In the light of the discussion made in Subsection 5.3.2, we may think that the Runge phenomenon is due to the amplification of the arithmetic error. But, even if the calculation is done with infinite precision (that is, without any finite digit floating point arithmetic), we may still have the Runge phenomenon due to the amplification in mathematical error. This can be observed by taking infinity norm on both sides of the formula (5.3.23). This gives the upper bound of the infinity norm of  $ME_n(x)$  as

$$\|ME_n\|_{\infty, I} \leq \frac{(b-a)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \|f^{(n+1)}\|_{\infty, I}.$$

Although the first part,  $(b-a)^{n+1}/(n+1)!$  in the upper bound tends to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , if the second part,  $\|f^{(n+1)}\|_{\infty, I}$  increases significantly as  $n$  increases, then the upper



**Fig. 5.3.** Runge Phenomenon is illustrated. Figure (a) depicts the graph of the function  $f$  given by (5.3.31) (blue solid line) along with the interpolating polynomial of degree 2 (red dash line) and 8 (magenta dash dot line) with equally spaced nodes. Figure (b) shows the graph of  $f$  (blue solid line) along with the interpolating polynomial of degree 18 (red dash line) with equally spaced nodes.

bound can still increase and makes it possible for the mathematical error to be quite high.

A more deeper analysis is required to understand the Runge phenomenon more rigorously. But this is outside the scope of this course and therefore is omitted.

### 5.3.5 Convergence of Sequence of Interpolating Polynomials

We end this section by stating without proof a positive and a negative result concerning the convergence of sequence of interpolating polynomials.

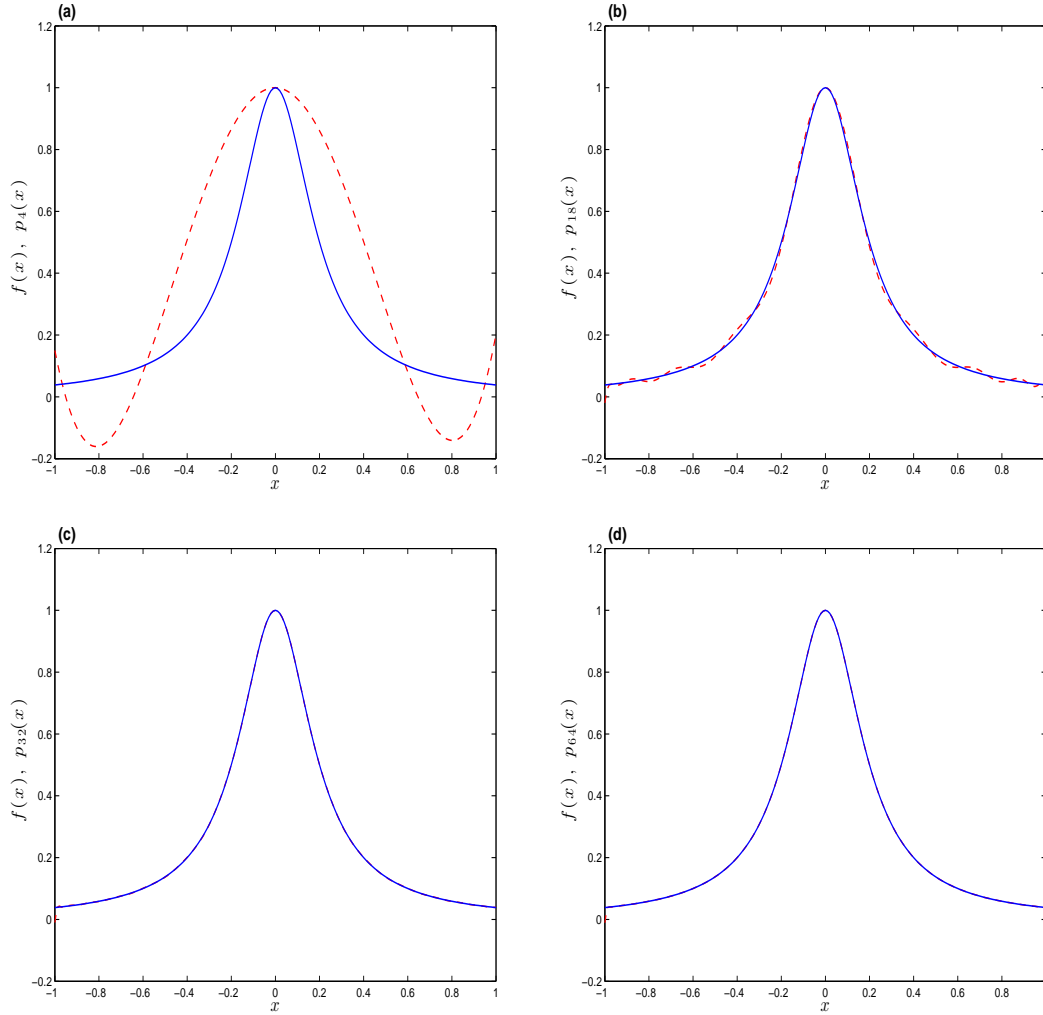
**Theorem 5.33 (Faber).** *For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , let the sequence of nodes*

$$a \leq x_0^{(n)} < x_1^{(n)} < \cdots < x_n^{(n)} \leq b$$

*be given. Then there exists a continuous function  $f$  defined on the interval  $[a, b]$  such that the polynomials  $p_n(x)$  that interpolate the function  $f$  at these nodes have the property that  $\|p_n - f\|_{\infty, [a, b]}$  **does not** tend to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .*

**Example 5.34.** In fact, the interpolating polynomial  $p_n(x)$  for the Runge's function goes worse and worse as shown in Figure 5.3 for increasing values of  $n$  with equally spaced nodes. That is,  $\|f - p_n\|_{\infty, [-1, 1]} \rightarrow \infty$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  for any sequence of equally spaced nodes.

Let us now state a positive result concerning the convergence of sequence of interpolating polynomials to a given continuous function.



**Fig. 5.4.** Runge Phenomenon is illustrated with Chebyshev nodes. Figure (a) to (d) shows the graph of the Runge function (blue solid line) and the interpolating polynomial with Chebyshev nodes (red dash line) for  $n = 4, 18, 32$  and  $64$  respectively. Note that the two graphs in Figure (c) and (d) are indistinguishable.

**Theorem 5.35.** *Let  $f$  be a continuous function on the interval  $[a, b]$ . Then for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists a sequence of nodes*

$$a \leq x_0^{(n)} < x_1^{(n)} < \cdots < x_n^{(n)} \leq b$$

*such that the polynomials  $p_n(x)$  that interpolate the function  $f$  at these nodes satisfy  $\|p_n - f\|_{\infty, [a, b]} \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .*

**Example 5.36.** The Theorem 5.35 is very interesting because it implies that for the Runge's function, we can find a sequence of nodes for which the corresponding interpolating polynomial yields a good approximation even for a large value of  $n$ . For instance, define a sequence of nodes

$$x_i^{(n)} = \cos\left(\frac{(2i+1)\pi}{2(n+1)}\right), i = 0, 1, \dots, n \quad (5.3.32)$$

for each  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ . When  $n = 4$ , the nodes are  $x_0^{(4)} = \cos(\pi/10)$ ,  $x_1^{(4)} = \cos(3\pi/10)$ ,  $x_2^{(4)} = \cos(5\pi/10)$ ,  $x_3^{(4)} = \cos(7\pi/10)$  and  $x_4^{(4)} = \cos(9\pi/10)$ . The nodes  $x_i^{(n)}$  defined by (5.3.32) are called **Chebyshev nodes**.

Figure 5.4 depicts  $p_n(x)$  for  $n = 4, 18, 32$ , and  $64$  along with the Runge's function. From these figures, we observe that the interpolating polynomial  $p_n(x)$  agrees well with the Runge's function.  $\square$

## 5.4 Piecewise Polynomial Interpolation

Quite often polynomial interpolation will be unsatisfactory as an approximation tool. This is true if we insist on letting the order of the polynomial get larger and larger. However, if we keep the order of the polynomial fixed, and use different polynomials over different intervals, with the length of the intervals getting smaller and smaller, then the resulting interpolating function approximates the given function more accurately.

Let us start with linear interpolation over an interval  $I = [a, b]$  which leads to

$$p_1(x) = f(a) + f[a, b](x - a) = f(a) + \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a) = \frac{x - b}{a - b}f(a) + \frac{x - a}{b - a}f(b),$$

where the nodes are  $x_0 = a$ ,  $x_2 = b$ . In addition to these two nodes, we now choose one more point  $x_1$  such that  $x_0 < x_1 < x_2$ . With these three nodes, can obtain a quadratic interpolation polynomial. Instead, we can interpolate the function  $f(x)$  in  $[x_0, x_1]$  by a linear polynomial with nodes  $x_0$  and  $x_1$ , and in  $[x_1, x_2]$  by another linear polynomial with nodes  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ . Such polynomials are given by

$$p_{1,1}(x) := \frac{x - x_1}{x_0 - x_1}f(x_0) + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0}f(x_1), \quad p_{1,2}(x) := \frac{x - x_2}{x_1 - x_2}f(x_1) + \frac{x - x_1}{x_2 - x_1}f(x_2)$$

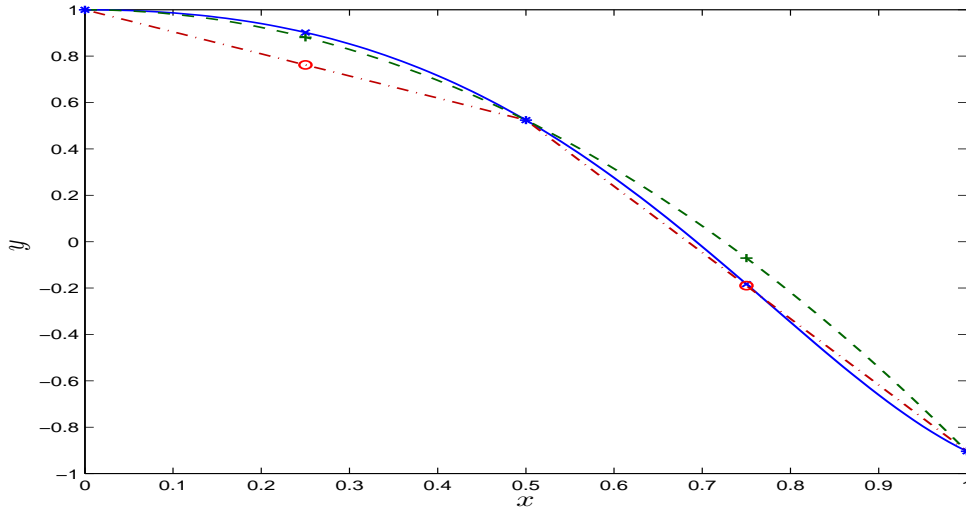
and the interpolating function is given by

$$s(x) = \begin{cases} p_{1,1}(x), & x \in [x_0, x_1] \\ p_{1,2}(x), & x \in [x_1, x_2] \end{cases}.$$

Note that  $s(x)$  is a continuous function on  $[x_0, x_2]$ , which interpolates  $f(x)$  and is linear in  $[x_0, x_1]$  and  $[x_1, x_2]$ . Such an interpolating function is called **piecewise linear interpolating function**.

In a similar way as done above, we can also obtain piecewise quadratic, cubic interpolating functions and so on.





**Fig. 5.5.** The function  $f(x) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}e^x\right)$  (blue line),  $p_2(x)$  (green dash line) and the piecewise linear interpolation  $s(x)$  (red dash and dot line) are shown. Blue dots represent the given data, blue 'x' symbol indicates the value of  $f(0.25)$  and  $f(0.75)$ , green '+' symbol indicates the value of  $p_2(0.25)$  and  $p_2(0.75)$ , and the red 'O' symbol represents the value of  $s(0.25)$  and  $s(0.75)$ .

**Example 5.37.** Consider the Example 5.1, where we have obtained the quadratic interpolating polynomial for the function

$$f(x) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}e^x\right).$$

The piecewise linear polynomial interpolating function for the data

$x$	0	0.5	1
$f(x)$	1.0000	0.5242	-0.9037

is given by

$$s(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - 0.9516x & , x \in [0, 0.5] \\ 1.9521 - 2.8558x & , x \in [0.5, 1]. \end{cases}$$

The following table shows the value of the function  $f$  at  $x = 0.25$  and  $x = 0.75$  along with the values of  $p_2(x)$  and  $s(x)$  with relative errors.

$x$	$f(x)$	$p_2(x)$	$s(x)$	$E_r(p_2(x))$	$E_r(s(x))$
0.25	0.902117	0.881117	0.762105	0.023278	0.155203
0.75	-0.182750	-0.070720	-0.189732	0.613022	0.038204

Figure 5.5 depicts the graph of  $f$ ,  $p_2(x)$  and  $s(x)$ . In this figure, we observe that the quadratic polynomial  $p_2(x)$  agrees well with  $f(x)$  than  $s(x)$  for  $x \in [0, 0.5]$ , whereas  $s(x)$  agrees well with  $f(x)$  than  $p_2(x)$  for  $x \in [0.5, 1]$ .  $\square$

## 5.5 Spline Interpolation

Although a piecewise interpolating function introduced in Section 5.4 is continuous, it may not be differentiable at the nodes. We wish to find an interpolating function that is sufficiently smooth and does a better approximation to  $f(x)$ . This can be achieved by **spline interpolation**.

**Definition 5.38 (Spline Interpolating Function).**

A **spline interpolating function of degree  $d$  with nodes  $x_i, i = 0, 1, \dots, n$**  ( $x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n$ ) is a function  $s(x)$  with the following properties

- (1) On each subinterval  $[x_{i-1}, x_i], i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ,  $s(x)$  is a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $d$ .
- (2)  $s(x)$  and its first  $(d - 1)$  derivatives are continuous on  $[x_0, x_n]$ .
- (3) The interpolation conditions  $s(x_i) = f(x_i), i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  are satisfied.

We shall now study how we can obtain the interpolation of a function  $f$  as spline interpolating functions instead of polynomials. For the sake of simplicity, we restrict only to  $d = 3$ , called the **cubic spline interpolating function**.

**Remark 5.39.** Note that in each subinterval  $[x_{i-1}, x_i], i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , we only know  $f(x_{i-1})$  and  $f(x_i)$ . But we look for a cubic polynomial in this subinterval. Therefore, we cannot follow the Lagrange's or Newton's interpolating formula, as these formulas demand the function values at four distinct nodes in the subinterval. We need to adopt a different method for the construction of the polynomial in each subinterval in order to obtain the spline interpolation.  $\square$

### Construction of a Cubic Spline

The construction of a cubic spline interpolating function  $s(x)$  of a function  $f(x)$  is as follows:

**Step 1:** Let us denote by  $M_1, \dots, M_n$ ,

$$M_i = s''(x_i), \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

and first obtain  $s(x)$  in terms of  $M_i$ 's which are unknowns.

**Step 2:** Since  $s(x)$  is cubic on each  $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ , the function  $s''(x)$  is linear on the interval such that

$$s''(x_{i-1}) = M_{i-1}, \quad s''(x_i) = M_i.$$

Therefore, it is given by

$$s''(x) = \frac{(x_i - x)M_{i-1} + (x - x_{i-1})M_i}{x_i - x_{i-1}}, \quad x_{i-1} \leq x \leq x_i \quad (5.5.33)$$

Integrating (5.5.33) two times with respect to  $x$ , we get

$$s(x) = \frac{(x_i - x)^3 M_{i-1}}{6(x_i - x_{i-1})} + \frac{(x - x_{i-1})^3 M_i}{6(x_i - x_{i-1})} + K_1 x + K_2,$$

where  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  are integrating constants to be determined by using the interpolation conditions  $s(x_{i-1}) = f(x_{i-1})$  and  $s(x_i) = f(x_i)$ . We have

$$K_1 = \frac{f(x_i) - f(x_{i-1})}{x_i - x_{i-1}} - \frac{(M_i - M_{i-1})(x_i - x_{i-1})}{6}$$

$$K_2 = \frac{x_i f(x_{i-1}) - x_{i-1} f(x_i)}{x_i - x_{i-1}} - \frac{(M_{i-1} x_i - M_i x_{i-1})(x_i - x_{i-1})}{6}$$

Substituting these values in the above equation, we get

$$s(x) = \frac{(x_i - x)^3 M_{i-1} + (x - x_{i-1})^3 M_i}{6(x_i - x_{i-1})} + \frac{(x_i - x)f(x_{i-1}) + (x - x_{i-1})f(x_i)}{x_i - x_{i-1}} - \frac{1}{6}(x_i - x_{i-1})[(x_i - x)M_{i-1} + (x - x_{i-1})M_i], \quad x_{i-1} \leq x \leq x_i \quad (5.5.34)$$

Formula (5.5.34) applies to each of the intervals  $[x_1, x_2], \dots, [x_{n-1}, x_n]$ . The formulas for adjacent intervals  $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$  and  $[x_i, x_{i+1}]$  will agree at their common point  $x = x_i$  because of the interpolating condition  $s(x_i) = f(x_i)$ . This implies that  $s(x)$  is continuous over the entire interval  $[a, b]$ . Similarly, formula (5.5.33) for  $s''(x)$  implies that it is continuous on  $[a, b]$ .

**Step 3:** All that remains is to find the values of  $M_i$  for all  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . This is obtained by ensuring the continuity of  $s'(x)$  over  $[a, b]$ , ie., the formula for  $s'(x)$  on  $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$  and  $[x_i, x_{i+1}]$  are required to give the same value at their common point  $x = x_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$ . After simplification, we get the system of linear equations for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x_i - x_{i-1}}{6} M_{i-1} + \frac{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}}{3} M_i + \frac{x_{i+1} - x_i}{6} M_{i+1} \\ = \frac{f(x_{i+1}) - f(x_i)}{x_{i+1} - x_i} - \frac{f(x_i) - f(x_{i-1})}{x_i - x_{i-1}}. \end{aligned} \quad (5.5.35)$$

These  $n-1$  equations together with the assumption that

$$M_0 = M_n = 0 \quad (5.5.36)$$

leads to the values of  $M_0, M_1, \dots, M_n$  and hence to the interpolation function  $s(x)$ .

A spline constructed above is called a **natural spline**.

**Example 5.40.** Calculate the natural cubic spline interpolating the data

$$\left\{ (1, 1), \left(2, \frac{1}{2}\right), \left(3, \frac{1}{3}\right), \left(4, \frac{1}{4}\right) \right\}.$$

The number of points is  $n = 3$  and  $x_i - x_{i-1} = 1$ , for  $x = 1, 2, 3$ .

**Step 1:** Here, we have

$$M_0 = s''(1), \quad M_1 = s''(2), \quad M_2 = s''(3), \quad M_3 = s''(4).$$

**Step 2:** The function  $s''(x)$  is given by

$$s''(x) = \begin{cases} (2-x)M_0 + (x-1)M_1, & x \in [1, 2] \\ (3-x)M_1 + (x-2)M_2, & x \in [2, 3] \\ (4-x)M_2 + (x-3)M_3, & x \in [3, 4] \end{cases}.$$

Integrating  $s''(x)$  two times with respect to  $x$ , we get

$$s(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{(2-x)^3 M_0}{6} + \frac{(x-1)^3 M_1}{6} + K_1 x + K_2, & x \in [1, 2] \\ \frac{(3-x)^3 M_1}{6} + \frac{(x-2)^3 M_2}{6} + K_1 x + K_2, & x \in [2, 3] \\ \frac{(4-x)^3 M_2}{6} + \frac{(x-3)^3 M_3}{6} + K_1 x + K_2, & x \in [3, 4] \end{cases}.$$

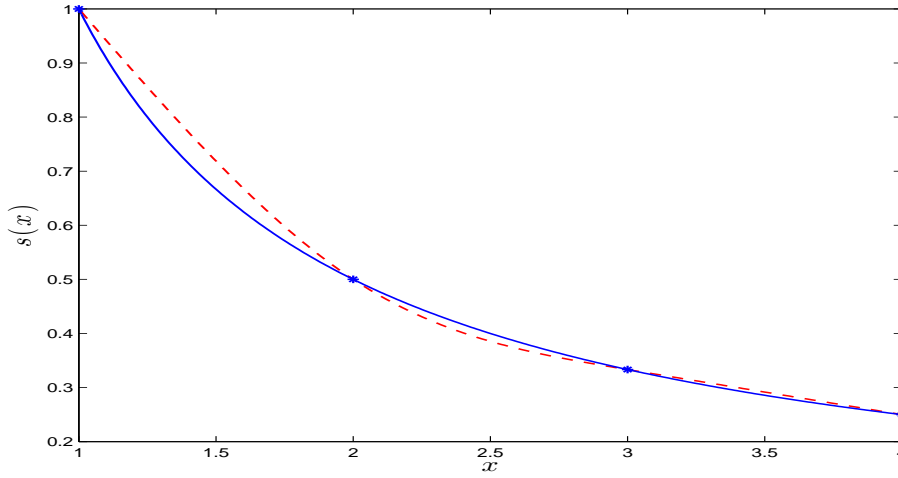
where  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  are integrating constants to be determined by using the conditions  $s(x_{i-1}) = f(x_{i-1})$  and  $s(x_i) = f(x_i)$ . We have

$$K_1 = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{(M_1 - M_0)}{6}, & x \in [1, 2] \\ -\frac{1}{6} - \frac{(M_2 - M_1)}{6}, & x \in [2, 3] \\ -\frac{1}{12} - \frac{(M_3 - M_2)}{6}, & x \in [3, 4] \end{cases}.$$

$$K_2 = \begin{cases} \frac{3}{2} - \frac{2M_0 - M_1}{6}, & x \in [1, 2] \\ \frac{5}{6} - \frac{3M_1 - 2M_2}{6}, & x \in [2, 3] \\ \frac{7}{12} - \frac{4M_2 - 3M_3}{6}, & x \in [3, 4] \end{cases}.$$

Substituting these expressions in the expression of  $s(x)$ , we get the required cubic spline as given in (5.5.34).

**Step 3:** Since we are constructing the natural spline, we take  $M_0 = M_3 = 0$ . The



**Fig. 5.6.** The function  $f(x) = 1/x$  (blue line) and the corresponding cubic natural spline interpolating function  $s(x)$  (red dash line) are shown. The data are represented by blue dots.

system (5.5.35) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2}{3}M_1 + \frac{1}{6}M_2 &= \frac{1}{3}, \\ \frac{1}{6}M_1 + \frac{2}{3}M_2 &= \frac{1}{12}. \end{aligned}$$

Solving this system, we get  $M_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $M_2 = 0$ . Substituting these values into (5.5.34), we obtain

$$s(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{12}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x^2 - \frac{1}{3}x + \frac{3}{2}, & x \in [1, 2] \\ -\frac{1}{12}x^3 + \frac{3}{4}x^2 - \frac{7}{3}x + \frac{17}{6}, & x \in [2, 3] \\ -\frac{1}{12}x + \frac{7}{12}, & x \in [3, 4] \end{cases}$$

which is the required natural cubic spline approximation to the given data. A comparison result is depicted in Figure 5.6.  $\square$

## 5.6 Exercises

### Polynomial Interpolation

- (1) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be distinct nodes. If  $p(x)$  is a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $n$ , then show that

$$p(x) = \sum_{i=0}^n p(x_i) l_i(x),$$

where  $l_i(x)$  is the  $i^{\text{th}}$  Lagrange polynomial.

- (2) Show that the polynomial  $1 + x + 2x^2$  is an interpolating polynomial for the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline y & 1 & 4 & 11 \end{array}.$$

Find an interpolating polynomial for the new data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ \hline y & 1 & 4 & 11 & -2 \end{array}.$$

Does there exist a quadratic polynomial that satisfies the new data? Justify your answer.

- (3) The quadratic polynomial  $p_2(x) = \frac{3}{4}x^2 + \frac{1}{4}x + \frac{1}{2}$  interpolates the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline y & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{2} \end{array}.$$

Find a node  $x_3$  ( $x_3 \notin \{-1, 0, 1\}$ ), and a real number  $y_3$  such that the polynomial  $p_3(x)$  interpolating the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & -1 & 0 & 1 & x_3 \\ \hline y & 1 & 1/2 & 3/2 & y_3 \end{array}$$

is a polynomial of degree less than or equal to 2. **(Quiz 1, Spring 2012)**

- (4) Let  $p(x)$ ,  $q(x)$ , and  $r(x)$  be interpolating polynomials for the three sets of data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c} x & 0 & 1 \\ \hline y & y_0 & y_1 \end{array}, \begin{array}{c|c|c} x & 0 & 2 \\ \hline y & y_0 & y_2 \end{array}, \text{ and } \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ \hline y & y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \end{array}$$

respectively. Let  $s(x)$  be the the interpolating polynomial for the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ \hline y & y_0 & y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \end{array}.$$

If

$$p(x) = 1 + 2x, \quad q(x) = 1 + x, \quad \text{and} \quad r(2.5) = 3,$$

then find the value of  $s(2.5)$ . **(Quiz 1, Spring 2012)**

- (5) Obtain Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial for equally spaced nodes.

- (6) Using Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial for the function  $g(x) = 3x^2 + x + 1$ , express the rational function

$$f(x) = \frac{3x^2 + x + 1}{(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)}$$

as a sum of partial fractions.

- (7) Find the Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial for the data:

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & -2 & -1 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline y & -1 & 3 & -1 & 19 \end{array}$$

- (8) Find the Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial  $p_2(x)$  that interpolates the function  $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$  at the nodes  $x_0 = -1$ ,  $x_1 = 0$  and  $x_2 = 1$ . Further, find the value of  $p_2(-0.9)$  (use 6-digit rounding). Compare the value with the true value  $f(-0.9)$  (use 6-digit rounding). Find the percentage error in this calculation.

- (9) Find the Newton form of interpolating polynomial for the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c} x & -3 & -1 & 0 & 3 & 5 \\ \hline y & -30 & -22 & -12 & 330 & 3458 \end{array}.$$

### Newton's Divided Difference Formula

- (10) For the particular function  $f(x) = x^m$  ( $m \in \mathbb{N}$ ), show that

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = m \\ 0 & \text{if } n > m \end{cases}$$

- (11) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be nodes, and  $f$  be a given function. Define  $w(x) = \prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i)$ . Prove that

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] = \sum_{i=0}^n \frac{f(x_i)}{w'(x_i)}.$$

- (12) Calculate the  $n^{\text{th}}$  divided difference  $f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n]$  of  $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$ .

- (13) The following data correspond to a polynomial  $P(x)$  of unknown degree

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline P(x) & 2 & -1 & 4 \end{array}.$$

Determine the coefficient of  $x$  in the polynomial  $P(x)$  if all the third order divided differences are 1.

- (14) Let  $f$  be  $n$  times continuously differentiable function on the interval  $[a, b]$ . For any  $x \in [a, b]$ , show that the  $n^{\text{th}}$  order divided difference  $f[\underbrace{x, x, \dots, x}_{(n+1)\text{-times}}]$  is given

by

$$f[\underbrace{x, x, \dots, x}_{(n+1)\text{-times}}] = \frac{f^{(n)}(x)}{n!}.$$

- (15) For the function  $f(x) = \sin(\pi x)$ , find the value of  $f[1/2, 0, 1, 1/2]$ .

### Error in Polynomial Interpolation

- (16) Prove that if we take any set of 23 nodes in the interval  $[-1, 1]$  and interpolate the function  $f(x) = \cosh x$  with a polynomial  $p_{22}$  of degree less than or equal to 22, then at each  $x \in [-1, 1]$  the relative error satisfies the bound

$$\frac{|f(x) - p_{22}(x)|}{|f(x)|} \leq 5 \times 10^{-16}.$$

- (17) Let  $p_n(x)$  be a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $n$  that interpolates a function  $f$  at a set of distinct nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ . If  $x \notin \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ , then show that the error is given by

$$f(x) - p_n(x) = f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x] \prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i).$$

- (18) If  $f \in C^{n+1}[a, b]$  and if  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  are distinct nodes in  $[a, b]$ , then show that there exists a point  $\xi_x \in (a, b)$  such that

$$f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x] = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x)}{(n+1)!}$$

- (19) Let  $N$  be a natural number. Let  $p_1(x)$  denote the linear interpolating polynomial on the interval  $[N, N+1]$  interpolating the function  $f(x) = x^2$  at the nodes  $N$  and  $N+1$ . Find an upper bound for the mathematical error  $\text{ME}_1$  using the infinity norm on the interval  $[N, N+1]$  (i.e.,  $\|\text{ME}_1\|_{\infty, [N, N+1]}$ ).
- (20) Let  $p_3(x)$  denote a polynomial of degree less than or equal to 3 that interpolates the function  $f(x) = \ln x$  at the nodes  $x_0 = 1$ ,  $x_1 = \frac{4}{3}$ ,  $x_2 = \frac{5}{3}$ ,  $x_3 = 2$ . Find a lower bound on the absolute value of mathematical error  $|\text{ME}_3(x)|$  at the point  $x = \frac{3}{2}$ , using the formula for mathematical error in interpolation.



- (21) Let  $f : [0, \frac{\pi}{6}] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a given function. The following is the meaning for the **Cubic interpolation in a table of function values** (Final Exam, Spring 2012)

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & x_0 & x_1 & \cdots & x_N \\ \hline f(x) & f(x_0) & f(x_1) & \cdots & f(x_N) \end{array}$$

The values of  $f(x)$  are tabulated for a set of equally spaced points in  $[a, b]$ , say  $x_i$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, N$  with  $x_0 = 0, x_N = \frac{\pi}{6}$ , and  $h = x_{i+1} - x_i > 0$  for every  $i = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For an  $\bar{x} \in [0, \frac{\pi}{6}]$  at which the function value  $f(\bar{x})$  is not tabulated, the value of  $f(\bar{x})$  is taken to be the value of  $p_3(\bar{x})$ , where  $p_3(x)$  is the polynomial of degree less than or equal to 3 that interpolates  $f$  at the nodes  $x_i, x_{i+1}, x_{i+2}, x_{i+3}$  where  $i$  is the least index such that  $x \in [x_i, x_{i+3}]$ .

Take  $f(x) = \sin x$  for  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{6}]$ ; and answer the following questions.

- (i) When  $\bar{x}$  and  $p_3$  are as described above, then show that  $|f(\bar{x}) - p_3(\bar{x})| \leq \frac{h^4}{48}$ .
- (ii) If  $h = 0.005$ , then show that cubic interpolation in the table of function values yields the value of  $f(\bar{x})$  with at least 10 decimal-place accuracy.
- (22) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be  $n + 1$  distinct nodes, and  $f$  be a function. For each  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , let  $\text{fl}(f(x_i))$  denote the floating point approximation of  $f(x_i)$  obtained by rounding to 5 decimal places (note this is different from using 5-digit rounding). Assume that  $0.1 \leq f(x_i) < 1$  for all  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . Let  $p_n(x)$  denote the Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial corresponding to the data  $\{(x_i, f(x_i)) : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$ . Let  $\tilde{p}_n(x)$  denote the Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial corresponding to the data  $\{(x_i, \text{fl}(f(x_i))) : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$ . Show that the arithmetic error at a point  $\tilde{x}$  satisfies the inequality

$$|p_n(\tilde{x}) - \tilde{p}_n(\tilde{x})| \leq \frac{1}{2} 10^{-5} \sum_{k=0}^n |l_k(\tilde{x})|.$$

## Spline Interpolation

- (23) Find a natural cubic spline interpolating function for the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline y & 5 & 7 & 9 \end{array}.$$

- (24) Determine whether the natural cubic spline function that interpolates the table

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} x & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline y & -3 & -1 & -1 \end{array}$$

is or is not the function

$$S(x) = \begin{cases} x^3 + x - 1 & x \in [-1, 0], \\ x^3 - x - 1 & x \in [0, 1]. \end{cases}$$

- (25) Determine whether the coefficients  $a, b, c, d$  exist so that the function

$$S(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - 2x & x \in [-4, -3] \\ a + bx + cx^2 + dx^3 & x \in [-3, 4] \\ 157 - 32x & x \in [4, 5] \end{cases}$$

is a natural cubic spline interpolating function on the interval  $[-4, 5]$  for the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & -4 & -3 & 4 & 5 \\ \hline y & 9 & 7 & 29 & -3 \end{array}.$$

- (26) Does there exist real numbers  $a$  and  $b$  so that the function

$$S(x) = \begin{cases} (x - 2)^3 + a(x - 1)^2 & x \in [-1, 2] \\ (x - 2)^3 - (x - 3)^2 & x \in [2, 3] \\ (x - 3)^3 + b(x - 2)^2 & x \in [3, 5] \end{cases}$$

is a natural cubic spline interpolating function on the interval  $[-1, 5]$  for the data

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} x & -1 & 2 & 3 & 5 \\ \hline y & -31 & -1 & 1 & 17 \end{array}?$$

- (27) Show that the natural cubic spline interpolation function for a given data is unique.



## CHAPTER 6

---

### Numerical Integration and Differentiation

There are two reasons for approximating derivatives and integrals of a function  $f(x)$ . One is when the function is very difficult to differentiate or integrate, or only the tabular values are available for the function. Another reason is to obtain solution of a differential or integral equation. In this chapter we introduce some basic methods to approximate integral and derivative of a function either explicitly or by tabulated values.

In Section 6.1, we obtain numerical methods for evaluating the integral of a given integrable function  $f$  defined on the interval  $[a, b]$ . Section 6.2 introduces various ways to obtain numerical formulas for approximating derivatives of a given differentiable function.

#### 6.1 Numerical Integration

In this section we derive and analyze numerical methods for evaluating definite integrals. The problem is to evaluate the number

$$I(f) = \int_a^b f(x)dx. \quad (6.1.1)$$

Most such integrals cannot be evaluated explicitly, and with many others, it is faster to integrate numerically than explicitly. The process of approximating the value of  $I(f)$  is usually referred to as **numerical integration** or **quadrature**.

The idea behind numerical integration is to approximate the integrand  $f$  by a simpler function that can be integrated easily. One obvious approximation is the interpolation by polynomials. Thus, we approximate  $I(f)$  by  $I(p_n)$ , where  $p_n(x)$  is the interpolating polynomial for the integrand  $f$  at some appropriately chosen nodes  $x_0, \dots, x_n$ . The general form of the approximation is

$$I(f) \approx I(p_n) = w_0f(x_0) + w_1f(x_1) + \dots + w_nf(x_n),$$

where the **weights** are given by

$$w_i = I(l_i),$$

with  $l_i(x)$  the  $i^{\text{th}}$  Lagrange polynomial.

Without going through interpolation, now propose a general formula

$$I(f) \approx w_0 f(x_0) + w_1 f(x_1) + \cdots + w_n f(x_n), \quad (6.1.2)$$

where  $x_0, \dots, x_n$  are distinct real numbers (called **quadrature points**) and  $w_0, \dots, w_n$  are real numbers (called **quadrature weights**). When the quadrature points are equally spaced, the quadrature formula of the form (6.1.2) is called the **Newton-Cotes formula**.

The Newton-Cotes formula (6.1.2) gives rise to different quadrature formulas depending on the degree of the interpolating polynomial  $n$  and also on the choice of the nodes. We now study few simple quadrature formulas.

### 6.1.1 Rectangle Rule

We now consider the case when  $n = 0$ . Then, the corresponding interpolating polynomial is the constant function  $p_0(x) = f(x_0)$ , and therefore

$$I(p_0) = (b - a)f(x_0).$$

From this, we can obtain two quadrature rules depending on the choice of  $x_0$ .

- If  $x_0 = a$ , then this approximation becomes

$$I(f) \approx I_R(f) := (b - a)f(a) \quad (6.1.3)$$

and is called the **rectangle rule**. The geometrical interpretation of the rectangle rule is illustrated in Figure 6.1.

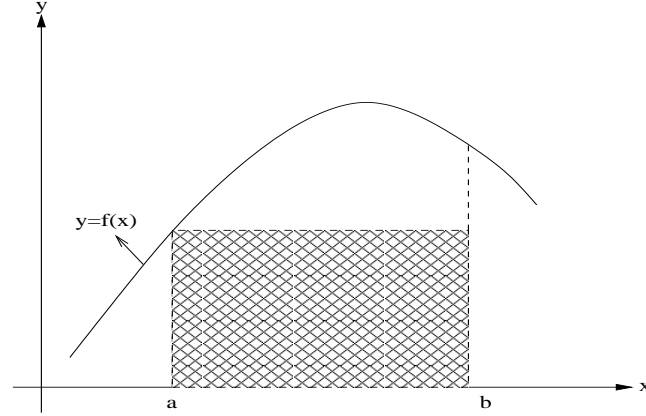
- If  $x_0 = (a + b)/2$ , we get

$$I(f) \approx I_M(f) := (b - a)f\left(\frac{a + b}{2}\right) \quad (6.1.4)$$

and is called the **mid-point rule**.

We now obtain the mathematical error in rectangle rule, given by,

$$\text{ME}_R(f) := I(f) - I(p_0).$$



**Fig. 6.1.** Geometrical Interpretation of the Rectangle Rule.

**Theorem 6.1 (Error in Rectangle Rule).** *Let  $f \in C^1[a, b]$ . The mathematical error  $\text{ME}_R(f)$  of the rectangle rule takes the form*

$$\text{ME}_R(f) = \frac{f'(\eta)(b-a)^2}{2}, \quad (6.1.5)$$

for some  $\eta \in (a, b)$ .

**Proof:** For each  $x \in (a, b]$ , the linear interpolating polynomial for  $f$  at the nodes  $a$  and  $x$  is given by

$$f(x) = p_0(x) + f[a, x](x - a).$$

Therefore, the mathematical error in the rectangle rule is given by

$$\text{ME}_R(f) = I(f) - I_R(f) = \int_a^b f[a, x](x - a) dx.$$

Using mean-value theorem for integrals, we get

$$\text{ME}_R(f) = f[a, \xi] \int_a^b (x - a) dx,$$

for some  $\xi \in (a, b)$ . By mean value theorem for derivatives,  $f[a, \xi] = f'(\eta)$  for some  $\eta \in (a, \xi)$ . Thus, we get

$$\text{ME}_R(f) = \frac{f'(\eta)(b-a)^2}{2},$$

for some  $\eta \in (a, b)$ . □

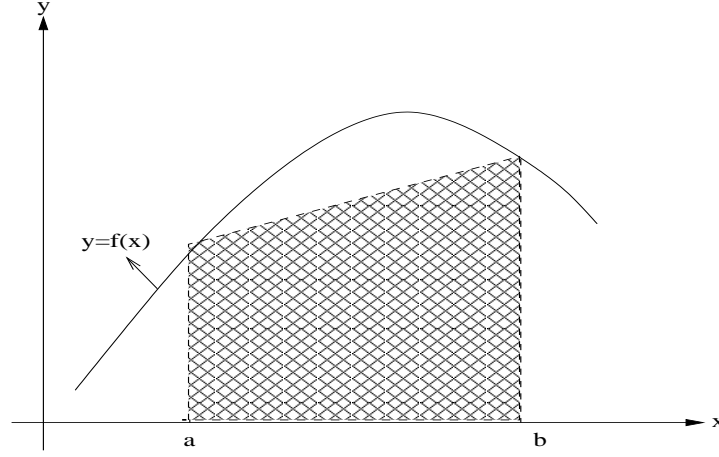


Fig. 6.2. Trapezoidal Rule.

### 6.1.2 Trapezoidal Rule

We now consider the case when  $n = 1$ . Then

$$p_1(x) = f(x_0) + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0),$$

and therefore

$$I(f) \approx I_T(f) := \int_a^b (f(x_0) + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0)) \, dx.$$

Taking  $x_0 = a$  and  $x_1 = b$ , we get

$$I_T(f) = (b - a) \left( \frac{f(a) + f(b)}{2} \right) \quad (6.1.6)$$

and is called the **Trapezoidal Rule**. The Trapezoidal rule is illustrated in Figure 6.2. We now obtain the mathematical error in Trapezoidal rule, given by

$$\text{ME}_T(f) := I(f) - I(p_1).$$

**Theorem 6.2 (Error in Trapezoidal Rule).** *Let  $f \in C^2[a, b]$ . The mathematical error  $\text{ME}_T(f)$  of the trapezoidal rule takes the form*

$$\text{ME}_T(f) = -\frac{f''(\eta)(b - a)^3}{12}, \quad (6.1.7)$$

for some  $\eta \in (a, b)$ .

**Proof:** We have

$$f(x) = f(a) + f[a, b](x - a) + f[a, b, x](x - a)(x - b).$$

Integrating over the interval  $[a, b]$ , we get

$$I(f) = I_T(f) + \int_a^b f[a, b, x](x - a)(x - b)dx.$$

Therefore the mathematical error is given by

$$\text{ME}_T(f) = I(f) - I_T(f) = \int_a^b f[a, b, x](x - a)(x - b)dx. \quad (6.1.8)$$

From Corollary 5.24 (Conclusion 1), we see that the function  $x \mapsto f[a, b, x]$  is continuous. Therefore, from the mean value theorem for integrals (after noting that  $(x - a)(x - b)$  is negative for all  $x \in [a, b]$ ), the expression (6.1.8) for the mathematical error takes the form

$$\text{ME}_T(f) = f[a, b, \eta] \int_a^b (x - a)(x - b)dx,$$

for some  $\eta \in (a, b)$ . The formula (6.1.7) now follows from (5.3.25) and a direct evaluation of the above integral.  $\square$

**Example 6.3.** For the function  $f(x) = 1/(x + 1)$ , we approximate the integral

$$I = \int_0^1 f(x)dx,$$

using trapezoidal rule to get

$$I_T(f) = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{3}{4} = 0.75.$$

The true value is  $I(f) = \log(2) \approx 0.693147$ . Therefore, the error is  $\text{ME}_T(f) \approx -0.0569$ . Using the formula (6.1.7), we get the bounds for  $\text{ME}_T(f)$  as

$$-\frac{1}{6} < \text{ME}_T(f) < -\frac{1}{48}$$

which clearly holds in the present case.  $\square$



### Composite Trapezoidal Rule

We can improve the approximation of trapezoidal rule by breaking the interval  $[a, b]$  into smaller subintervals and apply the trapezoidal rule (6.1.6) on each subinterval. We will derive a general formula for this.

Let us subdivide the interval  $[a, b]$  into  $n$  equal subintervals of length

$$h = \frac{b - a}{n}$$

with endpoints of the subintervals as

$$x_j = a + jh, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

Then, we get

$$I(f) = \int_a^b f(x)dx = \int_{x_0}^{x_n} f(x)dx = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \int_{x_j}^{x_{j+1}} f(x)dx.$$

Using Trapezoidal rule (6.1.6) on the subinterval  $[x_j, x_{j+1}]$ , we get

$$\int_{x_j}^{x_{j+1}} f(x)dx \approx h \left( \frac{f(x_j) + f(x_{j+1})}{2} \right), \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1.$$

Substituting this in the above equation, we get

$$I(f) \approx h \left[ \frac{f(x_0) + f(x_1)}{2} \right] + h \left[ \frac{f(x_1) + f(x_2)}{2} \right] + \dots + h \left[ \frac{f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)}{2} \right].$$

The terms on the right hand side can be combined to give the simpler formula

$$I_T^n(f) := h \left[ \frac{1}{2}f(x_0) + f(x_1) + f(x_2) + \dots + f(x_{n-1}) + \frac{1}{2}f(x_n) \right]. \quad (6.1.9)$$

This rule is called the **Composite Trapezoidal rule**.

**Example 6.4.** Using composite trapezoidal rule with  $n = 2$ , let us approximate the integral

$$I = \int_0^1 f(x)dx,$$

where

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1+x}.$$

As we have seen in Example 6.3, the true value is  $I(f) = \log(2) \approx 0.693147$ . Now, the composite trapezoidal rule with  $x_0 = 0$ ,  $x_1 = 1/2$  and  $x_2 = 1$  gives

$$I_T^2(f) \approx 0.70833.$$

Thus the error is -0.0152. Recall from Example 6.3 that with  $n = 1$ , the trapezoidal rule gave an error of -0.0569.  $\square$

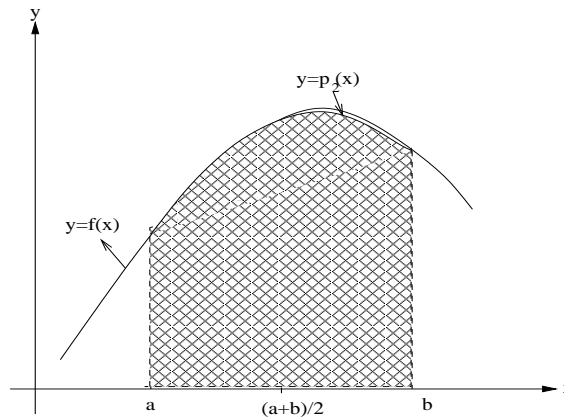


Fig. 6.3. Simpson Rule.

### 6.1.3 Simpson's Rule

We now calculate  $I(p_2(x))$  to obtain the formula for the case when  $n = 2$ . Let us choose  $x_0 = a$ ,  $x_1 = (a + b)/2$  and  $x_2 = b$ . The Lagrange form of interpolating polynomial is

$$p_2(x) = f(x_0)l_0(x) + f(x_1)l_1(x) + f(x_2)l_2(x).$$

Then

$$\int_a^b p_2(x) dx = f(x_0) \int_a^b l_0(x) dx + f(x_1) \int_a^b l_1(x) dx + f(x_2) \int_a^b l_2(x) dx.$$

Using the change of variable

$$x = \frac{b-a}{2}t + \frac{b+a}{2},$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b l_0(x) dx &= \int_a^b \frac{(x-x_1)(x-x_2)}{(x_0-x_1)(x_0-x_2)} dx \\ &= \int_{-1}^1 \frac{t(t-1)}{2} \frac{b-a}{2} dt \\ &= \frac{b-a}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we can see

$$\int_a^b l_1(x) dx = \frac{4}{6}(b-a),$$

$$\int_a^b l_2(x) dx = \frac{b-a}{6}.$$

We thus arrive at the formula

$$I(f) \approx I_S(f) := \int_a^b p_2(x) dx = \frac{b-a}{6} \left\{ f(a) + 4f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) + f(b) \right\} \quad (6.1.10)$$

which is the famous **Simpson's Rule**. The Simpson's rule is illustrated in Figure 6.3.

We now obtain the mathematical error in Simpson's rule, given by,

$$\text{ME}_S(f) := I(f) - I(p_2).$$

**Theorem 6.5 (Error in Simpson's Rule).** *Let  $f \in C^4[a, b]$ . The mathematical error  $\text{ME}_S(f)$  of the Simpson's rule takes the form*

$$\text{ME}_S(f) = -\frac{f^{(4)}(\eta)(b-a)^5}{2880}, \quad (6.1.11)$$

for some  $\eta \in (a, b)$ .

**Proof:** Consider the collection of nodes  $a, (a+b)/2, b, x$  in the interval  $[a, b]$ . Let  $x_0 \in [a, b]$  be a given point different from  $a, (a+b)/2, b$ , and  $x$ . From the fourth order divided difference formula, we have

$$f[a, (a+b)/2, b, x] = f[x_0, a, (a+b)/2, b] + f[x_0, a, (a+b)/2, b, x](x - x_0).$$

The mathematical error in Simpson's method can therefore be written as

$$\text{ME}_S(f) = \int_a^b f[x_0, a, (a+b)/2, b] \phi(x) dx + \int_a^b f[x_0, a, (a+b)/2, b, x](x - x_0) \phi(x) dx,$$

where

$$\phi(x) = (x-a)(x-(a+b)/2)(x-b).$$

A direct integration shows

$$\int_a^b \phi(x) dx = \int_a^b (x-a) \left( x - \frac{a+b}{2} \right) (x-b) dx = 0.$$

Thus, we have

$$\text{ME}_S(f) = \int_a^b f[x_0, a, (a+b)/2, b, x] (x-x_0) \phi(x) dx,$$

Recall in the proof of theorem 6.2, we used mean value theorem 1.27 at this stage to arrive at the conclusion. But, in the present case, we cannot use this theorem because the function  $(x-x_0)\phi(x)$  need not be of one sign on  $[a, b]$ . However, the choice  $x_0 = (a+b)/2$  makes this function one signed (negative). Now using Corollary 5.24 (Conclusion 1) and following the idea of the proof of Theorem 6.2, we arrive at the formula (6.1.11) (this is left as an exercise).  $\square$

**Example 6.6.** We now use the Simpson's rule to approximate the integral

$$I(f) = \int_0^1 f(x) dx,$$

where

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1+x}.$$

The true value is  $I(f) = \log(2) \approx 0.693147$ . Using the Simpson's rule (6.1.10), we get

$$I_S(f) = \frac{1}{6} \left( 1 + \frac{8}{3} + \frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{25}{36} \approx 0.694444.$$

Therefore, the error is  $\text{ME}_S(f) \approx 0.001297$ .  $\square$

### Composite Simpson's Rule

Let us now derive the **composite Simpson's rule**. First let us subdivide the interval  $[a, b]$  into  $n$  equal parts as we discussed in composite trapezoidal rule (Subsection 6.1.2). Taking  $a = x_{i-1}$ ,  $b = x_{i+1}$ , (note that  $x_i = (x_{i-1} + x_{i+1})/2$ ) and  $x_i - x_{i-1} = h$  in Simpson rule, we get

$$\int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_{i+1}} f(x) dx \approx \frac{h}{3} \{f(x_{i-1}) + 4f(x_i) + f(x_{i+1})\}.$$

Summing for  $i = 1, \dots, N/2$ , ( $N$  even) we get

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b f(x)dx &= \sum_{i=1}^{N/2} \int_{x_{2i-2}}^{x_{2i}} f(x)dx \\ &\approx \frac{h}{3} \sum_{i=1}^{N/2} \{f(x_{2i-2}) + 4f(x_{2i-1}) + f(x_{2i})\}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the **composite Simpson's rule** takes the form

$$I_S^{N/2}(f) = \frac{h}{3} \left[ f(x_0) + f(x_N) + 2 \sum_{i=2}^{N/2} f(x_{2i-2}) + 4 \sum_{i=1}^{N/2} f(x_{2i-1}) \right]. \quad (6.12)$$

#### 6.1.4 Method of Undetermined Coefficients

All the rules so far derived are of the form

$$I(f) = \int_a^b f(x)dx \approx w_0 f(x_0) + w_1 f(x_1) + \cdots + w_n f(x_n) \quad (6.1.12)$$

where  $w_i$ 's are weights. In deriving those rules, we have fixed the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  ( $n = 0$  for rectangle rule,  $n = 1$  for trapezoidal rule and  $n = 2$  for Simpson's rule), and used interpolating polynomials to obtain the corresponding weights. Instead, we may use another approach in which for a fixed set of nodes weights are determined by imposing the condition that the resulting rule is exact for polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $n$ . Such a method is called the **method of undetermined coefficients**.

**Example 6.7.** Let us find  $w_0, w_1$ , and  $w_2$  such that the approximate formula

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx w_0 f(a) + w_1 f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) + w_2 f(b) \quad (6.1.13)$$

is exact for all polynomials of degree less than or equal to 2.

Since integral of sum of functions is the sum of the integrals of the respective functions, the formula (6.1.13) is exact for all polynomials of degree less than or equal to 2 if and only if the formula (6.1.13) is exact for the polynomials 1,  $x$ , and  $x^2$ .

- The condition that the formula (6.1.13) is exact for the polynomial  $p(x) = 1$  yields

$$b - a = \int_a^b 1 dx = w_0 + w_1 + w_2$$

- The condition that the formula (6.1.13) is exact for the polynomial  $p(x) = x$  yields

$$\frac{b^2 - a^2}{2} = \int_a^b x \, dx = aw_0 + \left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)w_1 + bw_2.$$

- The condition that the formula (6.1.13) is exact for the polynomial  $p(x) = x^2$  yields

$$\frac{b^3 - a^3}{3} = \int_a^b x^2 \, dx = a^2w_0 + \left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)^2 w_1 + b^2w_2$$

Thus, we have a linear system of three equations satisfied by  $w_0$ ,  $w_1$ , and  $w_2$ . By solving this system, we get

$$w_0 = \frac{1}{6}(b-a),$$

$$w_1 = \frac{2}{3}(b-a),$$

$$w_2 = \frac{1}{6}(b-a),$$

which gives us the familiar Simpson's rule. □

This motivates the following definition.

**Definition 6.8 (Degree of Precision).**

*The **degree of precision** (also called **order of exactness**) of a quadrature formula is the largest positive integer  $n$  such that the formula is exact for all polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $n$ .*

**Example 6.9.** Let us determine the degree of precision of Simpson's rule. It will suffice to apply the rule over the interval  $[0, 2]$  (in fact any interval is good enough and we chose this interval for the sake of having easy computation).

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^2 dx &= 2 = \frac{2}{6}(1 + 4 + 1), \\ \int_0^2 x \, dx &= 2 = \frac{2}{6}(0 + 4 + 2), \\ \int_0^2 x^2 \, dx &= \frac{8}{3} = \frac{2}{6}(0 + 4 + 4), \end{aligned}$$

$$\int_0^2 x^3 dx = 4 = \frac{2}{6}(0 + 4 + 8),$$

$$\int_0^2 x^4 dx = \frac{32}{5} \neq \frac{2}{6}(0 + 4 + 16) = \frac{20}{3}.$$

Therefore, the degree of precision of Simpson's rule is 3.  $\square$

**Remark 6.10.** In Example 6.7 we have obtained the Simpson's rule using the method of undetermined coefficients by requiring the exactness of the rule for polynomials of degree less than or equal to 2, the above example shows that the rule is exact for polynomials of degree three as well.  $\square$

### 6.1.5 Gaussian Rules

In Example 6.7 we have fixed the nodes and obtained the weights in the quadrature rule (6.1.13) such that the rule is exact for polynomials of degree less than or equal to 2. In general, by fixing the nodes, we can obtain the weights in (6.1.12) such that the rule is exact for polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $n$ . But it is also possible to derive a quadrature rule such that the rule is exact for polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $2n + 1$  by choosing the  $n + 1$  nodes and the weights appropriately. This is the basic idea of **Gaussian rules**.

Let us consider the special case

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx \sum_{i=0}^n w_i f(x_i). \quad (6.1.14)$$

The weights  $w_i$  and the nodes  $x_i$  ( $i = 0, \dots, n$ ) are to be chosen in such a way that the rule (6.1.14) is exact, that is

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx = \sum_{i=0}^n w_i f(x_i), \quad (6.1.15)$$

whenever  $f(x)$  is a polynomial of degree less than or equal to  $2n + 1$ . Note that (6.1.15) holds for every polynomial  $f(x)$  of degree less than or equal to  $2n + 1$  if and only if (6.1.15) holds for  $f(x) = 1, x, x^2, \dots, x^{2n+1}$ .

**Case 1:** ( $n = 0$ ). In this case, the quadrature formula (6.1.14) takes the form

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx w_0 f(x_0).$$

The condition (6.1.15) gives

$$\int_{-1}^1 1 dx = w_0 \text{ and } \int_{-1}^1 x dx = w_0 x_0.$$

These conditions give  $w_0 = 2$  and  $x_0 = 0$ . Thus, we have the formula

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx 2f(0) =: I_{G_0}(f), \quad (6.1.16)$$

which is the required Gaussian rule for  $n = 0$ .

**Case 2:** ( $n = 1$ ). In this case, the quadrature formula (6.1.14) takes the form

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx w_0 f(x_0) + w_1 f(x_1).$$

The condition (6.1.15) gives

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 + w_1 &= 2, \\ w_0 x_0 + w_1 x_1 &= 0, \\ w_0 x_0^2 + w_1 x_1^2 &= \frac{2}{3}, \\ w_0 x_0^3 + w_1 x_1^3 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

A solution of this nonlinear system is  $w_0 = w_1 = 1$ ,  $x_0 = -1/\sqrt{3}$  and  $x_1 = 1/\sqrt{3}$ . This lead to the formula

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx f\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + f\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) =: I_{G1}(f), \quad (6.1.17)$$

which is the required Gaussian rule for  $n = 1$ .

**Case 3:** (General). In general, the quadrature formula is given by (6.1.14), where there are  $2(n+1)$  free parameters  $x_i$  and  $w_i$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . The condition (6.1.15) leads to the nonlinear system

$$\sum_{j=0}^n w_j x_j^i = \begin{cases} 0 & , i = 1, 3, \dots, 2n+1 \\ \frac{2}{i+1} & , i = 0, 2, \dots, 2n \end{cases}.$$

These are nonlinear equations and their solvability is not at all obvious and therefore the discussion is outside the scope of this course.



So far, we derived Gaussian rule for integrals over  $[-1, 1]$ . But this is not a limitation as any integral on the interval  $[a, b]$  can easily be transformed to an integral on  $[-1, 1]$  by using the linear change of variable

$$x = \frac{b + a + t(b - a)}{2}, \quad -1 \leq t \leq 1. \quad (6.1.18)$$

Thus, we have

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{b - a}{2} \int_{-1}^1 f\left(\frac{b + a + t(b - a)}{2}\right) dt.$$

**Example 6.11.** We now use the Gaussian rule to approximate the integral

$$I(f) = \int_0^1 f(x) dx,$$

where

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1 + x}.$$

Note that the true value is  $I(f) = \log(2) \approx 0.693147$ .

To use the Gaussian quadrature, we first need to make the linear change of variable (6.1.18) with  $a = 0$  and  $b = 1$  and we get

$$x = \frac{t + 1}{2}, \quad -1 \leq t \leq 1.$$

Thus the required integral is

$$I(f) = \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1 + x} = \int_{-1}^1 \frac{dt}{3 + t}.$$

We need to take  $f(t) = 1/(3 + t)$  in the Gaussian quadrature formula (6.1.17) and we get

$$\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1 + x} = \int_{-1}^1 \frac{dt}{3 + t} \approx f\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + f\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) \approx 0.692308 \approx I_{G1}(f).$$

Therefore, the error is  $I(f) - I_{G1}(f) \approx 0.000839$ . □

## 6.2 Numerical Differentiation

The aim of this section is to obtain formulas to approximate the values of derivatives of a given function at a given point. Such a formula for the first derivative of a function can be obtained directly using the definition of the derivative, namely, the difference quotients of the function. This will be discussed in Subsection 6.2.1. But this idea cannot be adopted for higher order derivatives. Approximating formulas for derivatives can be obtained in at least two ways, namely,

- (1) Methods based on Interpolation
- (2) Methods based on Undetermined Coefficients

These methods are discussed in Subsections 6.2.2 and 6.2.3, respectively.

### 6.2.1 Approximations of First Derivative

#### Forward Difference Formula

The most simple way to obtain a numerical method for approximating the derivative of a  $C^1$  function  $f$  is to use the definition of derivative

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}.$$

The approximating formula can therefore be taken as

$$f'(x) \approx \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} =: D_h^+ f(x) \quad (6.2.19)$$

for a sufficiently small value of  $h > 0$ . The formula  $D_h^+ f(x)$  is called the **forward difference formula** for the derivative of  $f$  at the point  $x$ .

**Theorem 6.12.** *Let  $f \in C^2[a, b]$ . The mathematical error in the forward difference formula is given by*

$$f'(x) - D_h^+ f(x) = -\frac{h}{2} f''(\eta) \quad (6.2.20)$$

for some  $\eta \in (x, x+h)$ .

**Proof:** By Taylor's theorem, we have

$$f(x+h) = f(x) + hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2} f''(\eta) \quad (6.2.21)$$

for some  $\eta \in (x, x+h)$ . Using (6.2.19) and (6.2.21), we obtain

$$D_h^+ f(x) = \frac{1}{h} \left\{ \left[ f(x) + hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2} f''(\eta) \right] - f(x) \right\} = f'(x) + \frac{h}{2} f''(\eta).$$

This completes the proof. □

**Remark 6.13.** If we consider the left hand side of (6.2.20) as a function of  $h$ , *i.e.*, if

$$g(h) = f'(x) - D_h f(x),$$

then we see that

$$\left| \frac{g(h)}{h} \right| = \frac{1}{2} |f''(\eta)|.$$

Let  $M > 0$  be such that  $|f''(x)| \leq M$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$ . Then we see that

$$\left| \frac{g(h)}{h} \right| \leq \frac{M}{2}.$$

That is,  $g = O(h)$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . We say that the forward difference formula  $D_h^+ f(x)$  is of order 1 (order of accuracy).  $\square$

### Backward Difference Formula

The derivative of a function  $f$  is also given by

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x) - f(x-h)}{h}.$$

Therefore, the approximating formula for the first derivative of  $f$  can also be taken as

$$f'(x) \approx \frac{f(x) - f(x-h)}{h} =: D_h^- f(x) \quad (6.2.22)$$

The formula  $D_h^- f(x)$  is called the **backward difference formula** for the derivative of  $f$  at the point  $x$ .

Deriving the mathematical error for backward difference formula is similar to that of the forward difference formula. It can be shown that the backward difference formula is of order 1.

### Central Difference Formula

The derivative of a function  $f$  is also given by

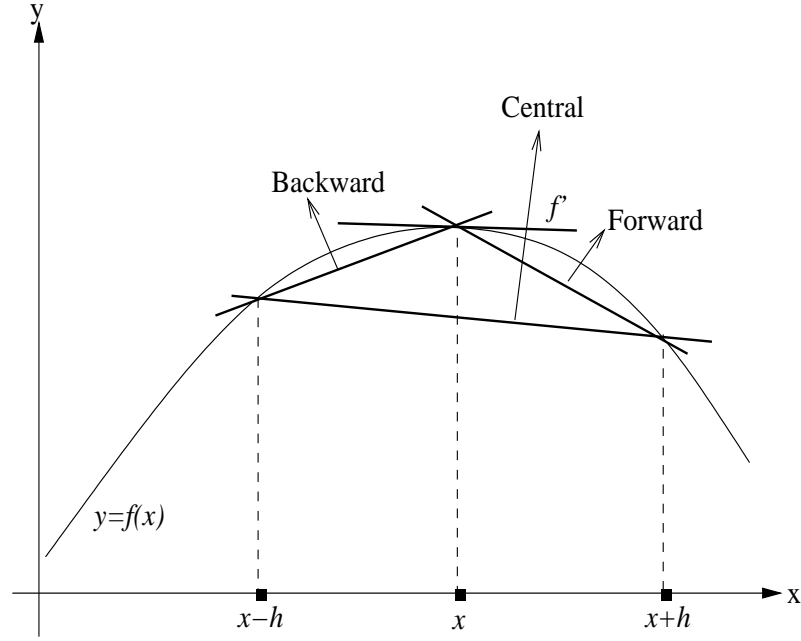
$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x-h)}{2h}.$$

Therefore, the approximating formula for the first derivative of  $f$  can also be taken as

$$f'(x) \approx \frac{f(x+h) - f(x-h)}{2h} =: D_h^0 f(x), \quad (6.2.23)$$

for a sufficiently small value of  $h > 0$ . The formula  $D_h^0 f(x)$  is called the **central difference formula** for the derivative of  $f$  at the point  $x$ .

The central difference formula is of order 2 as shown in the following theorem.



**Fig. 6.4.** Geometrical interpretation of difference formulae.

**Theorem 6.14.** Let  $f \in C^3[a, b]$ . The mathematical error in the central difference formula is given by

$$f'(x) - D_h^0 f(x) = -\frac{h^2}{6} f'''(\eta), \quad (6.2.24)$$

where  $\eta \in (x-h, x+h)$ .

**Proof:** Using Taylor's theorem, we have

$$f(x+h) = f(x) + hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2!} f''(x) + \frac{h^3}{3!} f'''(\eta_1)$$

and

$$f(x-h) = f(x) - hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2!} f''(x) - \frac{h^3}{3!} f'''(\eta_2),$$

where  $\eta_1 \in (x, x+h)$  and  $\eta_2 \in (x-h, x)$ .

Therefore, we have

$$f(x+h) - f(x-h) = 2hf'(x) + \frac{h^3}{3!} (f'''(\eta_1) + f'''(\eta_2)).$$

Since  $f'''(x)$  is continuous, by intermediate value theorem applied to  $f'''$ , we have

$$\frac{f'''(\eta_1) + f'''(\eta_2)}{2} = f'''(\eta)$$

for some  $\eta \in (x - h, x + h)$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

Geometric interpretation of the three primitive difference formulae (forward, backward, and central) is shown in Figure 6.4.

**Example 6.15.** To find the value of the derivative of the function given by  $f(x) = \sin x$  at  $x = 1$  with  $h = 0.003906$ , we use the three primitive difference formulas. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x - h) &= f(0.996094) = 0.839354, \\ f(x) &= f(1) = 0.841471, \\ f(x + h) &= f(1.003906) = 0.843575. \end{aligned}$$

$$(1) \text{ Backward difference: } D_h^- f(x) = \frac{f(x) - f(x - h)}{h} = 0.541935.$$

$$(2) \text{ Central Difference: } D_h^0 f(x) = \frac{f(x + h) - f(x - h)}{2h} = 0.540303.$$

$$(3) \text{ Forward Difference: } D_h^+ f(x) = \frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h} = 0.538670.$$

Note that the exact value is  $f'(1) = \cos 1 = 0.540302$ .

### 6.2.2 Methods based on Interpolation

Using the polynomial interpolation we can obtain formula for derivatives of any order for a given function. For instance, to calculate  $f'(x)$  at some point  $x$ , we use the approximate formula

$$f'(x) \approx p'_n(x),$$

where  $p_n(x)$  denotes the interpolating polynomial for  $f(x)$ . Many formulas can be obtained by varying  $n$  and by varying the placement of the nodes  $x_0, \dots, x_n$  relative to the point  $x$  of interest.

Let us take  $n = 1$ . The linear interpolating polynomial is given by

$$p_1(x) = f(x_0) + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0).$$

Hence, we have the formula

$$f'(x) \approx p'_1(x) = f[x_0, x_1]. \quad (6.2.25)$$

In particular,

- if we take  $x_0 = x$  and  $x_1 = x + h$  for a small value  $h > 0$ , we obtain the forward difference formula  $D_h^+ f(x)$ .
- if we take  $x_0 = x - h$  and  $x_1 = x$  for small value of  $h > 0$ , we obtain the backward difference formula  $D_h^- f(x)$ .

- if we take  $x_0 = x - h$  and  $x_1 = x + h$  for small value of  $h > 0$ , we get the central difference formula  $D_h^0 f(x)$ .

We next prove the formula for mathematical error in approximating the first derivative using interpolating polynomial.

**Theorem 6.16 (Mathematical Error).**

**Hypothesis:**

- (1) Let  $f$  be an  $(n+2)$ -times continuously differentiable function on the interval  $[a, b]$ .
- (2) Let  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  be  $n+1$  distinct nodes in  $[a, b]$ .
- (3) Let  $p_n(x)$  denote the polynomial that interpolates  $f$  at the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ .
- (4) Let  $x$  be any point in  $[a, b]$  such that  $x \notin \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ .

**Conclusion:** Then

$$f'(x) - p'_n(x) = w_n(x) \frac{f^{(n+2)}(\eta_x)}{(n+2)!} + w'_n(x) \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x)}{(n+1)!} \quad (6.2.26)$$

with  $w_n(x) = \prod_{i=0}^n (x - x_i)$  and  $\xi_x$  and  $\eta_x$  are points in between the maximum and minimum of  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$  and  $x$ , that depend on  $x$ .

**Proof.** For any  $x \in [a, b]$  with  $x \notin \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ , by Newton's form of interpolating polynomial, we have

$$f(x) = p_n(x) + f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x]w_n(x),$$

where  $p_n(x)$  is the polynomial (of degree  $\leq n$ ) that interpolates  $f$  at  $x_0, \dots, x_n$ . Taking derivative on both sides, we get

$$f'(x) = p'_n(x) + w_n(x) \frac{d}{dx} f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x] + w'_n(x) f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x].$$

But we know that (Theorem 5.25)

$$\frac{d}{dx} f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x] = f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x, x].$$

Therefore, we have

$$f'(x) = p'_n(x) + w_n(x) f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x, x] + w'_n(x) f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x].$$

Further, from Theorem 5.27, we see that there exists an  $\xi_x \in (a, b)$  such that

$$f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x] = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x)}{(n+1)!}.$$

Using Theorem 5.27 along with the Hermite-Genocchi formula, we see that there exists an  $\eta_x \in (a, b)$  such that

$$f[x_0, \dots, x_n, x, x] = \frac{f^{(n+2)}(\eta_x)}{(n+2)!}.$$

Therefore, we get

$$f'(x) - p'_n(x) = w_n(x) \frac{f^{(n+2)}(\eta_x)}{(n+2)!} + w'_n(x) \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi_x)}{(n+1)!}$$

which is what we wish to show.  $\square$

Difference formulas for higher order derivatives and their mathematical error can be obtained similarly. The derivation of the mathematical error for the formulas of higher order derivatives are omitted for this course.

**Example 6.17.** Let  $x_0, x_1$ , and  $x_2$  be the given nodes. Then, the Newton's form of interpolating polynomial for  $f$  is given by

$$p_2(x) = f(x_0) + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0) + f[x_0, x_1, x_2](x^2 - (x_0 + x_1)x + x_0x_1).$$

Therefore, we take the first derivative of  $f$  as

$$f'(x) \approx p'_2(x) = f[x_0, x_1] + f[x_0, x_1, x_2](2x - x_0 - x_1).$$

- If we take  $x_0 = x - h$ ,  $x_1 = x$ , and  $x_2 = x + h$  for any given  $x \in [a, b]$ , we obtain the central difference formula  $D_h^0(f)$  and the corresponding error obtained from (6.2.26) is precisely the error given in (6.2.24).
- If we take  $x_0 = x$ ,  $x_1 = x + h$  and  $x_2 = x + 2h$  for any given  $x \in [a, b]$ , we obtain the difference formula

$$f'(x) \approx \frac{-3f(x) + 4f(x + h) - f(x + 2h)}{2h}$$

with mathematical error obtained using (6.2.26) as

$$f'(x) - p'_2(x) = \frac{h^2}{3} f'''(\xi),$$

for some  $\xi \in (x, x + 2h)$ .  $\square$

### 6.2.3 Methods based on Undetermined Coefficients

Another method to derive formulas for numerical differentiation is called the **method of undetermined coefficients**. The idea behind this method is similar to the one discussed in deriving quadrature formulas.

Suppose we seek a formula for  $f^{(k)}(x)$  that involves the nodes  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n$ . Then, write the formula in the form

$$f^{(k)}(x) \approx w_0 f(x_0) + w_1 f(x_1) + \dots + w_n f(x_n) \quad (6.2.27)$$

where  $w_i, i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  are free variables that are obtained by imposing the condition that this formula is exact for polynomials of degree less than or equal to  $n$ .

**Example 6.18.** We will illustrate the method by deriving the formula for  $f''(x)$  at nodes  $x_0 = x - h, x_1 = x$  and  $x_2 = x + h$  for a small value of  $h > 0$ .

For a small value of  $h > 0$ , let

$$f''(x) \approx D_h^{(2)} f(x) := w_0 f(x - h) + w_1 f(x) + w_2 f(x + h) \quad (6.2.28)$$

where  $w_0, w_1$  and  $w_2$  are to be obtained so that this formula is exact when  $f(x)$  is a polynomial of degree less than or equal to 2. This condition is equivalent to the exactness for the three polynomials 1,  $x$  and  $x^2$ .

**Step 1:** When  $f(x) = 1$  for all  $x$ . Then the formula of the form (6.2.28) is assumed to be exact and we get

$$w_0 + w_1 + w_2 = 0. \quad (6.2.29)$$

**Step 2:** When  $f(x) = x$  for all  $x$ . Then the formula of the form (6.2.28) is assumed to be exact and we get

$$w_0(x - h) + w_1 x + w_2(x + h) = 0.$$

Using (6.2.29), we get

$$w_2 - w_0 = 0. \quad (6.2.30)$$

**Step 3:** When  $f(x) = x^2$  for all  $x$ . Then the formula of the form (6.2.28) is assumed to be exact and we get

$$w_0(x - h)^2 + w_1 x^2 + w_2(x + h)^2 = 2.$$

Using (6.2.29) and (6.2.30), we get

$$w_0 + w_2 = \frac{2}{h^2}. \quad (6.2.31)$$



Solving the linear system of equations (6.2.29), (6.2.30), and (6.2.31), we get

$$w_0 = w_2 = \frac{1}{h^2}, \quad w_1 = -\frac{2}{h^2}.$$

Substituting these into (6.2.28), we get

$$D_h^{(2)} f(x) = \frac{f(x+h) - 2f(x) + f(x-h)}{h^2}, \quad (6.2.32)$$

which is the required formula.

Let us now derive the mathematical error involved in this formula. For this, we use the Taylor's series

$$f(x \pm h) = f(x) \pm hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2!}f''(x) \pm \frac{h^3}{3!}f^{(3)}(x) + \dots$$

in (6.2.32) to get

$$\begin{aligned} D_h^{(2)} f(x) &= \frac{1}{h^2} \left( f(x) + hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2!}f''(x) + \frac{h^3}{3!}f^{(3)}(x) + \frac{h^4}{4!}f^{(4)}(x) + \dots \right) - \frac{2}{h^2}f(x) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{h^2} \left( f(x) - hf'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2!}f''(x) - \frac{h^3}{3!}f^{(3)}(x) + \frac{h^4}{4!}f^{(4)}(x) - \dots \right). \end{aligned}$$

After simplification, we get

$$D_h^{(2)} f(x) = f''(x) + \frac{h^2}{24}[(f^{(4)}(x) + \dots) + (f^{(4)}(x) - \dots)].$$

Now treating the fourth order terms on the right hand side as remainders in Taylor's series, we get

$$D_h^{(2)} f(x) = f''(x) + \frac{h^2}{24}[f^{(4)}(\xi_1) + f^{(4)}(\xi_2)],$$

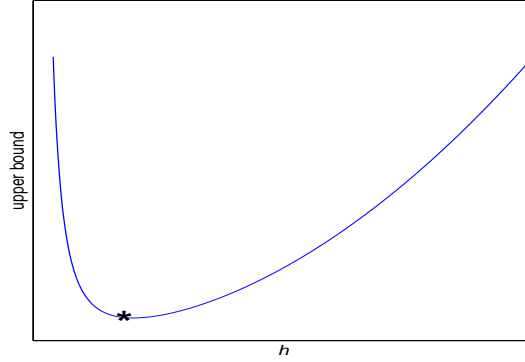
for some  $\xi_1, \xi_2 \in (x-h, x+h)$ . Using intermediate value theorem for the function  $f^{(4)}$ , we get the mathematical error as

$$f''(x) - D_h^{(2)} f(x) = -\frac{h^2}{12}f^{(4)}(\xi) \quad (6.2.33)$$

for some  $\xi \in (x-h, x+h)$ , which is the required mathematical error.  $\square$

#### 6.2.4 Arithmetic Error in Numerical Differentiation

Difference formulas are useful when deriving methods for solving differential equations. But they can lead to serious errors when applied to function values that are subjected to floating-point approximations. Let



**Fig. 6.5.** A sketch of the upper bound in total error as given in (6.2.34) as a function of  $h$ . The black star indicates the optimal value of  $h$ .

$$f(x_i) = f_i + \epsilon_i, \quad i = 0, 1, 2.$$

To illustrate the effect of such errors, we choose the approximation  $\bar{D}_h^{(2)}f(x)$  given by (6.2.32) for the second derivative of  $f$  with  $x_0 = x - h$ ,  $x_1 = x$  and  $x_2 = x + h$ . Instead of using the exact values  $f(x_i)$ , we use the approximate values  $f_i$  in the difference formula (6.2.32). That is,

$$\bar{D}_h^{(2)}f(x_1) = \frac{f_2 - 2f_1 + f_0}{h^2}.$$

The total error committed is

$$\begin{aligned} f''(x_1) - \bar{D}_h^{(2)}f(x_1) &= f''(x_1) - \frac{f(x_2) - 2f(x_1) + f(x_0)}{h^2} + \frac{\epsilon_2 - 2\epsilon_1 + \epsilon_0}{h^2} \\ &= -\frac{h^2}{12}f^{(4)}(\xi) + \frac{\epsilon_2 - 2\epsilon_1 + \epsilon_0}{h^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Using the notation  $\epsilon_\infty := \max\{|\epsilon_0|, |\epsilon_1|, |\epsilon_3|\}$ , we have

$$|f''(x_1) - \bar{D}_h^{(2)}f(x_1)| \leq \frac{h^2}{12}|f^{(4)}(\xi)| + \frac{4\epsilon_\infty}{h^2}. \quad (6.2.34)$$

The error bound in (6.2.34) clearly shows that, although the first term (bound of mathematical error) tends to zero as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , the second term (bound of arithmetic error) can tend to infinity as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . This gives a possibility for the total error to be as large as possible when  $h \rightarrow 0$ . In fact, there is an optimal value of  $h$  to minimize the right side of (6.2.34) (as shown in Figure 6.5), which we will illustrate in the following example.

**Example 6.19.** In finding  $f''(\pi/6)$  for the function  $f(x) = \cos x$ , if we use the function values  $f_i$  that has six significant digits when compared to  $f(x_i)$ , then

$$\frac{|f(x_i) - f_i|}{|f(x_i)|} \leq 0.5 \times 10^{-5}.$$

Since  $|f(x_i)| = |\cos(x_i)| \leq 1$ , we have  $|f(x_i) - f_i| \leq 0.5 \times 10^{-5}$ .

We now use the formula  $\bar{D}_h^{(2)} f(x)$  to approximate  $f''(x)$ . Assume that other than the approximation in the function values, the formula  $\bar{D}_h^{(2)} f(x)$  is calculated exactly. Then the bound for the absolute value of the total error given by (6.2.34) takes the form

$$|f''(\pi/6) - \bar{D}_h^{(2)} f(\pi/6)| \leq \frac{h^2}{12} |f^{(4)}(\xi)| + \frac{4\epsilon_\infty}{h^2},$$

where  $\epsilon_\infty \leq 0.5 \times 10^{-5}$  and  $\xi \approx \pi/6$ . Thus, we have

$$|f''(\pi/6) - \bar{D}_h^{(2)} f(\pi/6)| \leq \frac{h^2}{12} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \frac{4}{h^2} (0.5 \times 10^{-5}) \approx 0.0722h^2 + \frac{2 \times 10^{-5}}{h^2} =: E(h).$$

The bound  $E(h)$  indicates that there is a smallest value of  $h$ , call it  $h^*$ , such that the bound increases rapidly for  $0 < h < h^*$  when  $h \rightarrow 0$ . To find it, let  $E'(h) = 0$ , with its root being  $h^*$ . This leads to  $h^* \approx 0.129$ . Thus, for close values of  $h > h^* \approx 0.129$ , we have less error bound than the values  $0 < h < h^*$ . This behavior of  $E(h)$  is observed in the following table. Note that the true value is  $f''(\pi/6) = -\cos(\pi/6) \approx -0.86603$ .

$h$	$\bar{D}_h^{(2)} f(\pi/6)$	Total Error	$E(h)$
0.2	-0.86313	-0.0029	0.0034
0.129	-0.86479	-0.0012	0.0024
0.005	-0.80000	-0.0660	0.8000
0.001	0.00000	-0.8660	20

When  $h$  is very small,  $f(x - h)$ ,  $f(x)$  and  $f(x + h)$  are very close numbers and therefore their difference in the numerator of the formula (6.2.32) tend to have loss of significance. This is clearly observed in the values of  $\bar{D}_h^{(2)} f(\pi/6)$  when compared to the true value where, we are not losing much number of significant digits for  $h > 0.129$ , whereas for  $h < 0.129$ , there is a drastic loss of significant digits.  $\square$

## 6.3 Exercises

### Numerical Integration

(1) Apply Rectangle, Trapezoidal, Simpson and Gaussian methods to evaluate

$$(i) \ I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos x}{1 + \cos^2 x} dx \text{ (exact value } \approx 0.623225)$$

$$(ii) \ I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{dx}{5 + 4 \cos x} dx \text{ (exact value } \approx 1.047198)$$

$$(iii) \ I = \int_0^1 e^{-x^2} dx \text{ (exact value } \approx 0.746824),$$

$$(iv) \ I = \int_0^{\pi} \sin^3 x \cos^4 x dx \text{ (exact value } \approx 0.114286)$$

$$(v) \ I = \int_0^1 (1 + e^{-x} \sin(4x)) dx. \text{ (exact value } \approx 1.308250)$$

Compute the relative error (when compared to the given exact values) in each method.

- (2) Write down the errors in the approximation of

$$\int_0^1 x^4 dx \quad \text{and} \quad \int_0^1 x^5 dx$$

by the Trapezoidal rule and Simpson's rule. Find the value of the constant  $C$  for which the Trapezoidal rule gives the exact result for the calculation of the integral

$$\int_0^1 (x^5 - Cx^4) dx.$$

- (3) A function  $f$  has the values shown below:

$x$	1	1.25	1.5	1.75	2
$f(x)$	10	8	7	6	5

- (i) Use trapezoidal rule to approximate  $\int_1^2 f(x) dx$ .
  - (ii) Use Simpson's rule to approximate  $\int_1^2 f(x) dx$ .
  - (iii) Use composite Simpson's rule to approximate  $\int_1^2 f(x) dx$ .
- (4) Obtain expressions for the arithmetic error in approximating the integral  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  using the trapezoidal and the Simpson's rules. Also obtain upper bounds.
- (5) Let  $a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n = b$  be equally spaced nodes (*i.e.*,  $x_k = x_0 + kh$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ) in the interval  $[a, b]$ . Note that  $h = (b - a)/n$ . Let  $f$  be a twice continuously differentiable function on  $[a, b]$ .
- (i) Show that the expression for the mathematical error in approximating the integral  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  using the composite trapezoidal rule, denoted by  $E_T^n(f)$ , is given by

$$E_T^n(f) = -\frac{(b-a)h^2}{12}f''(\xi),$$

for some  $\xi \in (a, b)$ .

- (ii) Show that the mathematical error  $E_T^n(f)$  tends to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  (one uses the terminology **Composite trapezoidal rule is convergent** in such a case).
- (6) Determine the minimum number of subintervals and the corresponding step size  $h$  so that the error for the composite trapezoidal rule is less than  $5 \times 10^{-9}$  for approximating the integral  $\int_2^7 dx/x$ .
- (7) Let  $a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n = b$  be equally spaced nodes (*i.e.*,  $x_k = x_0 + kh$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ) in the interval  $[a, b]$ , and  $n$  is an even natural number. Note that  $h = (b-a)/n$ . Let  $f$  be a four times continuously differentiable function on  $[a, b]$ .
  - (i) Show that the expression for the mathematical error in approximating the integral  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  using the composite Simpson rule, denoted by  $E_S^n(f)$ , is given by

$$E_S^n(f) = -\frac{(b-a)h^4}{180}f^{(4)}(\xi),$$

for some  $\xi \in (a, b)$ .

- (ii) Show that the mathematical error  $E_S^n(f)$  tends to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  (one uses the terminology **Composite Simpson rule is convergent** in such a case).
- (8) Use composite Simpson's and composite Trapezoidal rules to obtain an approximate value for the improper integral

$$\int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2 + 9} dx, \quad \text{with } n = 4.$$

- (9) Determine the coefficients in the quadrature formula

$$\int_0^{2h} x^{-1/2} f(x) dx \approx (2h)^{1/2} (w_0 f(0) + w_1 f(h) + w_2 f(2h))$$

such that the formula is exact for all polynomials of degree as high as possible. What is the degree of precision?

- (10) Use the two-point Gaussian quadrature rule to approximate  $\int_{-1}^1 dx/(x+2)$  and compare the result with the trapezoidal and Simpson's rules.
- (11) Assume that  $x_k = x_0 + kh$  are equally spaced nodes. The quadrature formula

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_3} f(x) dx \approx \frac{3h}{8} (f(x_0) + 3f(x_1) + 3f(x_2) + f(x_3))$$

is called the Simpson's  $\frac{3}{8}$  rule. Determine the degree of precision of Simpson's  $\frac{3}{8}$  rule.

## Numerical Differentiation

- (12) In this problem, perform the calculations using 6-digit rounding arithmetic.
- Find the value of the derivative of the function  $f(x) = \sin x$  at  $x = 1$  using the forward, backward, and central difference formulae with  $h_1 = 0.015625$ , and  $h_2 = 0.000015$ .
  - Find  $f'(1)$  directly and compare with the values obtained for each  $h_i$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ).
- (13) Obtain the central difference formula for  $f'(x)$  using polynomial interpolation with nodes at  $x - h$ ,  $x$ ,  $x + h$ , where  $h > 0$ .
- (14) Given the values of the function  $f(x) = \ln x$  at  $x_0 = 2.0$ ,  $x_1 = 2.2$  and  $x_2 = 2.6$ , find the approximate value of  $f'(2.0)$  using the method based on quadratic interpolation. Obtain an error bound.
- (15) The following data corresponds to the function  $f(x) = \sin x$ .

$x$	0.5	0.6	0.7
$f(x)$	0.4794	0.5646	0.6442

Obtain the approximate value of  $f'(0.5)$ ,  $f'(0.6)$ , and  $f'(0.7)$  using forward, backward, and central difference formulae whichever are applicable. Compute the relative error in all the three cases.

- (16) The following data corresponds to the function  $f(x) = e^x - 2x^2 + 3x + 1$ .

$x$	0.0	0.2	0.4
$f(x)$	0.0	0.7414	1.3718

Obtain the approximate value of  $f'(0.0)$ ,  $f'(0.2)$ , and  $f'(0.4)$  using forward, backward, and central difference formulae whichever are applicable. Compute the relative error in all the three cases.

- (17) Obtain expressions for the arithmetic error in approximating the first derivative of a function using the forward, backward, and central difference formulae.
- (18) Find an approximation to  $f'(x)$  as a formula involving  $f(x)$ ,  $f(x + h)$ , and  $f(x + 2h)$ . Obtain an expression for the mathematical error involved in this approximation.
- (19) Let  $h > 0$ . Use the method of undetermined coefficients to find a numerical differentiation formula for approximating  $f''(x)$  such that the formula uses values of the function  $f$  at each of the following sets of points:

- (i)  $x + 2h$ ,  $x + h$  and  $x$ .
- (ii)  $x + 3h$ ,  $x + 2h$ ,  $x + h$  and  $x$ .

Obtain expressions for mathematical error in both the cases.

- (20) Show that the formula

$$D^{(2)}f(x) := \frac{f(x) - 2f(x-h) + f(x-2h)}{h^2}$$

gives approximate value for  $f''(x)$ . Find the order of accuracy of this formula.

- (21) For the method

$$f'(x) \approx \frac{4f(x+h) - f(x+2h) - 3f(x)}{2h},$$

obtain an expression for mathematical error, arithmetic error, and hence total error. Find a bound on the absolute value of the total error as function of  $h$ . Determine the optimal value of  $h$  for which the bound obtained is minimum.

- (22) Repeat the previous problem when central difference formula is used for numerical differentiation.
- (23) Let  $f(x) = \ln(x)$  (here  $\ln$  denotes the natural logarithm). Give the formula for approximating  $f'(x)$  using central difference formula. When we use this formula to get an approximate value of  $f'(1.5)$  with the assumption that the function values  $f(1.5-h)$  and  $f(1.5+h)$  are rounded to 2 digits after decimal point, find the value of  $h$  such that the total error is minimized. (**Final Exam, Autumn 2010 (M.Sc.)**)
- (24) The voltage  $E = E(t)$  in an electrical circuit obeys the equation

$$E(t) = L \left( \frac{dI}{dt} \right) + RI(t),$$

where  $R$  is resistance and  $L$  is inductance. Use  $L = 0.05$  and  $R = 2$  and values for  $I(t)$  in the table following.

$x$	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4
$f(x)$	8.2277	7.2428	5.9908	4.5260	2.9122

Find  $I'(1.2)$  using (i) central difference formula, and (ii) the formula given in Problem (21) and use it to compute  $E(1.2)$ . Compare your answer with  $I(t) = 10e^{-t/10} \sin(2t)$ .

## CHAPTER 7

---

### Numerical Ordinary Differential Equations

Consider a first order ordinary differential equation (ODE) of the form

$$y' = f(x, y),$$

where  $y = y(x)$  is an unknown variable,  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  is an independent variable and the function  $f : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is given. Here, we used the notation  $y' := dy/dx$ . The objective is to find the solution  $y$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$  subject to an **initial condition**

$$y(x_0) = y_0, \quad x_0 \in [a, b].$$

We call the problem of solving the above ODE along with this initial condition, the **initial value problem**.

It is well-known that there are many ODEs of physical interest that cannot be solved exactly although we know that such problems have unique solutions. If one wants the solution of such problems, then the only way is to obtain it approximately. One common way of obtaining an approximate solution to a given initial value problem is to numerically compute the solution using a numerical method (or numerical scheme). In this chapter, we introduce some basic numerical methods for approximating the solution of a given initial value problem.

In Section 7.1, we review the exact solvability of a given initial value problem and motivate the need of numerical methods. In Section 7.3, we introduce a basic numerical method called **Euler's method** for obtaining approximate solution of an initial value problem and discussed the error involved in this method. We also show in this section that the Euler method is of order 1. Modified forms of Euler method can be obtained using numerical quadrature formulas as discussed in Section 7.4. Taylor approximation with higher order terms can be used to obtain numerical methods of higher order accuracy. However, such methods involve the higher order derivatives of the unknown function and are called **Taylor methods**. Taylor methods are hard to implement on a computer as they involve higher order derivatives. An alternate way of achieving higher order accuracy without using higher order derivatives of the unknown function is the famous **Runge-Kutta methods**. Runge-Kutta method of order 2 is derived in full detail in section 7.5 and the formula for the Runge-Kutta method of order 4 is stated.



## 7.1 Review of Theory

In this section, we will discuss solving an initial value problem (IVP) for an ordinary differential equation. Let  $f$  be a continuous function of two variables defined on a domain  $D \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ . Let  $(x_0, y_0) \in D$  be given. The initial value problem for an ODE is given by

$$y' = f(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in D, \quad (7.1.1a)$$

$$y(x_0) = y_0. \quad (7.1.1b)$$

The following result is concerning the equivalence of the initial value problem (7.1.1) with an integral equation.

**Lemma 7.1.** *A continuous function  $y$  defined on an interval  $I$  containing the point  $x_0$  is a solution of the initial value problem (7.1.1) if and only if  $y$  satisfies the integral equation*

$$y(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^x f(s, y(s)) ds, \quad (7.1.2)$$

for all  $x \in I$ .

**Proof:** If  $y$  is a solution of the initial value problem (7.1.1), then we have

$$y'(x) = f(x, y(x)). \quad (7.1.3)$$

Integrating the above equation from  $x_0$  to  $x$  yields the integral equation (7.1.2).

On the other hand let  $y$  be a solution of integral equation (7.1.2). Observe that, due to continuity of the function  $x \rightarrow y(x)$ , the function  $s \rightarrow f(s, y(s))$  is continuous on  $I$ . Thus by fundamental theorem of integral calculus, the right hand side of (7.1.2) is a differentiable function with respect to  $x$  and its derivative is given by the function  $x \rightarrow f(x, y(x))$ , which is a continuous function. From (7.1.2), we see that  $y$  is continuously differentiable and hence a direct differentiation of this equation yields the ODE (7.1.1a). Evaluating (7.1.2) at  $x = x_0$  gives the initial condition  $y(x_0) = y_0$ .  $\square$

**Remark 7.2.** The following are the consequences of Lemma 7.1.

- If  $f$  is a function of  $x$  only, ie.,  $f = f(x)$ , which can be integrated explicitly, then the integration on the right hand side of (7.1.2) can be obtained explicitly to get the solution  $y$  of the IVP (7.1.1a) exactly.

For instance, if  $f(x, y) = e^x$ , then the solution of (7.1.1a) is  $y(x) = y_0 + e^x - e^{x_0}$ .

- If  $f$  depends on  $y$ , ie.,  $f = f(x, y)$ , then (7.1.2) is an integral equation which in general cannot be solved explicitly. However, there are some particular cases, for instance when (7.1.1a) is linear, separable or exact, then we can obtain a solution of (7.1.1a). There are certain other cases where an integral factor can be obtained

through which the equation can be made exact. But, there are many ODEs for which none of the above mentioned methods can be used to obtain solution.

For instance, the equation

$$y' = x^2 + y^2$$

is clearly neither linear nor separable nor exact. Also any of the standard ways of finding integrating factor will not work for this equation.

When standard method cannot be used to obtain solutions exactly, several approximation procedures may be proposed for finding an approximate solution to the initial value problem (7.1.1). In these procedures, one may use the ODE (7.1.1a) itself or its equivalent integral formulation (7.1.2). If we choose the ODE (7.1.1a), then the derivative may be approximated by a numerical differentiation formula. In case we choose the integral formulation (7.1.2), then we may use various numerical integration techniques (quadrature rules) to adopt a numerical method for approximating the solution of the initial value problem (7.1.1).  $\square$

Before going for a numerical method, it is important to ensure that the given initial value problem has a unique solution. Otherwise, we will be solving an initial value problem numerically, which actually does not have a solution or it may have many solutions and we do not know which solution the numerical method obtains. Let us illustrate the non-uniqueness of solution of an initial value problem.

**Example 7.3 (Peano).** Let us consider the initial value problem

$$y' = 3y^{2/3}, \quad y(0) = 0. \quad (7.1.4)$$

Note that  $y(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  is clearly a solution for this initial value problem. Also,  $y(x) = x^3$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . This initial value problem has infinite family of solutions parametrized by  $c \geq 0$ , given by

$$y_c(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \leq c, \\ (x - c)^3 & \text{if } x > c, \end{cases}$$

defined for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Thus, we see that a solution to an initial value problem need not be unique.  $\square$

However by placing additional conditions on  $f$ , we can achieve uniqueness as stated in the following theorem. The proof of this theorem is omitted for this course.

**Theorem 7.4 (Cauchy-Lipschitz-Picard's Existence and Uniqueness Theorem).** Let  $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^2$  be a domain and  $I \subset \mathbb{R}$  be an interval. Let  $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function. Let  $(x_0, y_0) \in D$  be a point such that the rectangle  $R$  defined by

$$R = \{x : |x - x_0| \leq a\} \times \{y : |y - y_0| \leq b\} \quad (7.1.5)$$

is contained in  $D$ . Let  $f$  be Lipschitz continuous with respect to the variable  $y$  on  $R$ , i.e., there exists a  $K > 0$  such that

$$|f(x, y_1) - f(x, y_2)| \leq K|y_1 - y_2| \quad \forall (x, y_1), (x, y_2) \in R.$$

Then the initial value problem (7.1.1) has at least one solution on the interval  $|x - x_0| \leq \delta$  where  $\delta = \min\{a, \frac{b}{M}\}$ . Moreover, the initial value problem (7.1.1) has exactly one solution on this interval.

**Remark 7.5.** We state without proof that the function  $f(x, y) = y^{2/3}$  in Example 7.3 is not a Lipschitz function on any rectangle containing the point  $(0, 0)$  in it.

While verifying that a given function  $f$  is Lipschitz continuous is a little difficult, one can easily give a set of alternative conditions that guarantee Lipschitz continuity, and also these conditions are easy to verify.

**Lemma 7.6.** Let  $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^2$  be an open set and  $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function such that its partial derivative with respect to the variable  $y$  is also continuous on  $D$ , i.e.,  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a continuous function. Let the rectangle  $R$  defined by

$$R = \{x : |x - x_0| \leq a\} \times \{y : |y - y_0| \leq b\}$$

be contained in  $D$ . Then  $f$  is Lipschitz continuous with respect to the variable  $y$  on  $R$ .

**Proof:** Let  $(x, y_1), (x, y_2) \in R$ . Applying mean value theorem with respect to the  $y$  variable, we get

$$f(x, y_1) - f(x, y_2) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, \xi)(y_1 - y_2), \quad (7.1.6)$$

for some  $\xi$  between  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ . Since we are applying mean value theorem by fixing  $x$ , this  $\xi$  will also depend on  $x$ . However since  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a continuous function, it will be bounded on  $R$ . That is, there exists a number  $L > 0$  such that

$$\left| \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) \right| \leq L \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in R. \quad (7.1.7)$$

Taking modulus in the equation (7.1.6), and using the last inequality we get

$$|f(x, y_1) - f(x, y_2)| = \left| \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, \xi) \right| |(y_1 - y_2)| \leq L |(y_1 - y_2)|.$$

This finishes the proof of lemma.  $\square$

The following theorem can be used as a tool to check the existence and uniqueness of solution of a given initial value problem (7.1.1).

**Corollary 7.7 (Existence and Uniqueness Theorem).**

Let  $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^2$  be a domain and  $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  be an interval. Let  $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function. Let  $(x_0, y_0) \in D$  be a point such that the rectangle  $R$  defined by

$$R = \{x : |x - x_0| \leq a\} \times \{y : |y - y_0| \leq b\} \quad (7.1.8)$$

is contained in  $D$ .

If the partial derivative  $\partial f / \partial y$  is also continuous in  $D$ , then there exists a unique solution  $y = y(x)$  of the initial value problem (7.1.1) defined on the interval  $|x - x_0| \leq \delta$  where  $\delta = \min\{a, \frac{b}{M}\}$ .

We state an example (without details) of an initial value problem that has a unique solution but the right hand side function in the differential equation is not a Lipschitz function. Thus this example illustrates the fact that condition of Lipschitz continuity is only a sufficient condition for uniqueness and by no means necessary.

**Example 7.8.** The IVP

$$y' = \begin{cases} y \sin \frac{1}{y} & \text{if } y \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } y = 0, \end{cases} \quad y(0) = 0.$$

has unique solution, despite the RHS not being Lipschitz continuous with respect to the variable  $y$  on any rectangle containing  $(0, 0)$ .  $\square$

**Remark 7.9 (On Existence and Uniqueness Theorem).**

- (1) Though we have stated existence theorems without proof, we can confirm that their proofs do not give an explicit solution of the initial value problem being considered. In fact, the proofs give a sequence of functions that converge to a solution of the initial value problem.
- (2) Even when the RHS of the ordinary differential equation is a function of  $x$  only, we do not have explicit solutions. For example,

$$y' = e^{-x^2}, \quad y(0) = 0.$$

The only alternative is to approximate its solution by a numerical procedure.  $\square$

## 7.2 Discretization Notations

A numerical method gives approximate value of the solution of the initial value problem (7.1.1) at only a discrete set of point. Thus, if we are interested in obtaining solution for (7.1.1a) in an interval  $[a, b]$ , then we first discretize the interval as

$$a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n = b, \quad (7.2.9)$$

where each point  $x_i$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$  is called a **node**. Unless otherwise stated, we always assume that the nodes are equally spaced. That is,

$$x_j = x_0 + jh, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, n \quad (7.2.10)$$

for a sufficiently small positive real number  $h$ . We use the notation for the approximate solution as

$$y_j = y_h(x_j) \approx y(x_j), \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, n. \quad (7.2.11)$$

### 7.3 Euler's Method

The most simplest numerical method for a first order ordinary differential equation (7.1.1a) is obtained by replace the first order derivative of the unknown function by its finite difference formula. Assume that we know the value of the unknown function  $y$  at a point  $x = x_0$ . For obtaining the value of  $y$  at the point  $x_1 = x_0 + h$ , we use the forward difference formula for the derivative given by

$$y'(x) \approx \frac{1}{h}(y(x+h) - y(x))$$

in (7.1.1a) to get

$$\frac{1}{h}(y(x_1) - y(x_0)) \approx f(x_0, y(x_0)).$$

This can be used to obtain the value of  $y(x_1)$  in terms of  $x_0$  and  $y(x_0)$  as

$$y(x_1) \approx y(x_0) + hf(x_0, y(x_0)).$$

Since we assumed that we know the value of  $y(x_0)$ , the right hand side is fully known and hence  $y(x_1)$  can now be computed explicitly.

In general, if you know the value of  $y(x_j)$ ,  $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , we can obtain the value of  $y(x_{j+1})$  by using the forward difference formula in (7.1.1a) at  $x = x_j$  to get

$$\frac{1}{h}(y(x_{j+1}) - y(x_j)) \approx f(x_j, y(x_j)).$$

Denoting the approximate value of  $y(x_j)$  by  $y_j$ , we can adopt the formula

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + hf(x_j, y_j), \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1 \quad (7.3.12)$$

for obtaining the values of the solution  $y$  at the discrete points  $x_j$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$  by taking the value of  $y_0$  from the initial condition (7.1.1b). The formula (7.3.12) is called the **forward Euler's method**.

The **backward Euler's method** can be obtained by using the backward difference formula for the derivative of  $y$  in (7.1.1) and is given by

$$y_{j-1} = y_j - hf(x_j, y_j), \quad j = 0, -1, \dots, -n+1. \quad (7.3.13)$$

By **Euler's method** we mean either forward or backward Euler's method depending on the context.

### Geometrical Interpretation:

A geometric insight into Euler's method is shown in Figure 7.1. The tangent line to the graph of  $y(x)$  at  $x = x_j$  has slope  $f(x_j, y_j)$ . The Euler's method approximates the value of  $y(x_{j+1})$  by the corresponding value of tangent line at the point  $x = x_{j+1}$ .

□

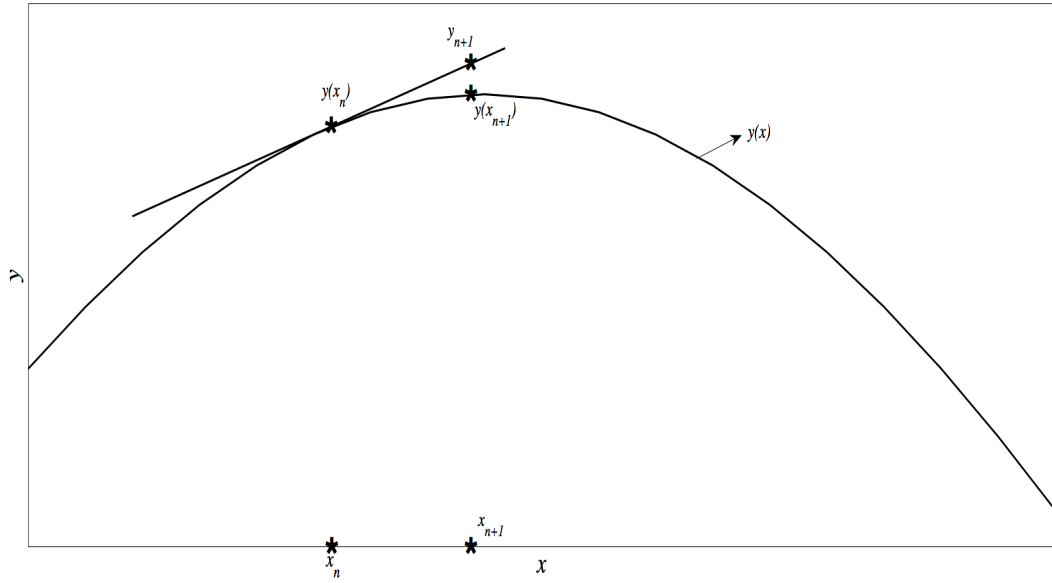


Fig. 7.1. Geometrical interpretation of Euler's method

**Example 7.10.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = y, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

The Euler method (7.3.12) for this equation takes the form

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + hy_j = (1 + h)y_j.$$

Note that the exact solution for the given initial value problem is  $y(x) = e^x$ .

On applying Euler's method with  $h = 0.01$  and using 7-digit rounding, we get

$$\begin{aligned}y(0.01) &\approx y_1 = 1 + 0.01 = 1.01 \\y(0.02) &\approx y_2 = 1.01 + 0.01(1.01) = 1.0201 \\y(0.03) &\approx y_3 = 1.0201 + 0.01(1.0201) = 1.030301 \\y(0.04) &\approx y_4 = 1.030301 + 0.01(1.030301) = 1.040604\end{aligned}$$

The numerical results along with the error is presented in the following table for  $h = 0.01$ .

$h$	$x$	$y_h(x)$	Exact Solution	Error	Relative Error
0.01	0.00	1.000000	1.000000	0.000000	0.000000
0.01	0.01	1.010000	1.010050	0.000050	0.000050
0.01	0.02	1.020100	1.020201	0.000101	0.000099
0.01	0.03	1.030301	1.030455	0.000154	0.000149
0.01	0.04	1.040604	1.040811	0.000207	0.000199
0.01	0.05	1.051010	1.051271	0.000261	0.000248

Since the exact solution of this equation is  $y = e^x$ , the correct value at  $x = 0.04$  is 1.040811.

By taking smaller values of  $h$ , we may improve the accuracy in the Euler's method. The numerical results along with the error is shown in the following table for  $h = 0.005$ .

$h$	$x$	$y_h(x)$	Exact Solution	Error	Relative Error
0.005	0.00	1.000000	1.000000	0.000000	0.000000
0.005	0.005	1.005000	1.005013	0.000013	0.000012
0.005	0.01	1.010025	1.010050	0.000025	0.000025
0.005	0.015	1.015075	1.015113	0.000038	0.000037
0.005	0.02	1.020151	1.020201	0.000051	0.000050
0.005	0.025	1.025251	1.025315	0.000064	0.000062
0.005	0.03	1.030378	1.030455	0.000077	0.000075
0.005	0.035	1.035529	1.035620	0.000090	0.000087
0.005	0.04	1.040707	1.040811	0.000104	0.000100
0.005	0.045	1.045910	1.046028	0.000117	0.000112
0.005	0.05	1.051140	1.051271	0.000131	0.000125

### 7.3.1 Error in Euler's Method

In Example (7.10), we illustrated that as we reduce the step size  $h$ , we tend to get more accurate solution of a given IVP at a given point  $x = x_j$ . The truncation error confirms this illustration when  $y''$  is a bounded function. However, the mathematical error which involves the truncation error in the computed solution  $y_j$  and the propagating error from the computation of the solution at  $x = x_i$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, j-1$ .

In addition to the mathematical error, we also have arithmetic error due to floating-point approximation in each arithmetic operation. In this section, we study the total error involved in forward Euler's method. Total error involved in backward Euler's method can be obtained in a similar way.

Using Taylor's theorem, write

$$y(x_{j+1}) = y(x_j) + hy'(x_j) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_j)$$

for some  $x_j < \xi_j < x_{j+1}$ . Since  $y(x)$  satisfies the ODE  $y' = f(x, y(x))$ , we get

$$y(x_{j+1}) = y(x_j) + hf(x_j, y(x_j)) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_j).$$

Thus, the local **truncation error** in forward Euler's method is

$$T_{j+1} = \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_j), \quad (7.3.14)$$

which is the error involved in obtaining the value  $y(x_{j+1})$  using the exact value  $y(x_j)$ . The forward Euler's method uses the approximate value  $y_j$  in the formula and therefore the finally computed value  $y_{j+1}$  not only involves the truncation error but also the propagated error involved in computing  $y_j$ . Thus, the local **mathematical error** in the forward Euler's method is given by

$$\text{ME}(y_{j+1}) := y(x_{j+1}) - y_{j+1} = y(x_j) - y_j + h(f(x_j, y(x_j)) - f(x_j, y_j)) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_j).$$

Here,  $y(x_j) - y_j + h(f(x_j, y(x_j)) - f(x_j, y_j))$  is the propagated error.

The propagated error can be simplified by applying the mean value theorem to  $f(x, z)$  considering it as a function of  $z$ :

$$f(x_j, y(x_j)) - f(x_j, y_j) = \frac{\partial f(x_j, \eta_j)}{\partial z}[y(x_j) - y_j],$$

for some  $\eta_j$  lying between  $y(x_j)$  and  $y_j$ . Using this, we get the mathematical error

$$\text{ME}(y_{j+1}) = \left[1 + h \frac{\partial f(x_j, \eta_j)}{\partial z}\right] \text{ME}(y_j) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_j) \quad (7.3.15)$$

for some  $x_j < \xi_j < x_{j+1}$ , and  $\eta_j$  lying between  $y(x_j)$  and  $y_j$ .

We now assume that over the interval of interest,

$$\left| \frac{\partial f(x_j, y(x_j))}{\partial z} \right| < L, \quad |y''(x)| < Y,$$

where  $L$  and  $Y$  are fixed positive constants. On taking absolute values in (7.3.15), we obtain



$$|\text{ME}(y_{j+1})| \leq (1 + hL)|\text{ME}(y_j)| + \frac{h^2}{2}Y. \quad (7.3.16)$$

Applying the above estimate recursively, we get

$$\begin{aligned} |\text{ME}(y_{j+1})| &\leq (1 + hL)^2|\text{ME}(y_{j-1})| + (1 + (1 + hL))\frac{h^2}{2}Y \\ &\leq \dots \\ &\leq \dots \\ &\leq (1 + hL)^{j+1}|\text{ME}(y_0)| + \left(1 + (1 + hL) + (1 + hL)^2 + \dots + (1 + hL)^j\right)\frac{h^2}{2}Y. \end{aligned}$$

Using the formulas

(1) For any  $\alpha \neq 1$ ,

$$1 + \alpha + \alpha^2 + \dots + \alpha^j = \frac{\alpha^{j+1} - 1}{\alpha - 1}$$

(2) For any  $x \geq -1$ ,

$$(1 + x)^N \leq e^{Nx},$$

in the above inequality, we have proved the following theorem.

**Theorem 7.11.** Let  $y \in C^2[a, b]$  be a solution of the IVP (7.1.1) with

$$\left| \frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial y} \right| < L, \quad |y''(x)| < Y,$$

for all  $x$  and  $y$ , and some constants  $L > 0$  and  $Y > 0$ . The mathematical error in the forward Euler's method at a point  $x_j = x_0 + jh$  satisfies

$$|\text{ME}(y_j)| \leq \frac{hY}{2L} (e^{(x_n - x_0)L} - 1) + e^{(x_n - x_0)L} |y(x_0) - y_0| \quad (7.3.17)$$

**Example 7.12.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = y, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad x \in [0, 1].$$

Let us now find the upper bound for the mathematical error of forward Euler's method in solving this problem.

Here  $f(x, y) = y$ . Therefore,  $\partial f / \partial y = 1$  and hence we can take  $L = 1$ .

Since  $y = e^x$ ,  $y'' = e^x$  and  $|y''(x)| \leq e$  for  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ . Therefore, we take  $Y = e$ .

We now use the estimate (7.3.17) with  $x_0 = 0$  and  $x_n = 1$  to obtain

$$|\text{ME}(y_j)| \leq \frac{he}{2}(e - 1) \approx 2.3354h.$$

Here, we assume that there is no approximation in the initial condition and therefore the second term in (7.3.17) is zero.

To validate the upper bound obtained above, we shall compute the approximate solution of the given IVP using forward Euler's method. The method for the given IVP reads

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + hf(x_j, y_j) = (1 + h)y_j.$$

The solution of this difference equation satisfying  $y(0) = 1$  is

$$y_j = (1 + h)^j.$$

Now, if  $h = 0.1$ ,  $n = 10$ , we have  $y_j = (1.1)^{10}$ . Therefore, the forward Euler's method gives  $y(1) \approx y_{10} \approx 2.5937$ . But the exact value is  $y(1) = e \approx 2.71828$ . The error is 0.12466, whereas the bound obtained from (7.3.17) was 0.2354.  $\square$

**Remark 7.13.** The error bound (7.3.17) is valid for a large family of the initial value problems. But, it usually produces a very poor estimate due to the presence of the exponential terms. For instance, in the above example, if we take  $x_n$  to be very large, then the corresponding bound will also be very large.  $\square$

The above error analysis assumes that the numbers used are of infinite precision and no floating point approximation is assumed. When we include the floating point approximation that  $y_n = \tilde{y}_n + \epsilon_n$ , then the bound for total error is given in the following theorem. The proof of this theorem is left as an exercise.

**Theorem 7.14.** Let  $y \in C^2[a, b]$  be a solution of the IVP (7.1.1) with

$$\left| \frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial y} \right| < L, \quad |y''(x)| < Y,$$

for all  $x$  and  $y$ , and some constants  $L > 0$  and  $Y > 0$ . Let  $y_j$  be the approximate solution of (7.1.1) computed using the forward Euler's method (7.3.12) with infinite precision and let  $\tilde{y}_j$  be the corresponding computed value using finite digit floating-point arithmetic. If

$$y_j = \tilde{y}_j + \epsilon_j,$$

then the total error  $\text{TE}(y_j) := y(x_j) - \tilde{y}_j$  in forward Euler's method at a point  $x_j = x_0 + jh$  satisfies

$$|\text{TE}(y_j)| \leq \frac{1}{L} \left( \frac{hY}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{h} \right) (e^{(x_n - x_0)L} - 1) + e^{(x_n - x_0)L} |\epsilon_0|, \quad (7.3.18)$$

where  $\epsilon := \max\{|\epsilon_i|/i : i = 0, 1, \dots, n\}$ .  $\square$

## 7.4 Modified Euler's Methods

The Euler's method derived in the previous section can also be derived using the equivalent integral form of the IVP (7.1.1) as discussed in Lemma 7.1. Using this integral form in the interval  $[x_j, x_{j+1}]$ , we get

$$y(x_{j+1}) = y(x_j) + \int_{x_j}^{x_{j+1}} f(s, y) ds. \quad (7.4.19)$$

The Euler's method can be obtained by replacing the integral on the right hand side by the rectangle rule.

Using the integral form in the interval  $[x_{j-1}, x_{j+1}]$  and using the **mid-point** quadrature formula given by

$$\int_{x_{j-1}}^{x_{j+1}} f(s, y) ds \approx f(x_j, y_j)(x_{j+1} - x_{j-1}),$$

we get the **Euler's mid-point method**

$$y_{j+1} = y_{j-1} + 2hf(x_j, y_j). \quad (7.4.20)$$

To compute the value of  $y_{j+1}$ , we need to know the value of  $y_{j-1}$  and  $y_j$ . Note that the above formula cannot be used to compute the value of  $y_1$ . Hence, we need another method to obtain  $y_1$  and then  $y_j$ , for  $j = 2, 3, \dots, n$  can be obtained using (7.4.20). This method belongs to the class of **2-step methods**.

**Example 7.15.** Consider the initial-value problem

$$y' = y, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

To obtain the approximate value of  $y(0.04)$  with  $h = 0.01$ :

We first use Euler's method to get

$$y(0.01) \approx y_1 = 1 + 0.01 = 1.01$$

Next use Euler's mid-point method to get

$$y(0.02) \approx y_2 = y_0 + 2 \times h \times y_1 = 1 + 2 \times 0.01 \times 1.01 = 1.0202$$

$$y(0.03) \approx y_3 = y_1 + 2 \times h \times y_2 = 1.01 + 2 \times 0.01 \times 1.0202 \approx 1.030404$$

$$y(0.04) \approx y_4 = y_2 + 2 \times h \times y_3 = 1.040808$$

Since the exact solution of this equation is  $y = e^x$ , the correct value at  $x = 0.04$  is 1.040811. The error is 0.000003.

Recall the error in Euler method was 0.000199. □

The methods derived above are **explicit methods** in the sense that the value of  $y_{j+1}$  is computed using the known values. If we using the trapezoidal rule for the integration on the right hand side of (7.4.19), we get

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + \frac{h}{2}(f(x_j, y_j) + f(x_{j+1}, y_{j+1})). \quad (7.4.21)$$

This method is called the **Euler's Trapezoidal method**. Here, we see that the formula (7.4.21) involves an implicit relation for  $y_{j+1}$ . Such methods are referred to as **implicit methods**.

Although the Euler's Trapezoidal method gives an implicit relation for  $y_{j+1}$ , sometimes it is explicit to compute the values  $y_{j+1}$  as illustrated in the following example.

**Example 7.16.** Let us use the Euler's trapezoidal rule with  $h = 0.2$  to obtain the approximate solution of the initial value problem

$$y' = xy, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

We have  $y_0 = 1$  and

$$y_1 = y_0 + \frac{h}{2}(x_0 y_0 + x_1 y_1) = 1 + 0.1(0 + 0.2 y_1),$$

which gives  $(1 - 0.02)y_1 = 1$ , and this implies  $y_1 \approx 1.0204$ . Similarly,

$$y_2 = y_1 + \frac{h}{2}(x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2) = 1.0204 + 0.1(0.2 \times 1.0204 + 0.4 y_2),$$

and

$$y(0.4) \approx y_2 = \frac{1.0408}{1 - 0.04} \approx 1.0842.$$

□

In general, the Euler's trapezoidal rule gives a nonlinear equation for  $y_{j+1}$  as illustrated below.

**Example 7.17.** Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = e^{-y}, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

We use the Euler's trapezoidal rule with  $h = 0.2$  to solve the above problem. We have,

$$y_1 = y_0 + \frac{h}{2}(e^{-y_0} + e^{-y_1}) = 1 + 0.1(e^{-1} + e^{-y_1}),$$

which gives the nonlinear equation

$$g(y_1) = y_1 - 0.1e^{-y_1} - (1 + 0.1e^{-1}) = 0,$$

and the solution of this equation is the approximate value of the solution  $y(x_1)$  of the given initial value problem. □

## 7.5 Runge-Kutta Methods

Although Euler's method is easy to implement, this method is not so efficient in the sense that to get a better approximation, one needs a very small step size. One way to get a better accuracy is to include the higher order terms in the Taylor expansion to get an approximation to  $y'$ . But the higher order terms involve higher derivatives of  $y$ . The **Runge-Kutta methods** attempts to obtain higher order accuracy and at the same time avoid the need for higher derivatives, by evaluating the function  $f(x, y)$  at selected points on each subintervals. We first derive the Runge-Kutta method of order 2. The derivation of the Runge-Kutta method of order 4 can be done in a similar way. So, we skip the derivation of this method and present only final formula.

### 7.5.1 Order Two

Let  $y$  be a solution of the ODE (7.1.1a). The Runge-Kutta method of order 2 is obtained by truncating the Taylor expansion of  $y(x + h)$  after the quadratic term. We derive now a formula for this method. Taylor expansion of  $y(x + h)$  at the point  $x$  upto the quadratic term is given by

$$y(x + h) = y(x) + hy'(x) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(x) + O(h^3). \quad (7.5.22)$$

Since  $y$  satisfies the given ODE  $y' = f(x, y)$ , by differentiating this ODE with respect to  $x$  both sides gives

$$y''(x) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y(x)) + y'(x) \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y(x)) \quad (7.5.23)$$

Substituting the values of  $y', y''$  in (7.5.22), we get

$$y(x + h) = y(x) + hf(x, y(x)) + \frac{h^2}{2} \left[ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y(x)) + f(x, y(x)) \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y(x)) \right] + O(h^3).$$

The last equation is re-written as

$$\begin{aligned} y(x + h) = & y(x) + \frac{h}{2}f(x, y(x)) \\ & + \frac{h}{2} \left[ f(x, y(x)) + h \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y(x)) + hf(x, y(x)) \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y(x)) \right] \\ & + O(h^3) \end{aligned} \quad (7.5.24)$$

Taking  $x = x_j$  for  $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$  with  $x_{j+1} = x_j + h$  in (7.5.24), we get

$$\begin{aligned} y(x_{j+1}) = & y(x_j) + \frac{h}{2}f(x_j, y(x_j)) \\ & + \frac{h}{2} \left[ f(x_j, y(x_j)) + h \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_j, y(x_j)) + hf(x_j, y(x_j)) \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_j, y(x_j)) \right] \\ & + O(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (7.5.25)$$

Let us now expand the function  $f = f(s, t)$ , which is a function of two variables, into its Taylor series at the point  $(\xi, \tau)$  and truncate the series after the linear term. It is given by

$$f(s, t) = f(\xi, \tau) + (s - \xi) \frac{\partial f}{\partial s}(\xi, \tau) + (t - \tau) \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(\xi, \tau) + O((s - \xi)^2) + O((t - \tau)^2).$$

Taking  $(\xi, \tau) = (x_j, y(x_j))$  and comparing the above equation with the term in the square brackets in the equation (7.5.25), we get

$$y(x_{j+1}) = y(x_j) + \frac{h}{2} f(x_j, y(x_j)) + \frac{h}{2} [f(x_{j+1}, y(x_j)) + hf(x_j, y(x_j))] + O(h^3). \quad (7.5.26)$$

Truncating the higher order terms and denoting the approximate value of  $y(x_{j+1})$  as  $y_{j+1}$ , we get

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + \frac{h}{2} f(x_j, y_j) + \frac{h}{2} [f(x_{j+1}, y_j + hf(x_j, y_j))]. \quad (7.5.27)$$

Although the terms dropped from (7.5.26) to get (7.5.27) are of order 3 (namely,  $O(h^3)$ ), the resultant approximation to  $y'$  is of order 2 as is evident from the Taylor's formula (7.5.22). The equation (7.5.27) is therefore known as **Runge-Kutta method of order 2**. To facilitate easy memorizing, the formula (7.5.27) may be written as

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + \frac{1}{2}(k_1 + k_2),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= h f(x_j, y_j) \\ k_2 &= h f(x_{j+1}, y_j + k_1). \end{aligned}$$

The truncation error of Runge-Kutta method of order 2 is of order  $O(h^3)$  whereas the Euler's method is of order  $O(h^2)$ . Therefore, for a fixed  $h > 0$  we expect to get more accurate result from Runge-Kutta method order 2 when compared to Euler's method.

**Example 7.18.** Consider the initial-value problem

$$y' = y, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

Using Runge-Kutta method of order 2, we obtain

$x$	$y$	$k_1$	$k_2$
0.000000	1.000000	0.010000	0.010100
0.010000	1.010050	0.010000	0.010100
0.020000	1.020201	0.010100	0.010202
0.030000	1.030454	0.010202	0.010304
0.040000	1.040810	0.010305	0.010408

Recall the exact solution is  $y(x) = e^x$  and  $y(0.04) \approx 1.040811$ . Therefore, the error involved is 0.000001 which is much less than the error (0.000199) obtained in Euler's method for  $h = 0.01$ .  $\square$

### 7.5.2 Order Four

We state without derivation, the formula for the **Runge-Kutta method of order 4**.

$$y_{j+1} = y_j + \frac{1}{6}(k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= hf(x_j, y_j), \\ k_2 &= hf\left(x_j + \frac{h}{2}, y_j + \frac{k_1}{2}\right), \\ k_3 &= hf\left(x_j + \frac{h}{2}, y_j + \frac{k_2}{2}\right), \\ k_4 &= hf(x_j + h, y_j + k_3) \end{aligned}$$

The local truncation error of the 4<sup>th</sup> order Runge-Kutta Method is of  $O(h^5)$ .

**Example 7.19.** Consider the initial-value problem

$$y' = y, \quad y(0) = 1.$$

Using Runge-Kutta method of order 4, we obtain

$x_j$	$y_j$	Exact Solution	Error	Relative Error
0.00	1.000000	1.000000	0.000000	0.000000
0.01	1.010050	1.010050	0.000000	0.000000
0.02	1.020201	1.020201	0.000000	0.000000
0.03	1.030455	1.030455	0.000000	0.000000
0.04	1.040811	1.040811	0.000000	0.000000

Note that the exact solution is  $y(x) = e^x$ .

□

## 7.6 Exercises

- (1) Let  $h > 0$  and let  $x_j = x_0 + jh$  ( $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ) be given nodes. Consider the initial value problem  $y'(x) = f(x, y)$ ,  $y(x_0) = y_0$ , with

$$\frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial y} \leq 0,$$

for all  $x \in [x_0, x_n]$  and for all  $y$ .

- (i) Using error analysis of the Euler's method, show that there exists an  $h > 0$  such that

$$|e_n| \leq |e_{n-1}| + \frac{h^2}{2} f''(\xi) \quad \text{for some } \xi \in (x_{n-1}, x_n),$$

where  $e_n = y(x_n) - y_n$  with  $y_n$  obtained using Euler method.

- (ii) Applying the conclusion of (i) above recursively, prove that

$$|e_n| \leq |e_0| + n h^2 Y \quad \text{where } Y = \frac{1}{2} \max_{x_0 \leq x \leq x_n} |y''(x)|. \quad (**)$$

- (2) The solution of the initial value problem

$$y'(x) = \lambda y(x) + \cos x - \lambda \sin x, \quad y(0) = 0$$

is  $y(x) = \sin x$ . For  $\lambda = -20$ , find the approximate value of  $y(3)$  using the Euler's method with  $h = 0.5$ . Compute the error bound given in (\*\*), and Show that the actual absolute error exceeds the computed error bound given in (\*\*). Explain why it does not contradict the validity of (\*\*).

- (3) Derive the backward Euler's method for finding the approximate value of  $y(x_n)$  for some  $x_n < 0$ , where  $y$  satisfies the initial value problem  $y'(x) = f(x, y)$ ,  $y(0) = y_0$ .
- (4) Consider the initial value problem  $y' = -2y$ ,  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ ,  $y(0) = 1$ .
- Find an upper bound on the error in approximating the value of  $y(1)$  computed using the Euler's method (at  $x = 1$ ) in terms of the step size  $h$ .
  - For each  $h$ , solve the difference equation which results from the Euler's method, and obtain an approximate value of  $y(1)$ .
  - Find the error involved in the approximate value of  $y(1)$  obtained in (ii) above by comparing with the exact solution.
  - Compare the error bound obtained in (i) with the actual error obtained in (iii) for  $h = 0.1$ , and for  $h = 0.01$ .
  - If we want the absolute value of the error obtained in (iii) to be at most  $0.5 \times 10^{-6}$ , then how small the step size  $h$  should be?
- (5) Consider the initial value problem  $y' = xy$ ,  $y(0) = 1$ . Estimate the error involved in the approximate value of  $y(1)$  computed using the Euler's method (with infinite precision) with step size  $h = 0.01$ .
- (6) Find an upper bound for the propagated error in Euler method (with infinite precision) with  $h = 0.1$  for solving the initial value problem  $y' = y$ ,  $y(0) = 1$ , in the interval
- $[0, 1]$  and



(ii)  $[0, 5]$ .

- (7) For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , write down the Euler's method for the solution of the initial value problem  $y' = y$ ,  $y(0) = 1$  on the interval  $[0, 1]$  with step size  $h = 1/n$ . Let the resulting approximation to  $y(1)$  be denoted by  $\alpha_n$ . Show using limiting argument (without using the error bound) that  $\alpha_n \rightarrow y(1)$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (8) In each of the following initial value problems, use the Euler's method, Runge-Kutta method of order 2 and 4 to find the solution at the specified point with specified step size  $h$ :
- (i)  $y' = x + y$ ;  $y(0) = 1$ . Find  $y(0.2)$  (For the Euler's method take  $h = 0.1$  and for other methods, take  $h = 0.2$ ). The exact solution is  $y(x) = -1 - x + 2e^x$ .
- (ii)  $y' = 2 \cos x - y$ ,  $y(0) = 1$ . Find  $y(0.6)$  (For the Euler's method take  $h = 0.1$  and for other methods, take  $h = 0.2$ ) The exact solution is  $y(x) = \sin x + \cos x$ .
- (9) Use the Euler's, Runge-Kutta methods of order 2 and 4 to solve the IVP  $y' = 0.5(x - y)$  for all  $x \in [0, 3]$  with initial condition  $y(0) = 1$ . Compare the solutions for  $h = 1, 0.5, 0.25, 0.125$  along with the exact solution  $y(x) = 3e^{-x/2} + x - 2$ .
- (10) Show that the Euler's and Runge-Kutta methods fail to determine an approximation to the non-trivial solution of the initial value problem  $y' = y^\alpha$ ,  $0 < \alpha < 1$ ,  $y(0) = 0$ . Note that the ODE is in separable form and hence a non-trivial solution to initial value problem can be found analytically.
- (11) Write the formula using the Euler's method for approximating the solution to the initial value problem

$$y' = x^2 + y^2, \quad y(x_0) = y_0$$

at the point  $x = x_1$  with  $h = x_1 - x_0 > 0$ . Find the approximate value  $y_1$  of the solution to this initial value problem at the point  $x_1$  when  $x_0 = 0$ ,  $y_0 = 1$ , and  $h = 0.25$ . Find a bound for the truncation error in obtaining  $y_1$ .

- (12) Using the Gaussian rule determine a formula for solving the initial value problem

$$y' = e^{-x^2}, \quad y(x_0) = y_0.$$

in the form

$$y_{j+1} = y_{j-1} + h \left( e^{-(x_j - \frac{h}{\sqrt{3}})^2} + e^{-(x_j + \frac{h}{\sqrt{3}})^2} \right)$$

when the nodes are **equally spaced** with spacing  $h = x_{j+1} - x_j$ ,  $j \in \mathbb{Z}$ . ( $h > 0$ ). Let  $x_0 = 0$ , and  $y_0 = 1$ . Using the method derived above, obtain approximate values of  $y(-0.1)$  and  $y(0.1)$ . **(Mid-sem Exam, Spring 2012)**

---

# Index

- $l_1$  norm, 73
- $n$ -digit floating-point number, 30
- 2-step method, 234
  
- Absolute error, 36
- Arithmetic error, 29
  - in interpolating polynomial, 174, 177
  
- Backward difference, 210
- Backward substitution, 54, 59, 64
- Big Oh, 21, 22
- Binary representation, 30
- Bisection method, 120
- Bounded sequence, 8
- Bracketing method, 120
  
- Central difference, 210
- Chebyshev nodes, 183
- Cholesky's factorization, 70
- Chopping a number, 34
- Closed domain method, 120
- Composite
  - Simpson's rule, 204
  - trapezoidal rule, 200
- Condition number
  - of a function, 44
  - of a matrix, 77
- Continuity of a function, 11
- Continuous function, 11
- Contraction map, 143
- Convergent sequence, 8
- Crout's factorization, 70
- Cubic spline, 185
  
- Data, 160
- Decimal representation, 30
- Decreasing sequence, 8
- Degree of precision, 205
- Derivative of a function, 12
- Diagonally dominant matrix, 84
- Difference
  - backward, 210
  - central, 210
  - forward, 209
- Differentiable function, 12
- Direct method, 51, 53, 80
- Divided difference, 167
  - higher-order formula, 168
  - symmetry, 168
- Dominant eigenvalue, 93
- Doolittle's factorization, 65
- Double precision, 34
  
- Eigenvalue
  - Power method, 95
  - dominant, 93
- Error, 36
  - absolute, 36
  - arithmetic, 29
  - floating-point, 42
  - in Euler's method, 230
  - in interpolating polynomial, 174
    - arithmetic, 174, 177
    - mathematical, 174, 175
    - total, 174
  - in iterative procedure, 84
  - in rectangle rule, 196
  - in Simpson's rule, 202
  - in trapezoidal rule, 198
  - mathematical, 29
  - percentage, 36
  - propagated, 42
  - propagation of, 40
  - relative, 36
  - relative total, 42
  - residual, 88
  - total, 29, 42
  - truncation, 18, 37
- Euclidean norm, 73
- Euler's method
  - forward, 228, 229
  - mid-point, 234

- modified, 234
  - trapezoidal, 235
- Exact arithmetic, 34
- Explicit method, 235
- Exponent, 30
- Faber's theorem, 181
- First mean value theorem for integrals, 15
- Fixed point, 140
  - iteration method, 141
- Floating-point
  - approximation, 33
  - error, 42
  - representation, 30
- Forward
  - difference, 209
  - elimination, 54, 59
  - substitution, 63
- Gauss-Seidel method, 86
- Gaussian
  - rules, 206
- Gaussian elimination method
  - modified, 56
  - Naive, 53
  - operations count, 59
- Gerschgorin's
  - circle theorem, 107
  - disk, 108
- Hermite-Genocchi formula, 171
- Hilbert matrix, 78
- Ill-conditioned
  - function evaluation, 45
- Ill-conditioned matrix, 78
- Implicit method, 235
- Increasing sequence, 8
- Infinite norm, 176
- Infinite precision, 34
- Initial
  - condition, 223
  - value problem, 223
- Intermediate value theorem, 12
- Interpolating function, 159
- Interpolating polynomials; convergence, 181
- Interpolation, 159
  - condition, 160
  - error, 174
    - arithmetic, 174, 177
    - mathematical, 174, 175
    - total, 174
  - linear polynomial, 165
  - piecewise polynomial, 183
  - polynomial, 160, 162
    - existence and uniqueness, 160
    - Lagrange's form, 164
    - Newton's form, 166
    - quadratic polynomial, 165
    - spline, 185
- Iterative
  - methods, 119
- Iterative method, 51, 80
  - fixed-point, 141
  - Gauss-Seidel, 86
  - Jacobi, 81
  - refinement, 90
  - residual corrector, 90
- Jacobi method, 81
- Lagrange's
  - form of interpolating polynomial, 164
  - polynomial, 163
- Limit
  - of a function, 10
  - of a sequence, 8
  - left-hand, 9
  - of a function, 11
  - right-hand, 10
- Linear system
  - direct method, 51, 53
  - Gaussian elimination method, 53, 56
  - iterative method, 51
  - LU factorization, 64
  - Thomas method, 60
- Little oh, 21, 22
- LU factorization/decomposition, 64
  - Cholesky's, 70
  - Crout's, 70
  - Doolittle's, 65
- Machine epsilon, 36
- Mantissa, 30
- Mathematical error, 29
  - in central difference formula, 211
  - in difference formulas, 213
  - in Euler's method, 231
  - in forward difference formula, 209
  - in interpolating polynomial, 174, 175
- Matrix norm, 74
  - maximum-of-column-sums, 76
  - maximum-of-row-sums, 75
  - spectral, 76
  - subordinate, 75
- Maximum norm, 73
- Maximum-of-column-sums norm, 76
- Maximum-of-row-sums norm, 75
- Mean value theorem
  - derivative, 14, 17
  - integrals, 15
- Mid-point rule, 196, 234
- Modified Gaussian elimination method, 56
- Monotonic sequence, 8

- 
- Naive Gaussian elimination method, 53
  - Natural spline, 186
  - Newton's
    - divided difference, 167
    - form of interpolating polynomial, 166
  - Newton-Cotes formula, 196
  - Newton-Raphson method, 135
  - Nodes, 160, 228
    - Chebyshev, 183
  - Nonlinear equation, 119
    - bisection method, 120
    - Newton-Raphson method, 135
    - regula-falsi method, 125
    - secant method, 133
  - Norm
    - infinite, 176
    - matrix, 74
      - maximum-of-column-sums, 76
      - maximum-of-row-sums, 75
      - spectral, 76
      - subordinate, 75
    - vector, 73
      - $l_1$ , 73
      - Euclidean, 73
      - maximum, 73
  - Numerical integration, 195
    - Gaussian rule, 206
    - mid-point, 196
    - Newton-Cotes, 196
    - rectangle, 196
    - Simpson's rule, 202, 205
    - trapezoidal, 198
  - Oh
    - Big and Little, 21, 22
  - Open domain methods, 120
  - Optimum bound, 109
  - Order
    - of accuracy, 210
    - of convergence, 23
  - Order of exactness, 205
  - Ordinary differential equation, 223
  - Overflow, 31
  - Percentage error, 36
  - Piecewise polynomial interpolation, 183
  - Polynomial interpolation, 160, 162
    - existence and uniqueness, 160
    - Lagrange's form, 164
    - Newton's form, 166
    - piecewise linear, 183
  - Positive definite matrix, 70
  - Power method, 94, 95
  - Precision, 33
    - degree of, 205
    - double, 34
    - infinite, 34
  - Principal minors, 65
    - leading, 65
  - Principal sub-matrix, 65
  - Propagated error, 42
    - in Euler's method, 231
  - Propagation of error, 40
  - Quadrature, 195
    - Gaussian, 206
    - mid-point, 196
    - Newton-Cotes, 196
    - rectangle, 196
    - Simpson's, 202, 205
    - trapezoidal, 198
  - Quadrature mid-point, 234
  - Radix, 30
  - Rate of convergence, 23
  - Rectangle rule, 196
  - Regula-falsi method, 125
  - Relative error, 36
  - Relative total error, 42
  - remainder estimate, 18
  - Remainder term
    - in Taylor's formula, 16
  - Residual
    - error, 88
    - vector, 88
  - Residual corrector method, 90
  - Residual error, 132
  - Rolle's theorem, 13
  - Rounding a number, 34
  - Runge
    - function, 180
    - phenomenon, 180
  - Runge-Kutta method
    - order 2, 237
    - order 4, 238
  - Sandwich theorem, 8, 11
  - Secant method, 133
  - Second mean value theorem for integrals, 15
  - Self map, 142
  - Sequence, 7
    - bounded, 8
    - convergent, 8
    - decreasing, 8
    - increasing, 8
    - limit, 8
    - monotonic, 8
  - Sign, 30
  - Significant digits, 37
    - loss of, 39
    - number of, 38
  - Simpson's rule, 202, 205
    - composite, 204
  - Spectral norm, 76

- Spline interpolation, 185
  - cubic, 185
  - natural, 186
- Stability
  - in function evaluation, 46
- Stable computation, 46
- Stopping criteria
  - method for nonlinear equations, 91, 131
- Subordinate norms, 75
- Taylor's
  - formula, 17
  - polynomial, 16
  - series, 19
  - Theorem, 37
  - theorem, 16
- Thomas method, 60
- Total Error
  - in polynomial interpolation, 179
- Total error, 29, 42
  - in interpolating polynomial, 174
- Trapezoidal rule, 198
  - composite, 200
- Triangle inequality, 73, 74
- Truncation error, 18, 37
  - in Euler's method, 231
- Underflow, 31
- Undetermined coefficients
  - differentiation, 215
  - integration, 204
- Unit round, 36
- Unstable computation, 46
- Vector norm, 73
  - $l_1$ , 73
  - Euclidean, 73
  - maximum, 73
- Weights, 196
- Well-conditioned
  - function evaluation, 45
- Well-conditioned matrix, 78
- Wilkinson's example, 92